

TAUNTON'S

# Fine Woodworking

**Dovetail jigs  
put through  
their paces**

**A working guide  
to wood glues**

**Three ways  
to cut a bead**

**Basement shop**

**A quick way  
to rub out  
wood finishes**

**More power for  
cordless tools**

**Cherry bed**



**Make a chest with hand tools**

U.S. \$6.95  
Canada \$7.95  
U.K. £4.25



0 74851 64797 4

# *It's our birthday, but*



We're celebrating our 40th birthday,  
and for a limited time, we're packaging  
our best-selling woodworking tools  
with the accessories you want,  
priced to save you up to 71%.\*



We've wrapped these Limited Edition tools

in the rich white of JET's distinctive  
industrial metalworking machinery.  
They are a reflection of the pride we  
take in the beauty of a well-crafted  
tool. There's a package with your  
name on it at your local JET dealer.

Call (800) 274-6848 or visit [www.jettools.com](http://www.jettools.com) for a catalog or the name of a JET dealer near you!

\* Savings vary by tool. Percentage reflects savings on accessories.

# *you get the presents!*



**6" Jointer**  
with two sets  
of knives  
Package savings: \$71.91  
Now \$499,  
plus \$20 rebate = \$479\*  
*Total Package Savings*  
**\$91.91**

**14" Bandsaw**  
with rip fence  
and mitre gauge  
Package savings: \$64.48  
Now \$569,  
plus \$25 rebate = \$544\*  
*Total Package Savings*  
**\$89.48**

**3HP 10" Tablesaw**  
Both left- and right-tilt  
XACTA SAW™ with table and legs  
Package savings: \$178  
Now \$1,399,  
plus \$100 rebate = \$1,299\*  
*Total Package Savings*  
**\$278.00**

**1200 CFM  
Dust Collector**  
with 5 micron bag  
Package savings: \$70.93  
Now \$399,  
plus \$20 rebate = \$379\*  
*Total Package Savings*  
**\$90.93**

**15" Planer**  
with enclosed stand  
and rollers  
Package savings: \$150  
Now \$1,199,  
plus \$100 rebate = \$1,099\*  
*Total Package Savings*  
**\$250.00**

**16 1/2" Drill Press**  
with mortise attachment  
and 5-piece chisel set  
Package savings: \$88.48  
Now \$439,  
plus \$20 rebate = \$419\*  
*Total Package Savings*  
**\$108.48**

Package prices reflect savings. \*After manufacturer's mail-in rebate, effective October 1, 1998 to February 28, 1999.

## Departments

- 6 Contributors
- 8 Letters
- 16 **Methods of Work**  
Mounting panels with keyhole slots;  
Setting a tablesaw blade at 90°
- 24 **Tools & Materials**  
Power planer for trimming curved  
work; Dyes that resist fading
- 32 **Notes & Comment**  
New book on Windsors; Alfreda  
Maloof: an appreciation
- 90 **Index**  
Index to issues 128 to 133
- 94 **Rules of Thumb**  
Sharpness is next to godliness ...  
at least for a woodworker
- 102 **Questions & Answers**  
Mending a broken Windsor chair;  
Resawing on a bandsaw
- 114 **Master Class**  
Great shapes—without a shaper
- 129 **Finish Line**  
Shellac: a marvelously  
versatile finish

### **On the Cover:**

*Windsor-chair guru Mike Dunbar reproduced an antique blanket chest using the same tools and techniques that would have been used on the 18th-century original (see p. 48). Photo: Michael Pekovich*



*A review of dovetail jigs, p. 84*



*Modern polishing techniques, p. 45*



*Bead-cutting choices, p. 40*

# Articles

## 40 Soften Hard Edges with a Side Bead

Use a beading tool, a plane or a router to shape this delicate detail

BY GARRETT HACK

## 42 Crafting a shopmade scratch stock

ON OUR WEB SITE: Watch a scratch stock being made and used

## 45 The Quick, Modern Way to a Polished Finish

Combine automotive finishing materials and power-buffing methods to work wonders on furniture

BY JEFF JEWITT

## 48 18th-Century Six-Board Chest

Copying an original is an excellent way to hone your hand-tool skills

BY MIKE DUNBAR

## 54 The Almost Perfect Basement Shop

Efficient organization, strong light and fresh air can transform a dreary dungeon into a refuge of calm and productivity

BY JAN CARR

## 58 Bench-Mounted Router Table

A three-part table clamps to a workbench, and it hangs from the ceiling when not in use

BY PAUL MANNING

## 60 A Working Guide to Glues

Choosing the right adhesive for the job might mean more than grabbing that old bottle on the shelf

BY WILLIAM TANDY YOUNG

## 68 Chip Carving Limbers Up

The simple tools and techniques of an old art easily adapt to a more flexible use

BY CRAIG VANDALL STEVENS

## 72 Better Batteries for Cordless Tools

Nickel-metal-hydride batteries pack a lot of power, keep a charge longer than nickel-cadmium batteries and don't have to be recycled

BY DENNIS PRESTON

## 74 Frame-and-Panel Bed

Design rests on faceted legs with compound curves

BY DAVID FAY

## 80 Beech: A Tough Nut Worth Cracking

One of the most unruly of woods is also among the most useful

BY JON ARNO

## 84 Dovetail Jig Review

Router jigs have their place, but don't expect them to duplicate hand-cut joints

BY GARY ROGOWSKI

ON OUR WEB SITE: See a demonstration of one jig



Frame-and-panel cherry bed, p. 74



Complete guide to wood glues, p. 60

Visit our web site: [www.taunton.com](http://www.taunton.com)

# Contributors

**William Tandy Young** ("A Working Guide to Glues") is the author of *The Glue Book* (The Taunton Press, 1999). He took an interest in glues when his seventh-grade shop teacher had him laminate a small pine block to a big hunk of walnut so he could mount the work on a lathe and turn a bowl.

While turning, he accidentally cut through the lamination line, giving the bowl a striking two-tone look that it still has. Nowadays, if he makes a mistake, any distress he feels is offset by knowing he's using the right glue for the job.



**Jan Carr** ("The Almost Perfect Basement Shop") worked in book publishing in New York City for many years. In 1977, the architect for his loft renovation hired an old master cabinetmaker, named Artie Becofsky. Carr recalls watching the grizzled old master install some complicated casework. At one point, Becofsky said to him, "You could do this, too. All it takes is patience." With that began a modest interest in woodworking that has become a passion. Carr now spends most days in a great basement shop at his home in St. Paul, Minn.



**David Fay** ("Frame-and-Panel Bed") developed an interest in making things after he graduated from college in 1988. The catalyst was meeting and talking with a carpenter who was building an addition to Fay's house. Fay said, "It was his ability to visualize and build a

project from start to finish that inspired me to want to make things for myself." Fay worked in construction, then made the switch to furniture making. He has been designing and building custom furniture in Oakland, Calif., since 1992.

**Hank Gilpin** (Master Class) has been making custom furniture in his shop in a converted church since 1976. His passion for the material of his trade is evident in his office, which is filled with hundreds of samples and planks of wood; on his bookshelves, which overflow with books on the botany, history and identification of trees; and in his conversation, which is rich with the lore and behavior of trees from seedling to sawdust. He claims not to be an athlete, but he will squash you on the racquetball court.



**Garrett Hack** ("Soften Hard Edges with a Side Bead") is a farmer, writer and professional furniture maker in Thetford Center,

Vt. Hack trained as an architect at Princeton University and as a furniture maker in the Program in Artisanry at Boston University. He specializes in interpretations of the Federal style. He is a regular contributor to *Fine Woodworking* and the author of *The Handplane Book* (The Taunton Press, 1997).



**Paul Manning** ("Bench-Mounted Router Table") is a retired electronics engineer who does part-time consulting for the FAA's radar and electronics systems. He spends his remaining time on

woodworking, especially clock cases. Manning plans to move to Pennsylvania, where he and one of his sons are going to build a shop that's a lot bigger than the small basement where he now works wood.

**Craig Vandall Stevens** ("Chip Carving Limbers Up"). When Ohio State lost to Southern Cal in the Rose Bowl in 1980, Stevens was on the field. At halftime, anyway. He was one of 28 tuba players in OSU's storied marching band. Having attained marching-band nirvana, he transferred to the Columbus College of Art and Design. After graduation, he designed and built log homes and then studied furniture making under James Krenov. A master of marquetry as well as low-relief carving, Stevens now makes furniture full time in Sunbury, Ohio.

## Fine Woodworking

EDITOR **Timothy D. Schreiner**

ART DIRECTOR **Bob Goodfellow**

SENIOR EDITORS **Jefferson Kolle, Jonathan Binzen**

ASSOCIATE EDITORS **William Duckworth, Anatole Burkin, Marc Vassallo**

ASSISTANT EDITOR **Matthew Teague**

COPY/PRODUCTION EDITOR **Thomas McKenna**

ASSOCIATE ART DIRECTOR **Michael Pekovitch**

WEB EDITOR **Ruth Dobseavage**

EDITORIAL ASSISTANT **Chris Baumann**

CONTRIBUTING EDITORS **Tage Frid, R. Bruce Hoadley, Christian Becksvoort, Marlo Rodriguez, Chris Minick, Gary Rogowski, Michael Dunbar**

METHODS OF WORK **Jim Richey**

INDEXER **Harriet Hodges**

PUBLISHER **Jon Miller**

MARKETING MANAGER **Tom Johnson**

PUBLICIST **Karen Lutjen**

ADVERTISING DIRECTOR **Sam Vincent**

ADVERTISING SALES MANAGER **Norman Sippel**

NATIONAL ACCOUNTS MANAGERS **Tom Brancato, David Gray, Linda Abbett**

SR. ADVERTISING COORDINATOR **Kathryn Simonds**

ADVERTISING SECRETARY **Hilda Fernandes**

### WOODWORKING BOOKS & VIDEOS

ASSOCIATE PUBLISHER **Helen Albert**

ASSOCIATE EDITOR **Strother Purdy**

### HOW TO CONTACT FINE WOODWORKING:

Telephone: (800) 283-7252  
(203) 426-8171  
Fax: (203) 270-6751  
E-mail: fw@taunton.com  
Web site: http://www.taunton.com

### CUSTOMER SERVICE:

Orders: (800) 888-8286  
Other Inquiries: (800) 477-8727  
E-mail: fwservice@taunton.com  
ADVERTISING SALES: (800) 283-7252 x 829  
E-mail: fwads@taunton.com

### TAUNTON TRADE COMPANY:

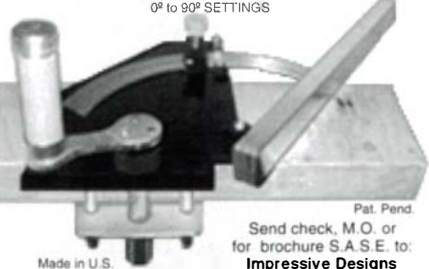
Retail Sales: (800) 283-7252 x 265

Member Audit  
Bureau of Circulation



Copyright 1998 by The Taunton Press, Inc. No reproduction without permission of The Taunton Press, Inc. *Fine Woodworking*® is a registered trademark of The Taunton Press, Inc. Subscription rates: United States and possessions, \$32 for one year, \$56 for two years, \$82 for three years; Canada and other countries, \$38 for one year, \$67 for two years, \$95 for three years (in U.S. dollars, please). Single copy, \$6.95. Single copies outside the U.S. and possessions: U.K., £4.25; other countries and possessions, \$7.95. Address all correspondence to the appropriate department (Subscription, Editorial, or Advertising), The Taunton Press, 63 South Main Street, PO Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506. List management: Millard Group, Inc., 10 Vose Farm Road, PO Box 890, Peterborough, NH 03458.

**NEW** INTRODUCING **PORT-A-FENCE™**  
 "A clamp, a fence and a protractor working together"  
 0° to 90° SETTINGS



Pat. Pend.  
 Send check, M.O. or for brochure S.A.S.E. to:  
**Impressive Designs**  
 4100 Redwood Rd. #336  
 Oakland, CA 94619

Made in U.S.  
 Allow 7-10 days for delivery.  
**FREE SHIPPING IN U.S. FULL WARRANTY**

READER SERVICE NO. 187

**ARROWMONT**  
**SCHOOL OF ARTS & CRAFTS**  
 P.O. Box 567 • 556 PKWY • GATLINBURG, TN 37738  
 423-436-5860 • Fax: 423-430-4101 • e-mail: arrowmnt@aol.com • www.arrowmont.org

**WOODTURNING** - Clay Foster, Frank Sudol, Ray Key, Ron Fleming, Bonnie Klein/**FURNITURE** - Lyle Wheeler, Brent Skidmore/**CLAY/METALS/ENAMEL/STONE CARVING/SURFACE DESIGN/WEAVING/BASKETRY/DOLL MAKING/MARBLING**

Graduate/Undergraduate Credit  
 Assistantships/Scholarships/Residencies  
 Year-Round Gallery Exhibitions/Library/Bookstore - Open to the Public  
 Ekherstod/Community Classes/Conferences

**One Week Workshops**  
**MARCH 1-26, 1999**


READER SERVICE NO. 115

**Veneer Systems Inc.**  
 Call today for a **FREE** veneering supplies and equipment catalog.

Ulmia Hand Tools, Veneer Tape, Adhesives, Jointing Blades, Hammers, Vein Cutters and much much more  
[www.veneersystems.com](http://www.veneersystems.com)

100 River Rock Dr. Suite 104  
 Buffalo, New York 14220  
 T-800-825-0840 F-877-871-1733

READER SERVICE NO. 79



**Horton Brasses Inc.**  
 Nooks Hill Rd., Dept. F 860-635-4400  
 Cromwell, CT 06416 catalog: \$4.00  
[www.horton-brasses.com](http://www.horton-brasses.com)

*Post-Season Savings*  
 PORTABLE TOOLS • MACHINERY • SUPPLIES

**DELTA**  
**Delta BOSS Oscillating Spindle Sander #31-780Z**  
**\$ 215**  
 • Includes 3/4" sanding dust & tools for changing the drums • 1/4 HP induction motor



**Delta Q-3- 18" VS Speed Scroll Saw #40-650**  
 • Single phase, 1.3 AMP motor • Steel stand • Quickset II Blade Chuck • and more  
**\$ 398**




**JAMES MACHINERY ELECTRIC TOOLS**  
 223 North MacArthur Springfield, IL • 62702  
 1 • 800 • 522-9115  
 1 • 217 • 522-9115 Local Number  
 1 • 217 • 698-9179 FAX

**JAMES MACHINERY CO. INC.**  
*Gift Certificates Available*

READER SERVICE NO. 197

**FREE WOODTURNERS CATALOG!**



Craft Supplies USA offers woodturners the finest selection of woodturning tools and accessories anywhere!

- Signature Tools by Henry Taylor Tools
- Richard Raffan, Ray Key Tools
- Stabilized Pen Blanks
- Woodfast Lathes
- Vicmarc Mini Lathes
- One Way and Axminster chucks
- Pen and Pencil kits
- Dale Nish Workshops

To order your copy of THE WOODTURNERS CATALOG call: **1-800-551-8876**  
 visit our web site at [www.craftusa.com](http://www.craftusa.com)  
CRAFT SUPPLIES USA • 1287 E. 1120 S. Provo, Utah 84606 • (800) 551-8876 • Fax (801) 377-7742

READER SERVICE NO. 105

**Down Draft Table**  
 Jet Pulse Filter Clean

- Catch the dust where you make it, before it gets in the air!
- Easy filter cleaning
- 18 Standard Sizes, ranging in price from \$1,575 to \$8,000.

**DENRAY**  
**10775 Lawrence 1140**  
**Mt. Vernon, MO 65712**  
**(417) 466-4046**



MODEL 7200B  
**1-800-766-8263**

READER SERVICE NO. 114

**Lie-Nielsen TOOLWORKS INC.**  
 1-800-327-2520  
 Free Brochure



Low Angle Smoothing Plane  
**\$235**  
[www.lie-nielsen.com](http://www.lie-nielsen.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 109

**NO FRILLS**  
 Commercial Quality Rip fence at BELOW homeshop prices!

Want to save MONEY?? Buy Direct It's the ONLY way!

**ACCUSQUARE**  
 REPLACEMENT RIP FENCE  
 •When you lock an Accusquare it STAYS parallel!  
 •Dual hairline cursor  
 •Spring loaded - Always stays SQUARE as you move it!  
 •The ONLY Rip fence made exclusively from Accurate Aluminium Extrusion and State of the art C.N.C. machined Steel parts.

**90 DAY SATISFACTION WARRANTY**  
**LIFETIME WARRANTY**  
**169**  
 \$189.00 includes Shipping & Handling

For info Check out: Fine Woodworking Nov/Dec 1998 (905) 898-4110 will get you a Rip fence  
 Want a brochure? Call a competitor

READER SERVICE NO. 198

# Letters

## Finishes author credits previous article

—It was recently pointed out to me that the testing methods I used to evaluate water-based finishes in my article (*FWW* #133, pp. 68-73) bore striking resemblance to the tests performed by Chris Minick in his article on water-based finishes three years ago (*FWW* #115, pp. 48-53). Because the idea behind my article was to pick up where Minick left off by evaluating the newest generation of finishes, these similarities are more than coincidence.

My article should have noted that I was trying to re-create the tests Minick performed as closely as possible so the reader would be able to make relatively fair and accurate comparisons between the finishes I tested and those Minick sampled in 1995. Although a few of the tests I performed varied slightly from Minick's, others, such as the heat resistance and adhesion tests, were done almost exactly the same. I even used the same rating system and number of points in the stain-resistance test specifically to

allow comparisons to be made between the finishes tested in the two articles. That Minick was not given proper credit for developing the original test procedures was an oversight on my part, for which I apologize. In fact, my article would not have been written if Minick had not already provided the standards and ground rules for testing water-based finishes. —*Andy Charron, Windsor, Vt.*

## The demise of woodworking education

—Your magazine is excellent. I have been a subscriber for years and plan to continue for many more. I do agree with those who say that you have far too much advertising. However, your photography is great, and the articles are great. It gives me a real laugh to read the “fundamentalist” opinions of egomaniacs who believe that there is no room for workers such as Norm Abram.

As a teacher of woodworking for 20 years, I have found that whatever it takes to interest someone in this craft is worth pursuing. Magazines such as yours should do whatever it takes to interest as many people as possible. We are currently seeing a demise of woodworking in the schools. The two new high schools in my district do not have shops, and the shops have been removed from all junior high schools here. So keep up the great work.

—*McKay Sleight, Orem, Utah*

## Cutting double-blade tenons safely

I enjoy your magazine very much. You publish many well-written articles by knowledgeable authors while leaving room for thought. I have a question about the procedure shown in Bruce Cohen's article, “Large Case-Construction Strategies” (*FWW* #131, pp. 84-87). In one pho-

to, you show him cutting cheeks (with the shoulders already cut) using a tenoning jig with a double-blade setup. Wouldn't that trap a free piece of wood between the inner blade and the jig? I know you would never show an unsafe practice, so please explain.

—*Herman Spaeth, South Lyon, Mich.*

**EDITOR REPLIES:** Many woodworkers, and most of the editors here, prefer to follow the guidelines laid out in Mac Campbell's excellent article on “Double-Blade Tablesaw Tenoning” (*FWW* #95, pp. 72-75). He cuts his cheeks first, then cuts the shoulders with a crosscut sled. In Cohen's preferred method of cutting tenon shoulders before the cheeks, he makes the throat on his tablesaw insert large enough to allow the offcut to fall straight down into the cabinet.

## More on tablesaw blade guards

Howard Lewin's article on “Safe Procedures at the Tablesaw” (*FWW* #132, pp. 84-89) was particularly timely, as I was in the process of deciding which tablesaw best met my needs. I settled on a Powermatic, because one of the features I liked was a sturdy blade guard.

I used a radial-arm saw for many years and found the blade guard quite satisfactory, but I quickly realized that the tablesaw guard gets in the way, and it is no longer in place on my machine. When

## Writing an article

*Fine Woodworking* is a reader-written magazine. We welcome proposals, manuscripts, photographs and ideas from our readers, amateur or professional. We'll acknowledge all submissions and return those we can't publish. Send your contributions to *Fine Woodworking*, P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.

## About your safety:

Working wood is inherently dangerous. Using hand or power tools improperly or ignoring standard safety practices can lead to permanent injury or even death. Don't try to perform operations you learn about here (or elsewhere) until you're certain they are safe for you. If something about an operation doesn't feel right, don't do it. Look for another way. We want you to enjoy the craft, so please keep safety foremost in your mind whenever you're in the shop.

—*Timothy D. Schreiner, editor*

**Taunton**  
PUBLICATIONS  
for fellow enthusiasts

Lydia Krikorian, Peter Rovello, Elaine Yamin, Carol Diehm, Margaret Bafundo, Dorothy Blasko, Susan Burke, Lawrence Rice, Gayle Hammond, Lorraine Parsons. **Corporate Design:** Susan Edelman, director; Laura Bergeron, Amy Bernard, Erika Marks. **Photography:** Anthony Phillips. **Promotion:** Philip Allard, Sallianne Norelli, Jennifer Rotunda, Wendy Bowes, Julia Brine, Mary Beth Cleary, Jennifer Winston. **Corporate Services:** Thomas Luxeder, director; Jane Torrence. **Corporate Circulation:** Sarah Roman, manager. **Fulfillment/Client Services:** Patricia Williamson, Carolyn Arneith, Kathryn Dolson, Holly Smith. **Order Processing:** Nancianne Boland, Barbara Lowe, Eileen McNulty, Deborah Pannoza, Marylou Thompson. **Customer Services:** Judith Ruby, manager; Donna Capalbo, Kathleen Baker, Nancy Brown, Marion LaPierre, Penny Lefferts, Dawn Teixeira. **Data Entry:** Carole Ando, Bonnie Beardsley, Margaret Fainer, Madelaine Frengs, Debra Sennefelder, Andrea Shorrock, Betty Stepney. **Distribution:** Paul Seipold, Mary Ann Costagliola, Deborah Greene, Linnea Ingram, Aaron Lund, Frederick Monnes, Christopher Pierwola, Elsie Rodriguez, Alice Saxton. **Manufacturing:** Kathleen Davis,

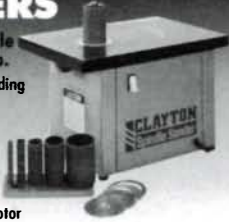
director: Kathleen Donovan. **Prepress:** Austin Starbird, John Garofalo, Patricia Petro, Stephen Roma, Deborah Cooper, Nicole Anastas, William Bivona, David Blasko, Richard Booth, James Chappuis, Mark Coleman, Tina Foster, William Godfrey, Brian Leavitt, Florence Nichols, Martha Stammer, Chansam Thammavongsa, David Kenney, Joanne Bisson, Amy Evon, Kathy Martin. **Print Production:** Dee Flanagan, Lynda Morris, promotion; Thomas Greco, Michael Gyulay, books; Philip VanKirk, John Cavallaro, Tracie Pavlik, magazines. **Management Information Systems:** Robert Peters, director; Brendan Bowe, James Courtright, Gabriel Dunn, Lisa Checkley, Marjorie Omalyev, Linda Reddington, Roger Seliga. **PC Applications:** Heidi Waldkirch, Robert Nielsen, Cynthia Zibelin. **PC Systems:** Margaret Archer, Keith Anderson, Rita Myers, Judith Stansfield. **Operations:** **Purchasing & Facilities:** William Schappert, Christopher Myers, Michael Capalbo, Michael Lewis, Jeannette Pascal, Jonathan Pond, Patricia Rose, Charles Hollis, Jeffrey Meslin, Susan Nerich, Oscar Carranza, Anson Gray, Alvin Jack, Lincoln Peters. **Cafeteria:** Donna Freeman, Geraldine Benno, Anna Pendergast, Norma-Jean Taylor. **Taunton Books:** James Childs, publisher; Suzanne Noel, Jennifer Renjilian, Frederick Velardi, Ellen Williams. **Book Editorial:** Carolyn Mandarano, editor; Peter Chapman, Susan Ferrelli. **Book Art:** Paula Schlosser, Lynne Phillips, Henry Roth, Carol Singer, Rosalie Vaccaro. **Taunton Direct:** Brenda Hamilton, David Pond. Megan Sangster, Eileen Sheehan, Jeanne Todaro. **Taunton New Media:** Roy Swanson, director; Christopher Casey, Sean Messenger. **Taunton Trade Company:** John Bacigalupi, Peter Bill, Barbara Buckalew, John DiSette, Paul McGahren, Anthony Montilli, Eileen Swirsky. **Video:** Craig Umanoff, Thomas Menard.



## THE STANDARD IN SANDERS

The smooth way to tackle virtually any sanding job.

- Your solution for contour sanding
- Benchtop & full size professional models
- Quick-change drums
- Large table surface
- Built-in dust port
- Premium Baldor induction motor
- Made in U.S.A.



Call for a **FREE** Shop Solutions Catalog.  
**1-800-971-5050**  
**Clayton Machine Corp.**  
 Royal Oak, MI 48068-0520

READER SERVICE NO. 138

## YOUR SOURCE FOR QUALITY INDUSTRIAL ADHESIVES



Available exclusively through:



**1-800-860-9375**

INDUSTRIAL WOODWORKING MACHINERY AND SUPPLIES  
 SAME DAY SHIPPING ON ORDERS PLACED BY NOON

READER SERVICE NO. 213

## ROPE TURNINGS OAK and MAPLE



A0913  
**IN STOCK  
 NO  
 MINIMUM**



## FREE CATALOGUE



Adams Wood Products™ L.T.D., L.P.  
 974 FOREST DR., DEPT. Q28  
 MORRISTOWN, TN 37814  
 TEL 423-587-2942 • FAX 423-586-2188  
 www.adamswoodproducts.com

READER SERVICE NO. 149

## FREE CATALOG

100's of Carbide Tipped Router Bits and Unique Woodworking Accessories!

## MERLE

The **ADJUSTABLE CORNER CLAMP**

★★★★★  
 Performance & Value  
**Editors Choice**  
 Wood Magazine

- Adjustable, uniform clamping pressure
- Forces a frame into a perfect square
- Almost NO capacity limitation
- Holds any kind of frame in square. Great for wide cabinet type frames
- Durable cast aluminum and steel construction
- Even jointing force at ALL corners.

Includes 23 ft. steel banding!



Regular Price "39"  
**SALE \$24.95**  
 ITEM #1420

**FREE SHIPPING**  
 IN CONTIGUOUS USA FOR ALL ITEMS

Order **1-800-533-9298**

# MILCS

PROFESSIONAL WOODWORKING PRODUCTS  
 P.O. Box 4053 FA, Rydal, PA 19046

READER SERVICE NO. 177

## JAMES MACHINERY CO. INC.

*Gift Certificates Available*

## PORTER CABLE

Porter Cable Model 557  
**Deluxe Plate Joiner Kit**

**\$210**

- 7.5 AMP • Now with 2" & 4" dia. blades for both standard, and our new, smaller face-frame biscuits



Porter Cable Model  
**BN125 Brad Nailer Kit**



- 18 GA 5/8" - 1-1/4"
- Includes: 1/4" male quick coupler, box of 1,000 brads, oil & Allen wrenches

**\$88**



223 North MacArthur  
 Springfield, IL • 62702

1 • 800 • 522-9115  
 1 • 217 • 522-9115 Local Number  
 1 • 217 • 698-9179 FAX

PORTABLE TOOLS • MACHINERY • SUPPLIES



READER SERVICE NO. 196

## WHY Build a Guitar?



Rosette detail: spalted maple with silver-ringed turquoise inlay by Jeffrey Elliott

### To satisfy:

- Strong urge to bend wood
- Desire to engage in fine joinery
- Need to inlay
- Urge to work in thousandths
- Quest to work with the finest and most beautiful woods

### More reasons:

- Minimal tools and shop space required
- Broaden portfolio
- Finished product is portable
- Finished product can make music
- Impress your friends

### Teachers note:

- Excite students
- Many disciplines brought together

### For information:

Luthiers Mercantile International  
 P.O. Box 774 • Healdsburg, CA 95448  
 Tel. 800-477-4437 / 707-433-1823

<http://lmii.com>  Fax 707-433-8802

READER SERVICE NO. 92

## BUILD YOUR OWN POWER TOOLS & SAVE!

Gil-Bilt kits include step-by-step plans, full scale patterns, and all the necessary metal parts and components (except wood parts and the motor). Made in America with pride since 1946 by Gilliom Manufacturing, Inc.

For **QUALITY CRAFTSMANSHIP** choose **GIL-BILT** and construct your own:

- ▼ 12-inch Band Saw
- ▼ 18-inch Band Saw
- ▼ 10-inch Tilt/Arbor Saw
- ▼ Lathe/Drill Press Comb
- ▼ 9-inch Tilt Table Saw
- ▼ 6-inch Belt Sander
- ▼ Spindle Shaper
- ▼ Circular Saw Table

Send \$10 per plan, \$25 for any 4 tool plans, or \$2 for brochure. Satisfaction Guaranteed!

**GILLIOM MANUFACTURING, INC.**

Dept. FW901, P.O. Box 1018  
 St. Charles, MO 63302  
**PHONE (314) 724-1812**

READER SERVICE NO. 68

I see other saws in professional shops or lumberyards, the blade guard is almost always gone. I suspect that a survey of your readers would find that the blade guards and possibly the splitters supplied by the manufacturers are rarely used. If that is the case, perhaps you, as an influential magazine, could pressure the manufacturers to come up with a better design as standard equipment. Lewin implies that the European guard designs are better, and I wonder whether this is due to the generally tighter workplace safety standards there.

—Ric Scott, Bobcaygeon, Ont., Canada

### Check your doctor's dovetails—

Recent articles and letters have highlighted the similarities between some surgical procedures and woodworking. It is no surprise that many of your readers are doctors. Of course, there is the question of the judgment of a skilled surgeon who lets his hands get within 10 ft. of a table-saw. Readers who are seeking the help of an orthopedist should be reminded of a

fundamental rule in making this selection: always ask to see a kitchen cabinet he or she has made.

—Albert D. Wood, Dataw Island, S.C.

**Are we bats?**—As a charter subscriber, with all 133 issues stored in my custom-made, hand-dovetailed, walnut bookcase, I eagerly look forward to the next copy arriving in my mailbox. As an avid woodworker and high school woodworking teacher for the past 35 years, I am keenly interested in information related to woodworking.

A quote in the "Tool for hitters" item in Notes & Comment (FWW #133, p. 28) prompts me to write to you to express that I do not believe that on a baseball bat "you can feel a difference in diameter of 1/20,000 in." With no disrespect intended, may I offer the following: 1) That dimension is 100 times thinner than the sheet of paper on which I am writing this letter; 2) no one I know can work wood to that tolerance; and 3) merely breathing on a piece of wood would probably

cause more expansion than that from the moisture in one's breath.

—James Vasi, Williamsville, N.Y.

**EDITOR REPLIES:** After getting several letters like the one from Mr. Vasi, we talked to Thomas Bednark of Barnstable Bat Co. We were wrong. Bednark told us that professional baseball players, whose livelihoods depend on their proficiency at swinging turned ash bats at 90 mph, can tell the difference in a bat's diameter of 0.020 in., not 1/20,000 in.

### Owner takes exception to our review—

In the Tools & Materials section of your December issue (FWW #133, p. 44) Senior Editor Anatole Burkin published his test results of our cyclone lid, stating that he found it to be 65% efficient, not 90% efficient, as we claim. My understanding is that he tested the unit as an in-line component of a continuously running air-filtration system, not as a component of an "on-demand" dust-collection system. We would like to clari-

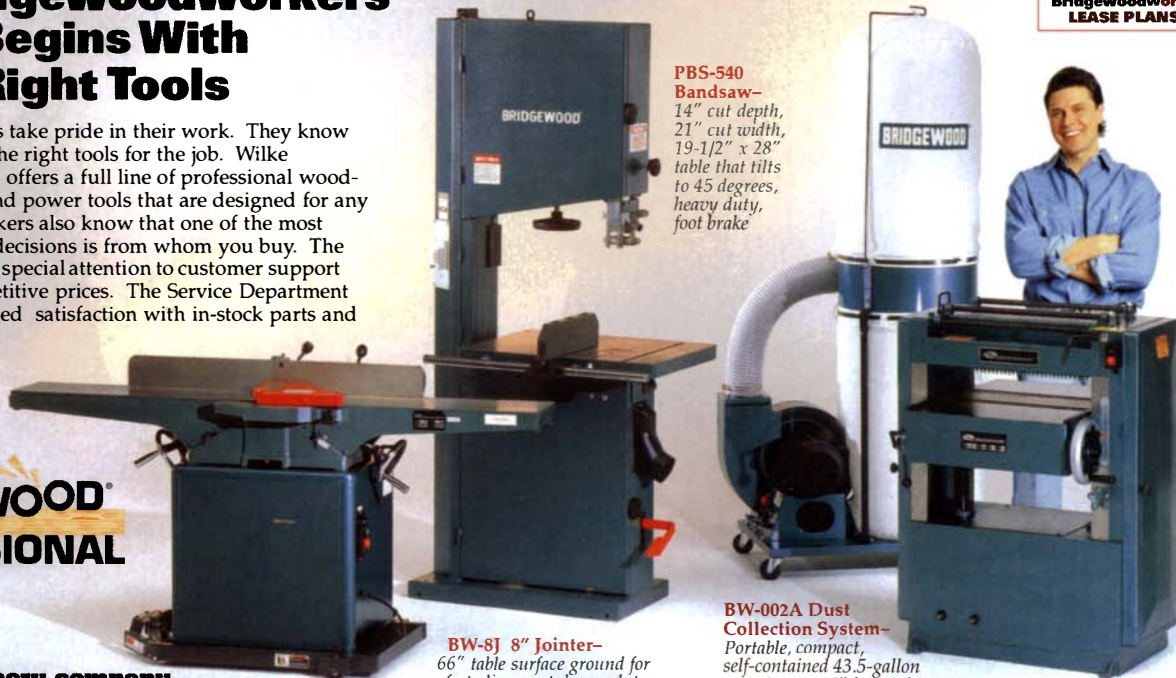
## The Bridgewoodworkers' Edge Begins With The Right Tools

Bridgewoodworkers take pride in their work. They know the value of having the right tools for the job. Wilke Machinery Company offers a full line of professional woodworking machines and power tools that are designed for any job. Bridgewoodworkers also know that one of the most important purchase decisions is from whom you buy. The Wilke sales staff pays special attention to customer support while offering competitive prices. The Service Department ensures your continued satisfaction with in-stock parts and technical know-how.

**BRIDGEWOOD**  
**PROFESSIONAL**  
*The woodworker's edge*

**WILKE machinery company**  
3230 Susquehanna Trail, York, PA 17402

Call today for our FREE catalog, **1-800-235-2100**  
internet: [www.wilkemach.com](http://www.wilkemach.com) email: [info@wilkemach.com](mailto:info@wilkemach.com)



**PBS-540 Bandsaw—**  
14" cut depth,  
21" cut width,  
19-1/2" x 28"  
table that tilts  
to 45 degrees,  
heavy duty,  
foot brake

**BW-8J 8" Jointer—**  
66" table surface ground for  
perfect alignment, heavy duty,  
fence tilts inward and outward to  
45 degrees. 4-knife cutterhead with  
jackscrew adjustment

**BW-002A Dust  
Collection System—**  
Portable, compact,  
self-contained 43.5-gallon  
capacity, two 4" hose inlets

**BW-20PV Planer—**  
20" x 7" capacity, variable speed feed, bed roll height  
adjustment lever, 3-knife cutterhead with jackscrew adjustment

Ask about easy  
Bridgewoodworker  
LEASE PLANS

BRIDGEWOOD ■ PLANERS ■ JOINTERS ■ LATHES ■ MOULDERS ■ BANDSAWS ■ DUST COLLECTORS ■ BORING MACHINES ■ DRILL PRESSES  
■ PIN ROUTERS ■ MORTISERS ■ WIDE BELT SANDERS ■ SPINDLE SHAPERS ■ RIP SAWS ■ TABLE SAWS ■ SCROLL SAWS ■ BELT DISC SANDERS  
■ PANEL SAWS ■ TENONERS ■ GRINDING PRODUCTS ■ SAW BLADES ■ CUTTING BLADES ■ SAFETY EQUIPMENT ■ ACCESSORIES ■ BRIDGEWOOD

READER SERVICE NO. 122

Visit your local  
Ni-Cd battery  
recycling center:

in the US

**ACE**  
Hardware

**BLACK &  
DECKER**

**TARGET**

**WAL\*MART**

in Canada



**Zellers**

# You know the drill, **RECYCLE**

Now you can recycle the used  
**Ni-Cd rechargeable batteries**  
from your power tools

After all the sanding, drilling, and sawing is done, it's time to check your batteries – because sooner or later your Ni-Cd rechargeable batteries will no longer hold their charge. But please, don't throw them away. Recycle them! Just like plastic, glass, aluminum or old newspapers.

Just look for the recycling seal on your battery packs. If the seal is on it, we recycle it! Take your spent Ni-Cd rechargeables to any of the stores listed or call **1-800-8-BATTERY** for the location nearest to you. You will make a huge difference in preserving our environment. Thank you.



Rechargeable Battery Recycling Corporation (RBRC) is a non-profit, public service organization whose mission is to be the international leader in the environmentally-safe collection, transportation and recycling of rechargeable batteries. Nickel-Cadmium (Ni-Cd) rechargeable batteries can be found in power tools, cordless and cellular phones, camcorders and remote control toys. Any of the following stores also recycle Ni-Cd rechargeable batteries: in the US — Ameritech, Batteries Plus, BellSouth Cellular, Car Phone Store, Circuit City and RadioShack; in Canada — Astral Photo Images, Battery Plus, Black's Photography, Authorized Motorola Dealers and RadioShack Canada.

READER SERVICE NO. 145

International RBRC  
Spokesperson Richard  
Kain, "Al" on TV's  
Home Improvement

# Letters (continued)

fy for your readers that when the cyclone lid is used as part of a regular 4-in. pipe, on-demand shop system, it is more than 90% efficient. We not only stand by our earlier claim but also would point out that we consistently exceeded the claimed efficiency in our own shop tests.

—Leonard Lee, president, Veritas Tools, Ottawa, Ont., Canada

**ANATOLE BURKIN REPLIES:** I checked the performance of the Veritas cyclone lid three times over several months and got results consistent with what I reported. When I'm busy on a big project, moving between the jointer, planer, tablesaw and router, I don't always shut down the dust collector between each operation. That's like dragging the Hoover into the living room, turning it on to suck up one spot of dog hair, then shutting it down before moving on to another spot.

**The problem with random-orbit sanders**—The review of random-orbit sanders (*FWW* #132, pp. 58-65) fails to ad-

dress the most annoying problem of all with these machines. The PSA (pressure-sensitive adhesive) pads begin delaminating after two pieces of sandpaper, then fail completely after 20 to 25 pieces of paper. The hook-and-loop system is no better. At \$15 per pad, this is quite a problem.

—Al McClain, Kent, Conn.

**More on finishes, please**—First off, I'd like to say that I consider *Fine Woodworking* to be the premier woodworking magazine available. I have a very sincere request. Please provide information on how the piece was finished in every article. I am an avid reader, and I have read all of the finishing books available. What I have learned from my reading and my attempts to put a finish on my projects is that there is no substitute for experience. For example, on the cover of your December issue (*FWW* #133), you have a beautiful cherry computer desk made by Stephen Lauziere. My first thought was, "What a gorgeous finish." You can imagine my disappointment

when not one line in the article was devoted to the finish.

—Allan Chaney, Tulsa, Okla.

**EDITOR REPLIES:** Sorry about the omission. Mr. Lauziere first put on one coat of Watco Danish Oil Finish and let it dry and cure for two weeks. He then applied two coats of General Finishes' Royal Finish Satin oil and urethane topcoat. Both coats were applied with a gray 3M pad and wiped off with a lint-free cloth.

**Connect articles to videos on the web site**—I have noticed that your sister publication *Fine Cooking* shows some techniques in videos on its web site. You ought to try that technique for *Fine Woodworking*, even though it's more difficult to show how to build a highboy in one or two minutes than it is to demonstrate making toast.

—Robert A. Speir, Falls Church, Va.

**EDITOR REPLIES:** We also thought it was a good idea. You can watch two videos on

**CUT PERFECT MORTISES EVERY TIME**  
*Rout Box & Cabinet Hinges Incredibly Fast*  
**HINGE QUICK™**



*Quick & Easy To Set-up!*

Hinge Quick™ comes complete with interchangeable templates for the most popular box and cabinet hinges. Sizes from 3/4 x 5/8 thru 2 1/2 x 1 1/16 are included.

All Aluminum Construction

**NEMAH PRODUCTS, INC.**  
 P.O. Box 87756 • Vancouver, WA 98687-7756  
 (360) 816-2009 • Fax(360) 693-1971

Only \$69<sup>95</sup> + \$9<sup>95</sup> S&H  
 WA Res Add Sales Tax

READER SERVICE NO. 58

**Heavy Glass Table Tops**



**FACTORY DIRECT DISCOUNT PRICING**

- Table tops
- Shelves
- Doors
- Display Cases
- Entertainment Centers
- Tempered Glass

**WGB ■ SHAPES ■ THICKNESSES ■ EDGE DESIGNS**

Use Reader Service For FREE Catalog

**SALES 1-800-288-6854**

TABLE TOPS BY PHONE SATISFACTION GUARANTEED!

READER SERVICE NO. 121

**A Winning Combination**

**ROJEK KPS 300.**

Woodworking Machinery Since 1921

- Heavy Cast Iron Tables
- 12" or 10" Table Saw
- Scoring Unit
- Spindle Shaper (1 1/4" & 3/4")
- 12" Jointer
- 12" Planer
- Cast Iron Mortiser



**KPS 300 Combination Machine**

**TM**  
 TECH MARK, INC.  
 7901 Industry Drive  
 North Little Rock, AR 72117

**Contact us at (501) 945-9393 or 1-800-787-6747 for more information on the ROJEK KPS 300.**

READER SERVICE NO. 2

# Look To The Leader When It Comes To A Joiner.

**PORTER+CABLE**

Powerful 7.5 Amp motor is most powerful motor on the market.

Bail handle is attached to the fence, not the motor, to keep your hand firm and the fence positioned and steady during every cut.

Seven position depth stop provides the widest range of cutting depths among all plate joiners.

Tilt fence does not have to be removed for flush cuts.



Micro adjustment knob for "perfect" placement of biscuits.

Dust port accepts standard bag or can be connected to a vacuum for a clean work environment.

135 degree tilt fence lets you position your cut from the outside face of your work. Any mismatch in material thickness stays on the inside where it doesn't show.



Ability to join face frame stock as narrow as 1 1/2" with our new, exclusive face-frame biscuit.



Porter Cable's tradition of innovation continues with the new 557 plate joiner kit, combining industry-leading power with unequalled precision and flexibility. Now with 2" and 4" diameter blades for both standard, and our new, smaller face-frame biscuits. So if you're looking to "join" follow the leader to your local Porter-Cable retailer. Or call 1-800-487-8665 (519-836-2840 in Canada) for the dealer nearest you.

## PORTER+CABLE

Professional Power Tools Since 1906  
<http://www.porter-cable.com>  
READER SERVICE NO. 192



# Letters (continued)

our web site ([www.taunton.com](http://www.taunton.com)) relating to articles in this issue. One shows author Gary Rogowski demonstrating the use of one of the router dovetail jigs he reviewed. The other shows author Garrett Hack making and using scratch stock to cut a side bead.

## Giving credit to a turning pioneer—

Normally the striking back cover of the December issue of *Fine Woodworking* (FWW #133) would have been a wonderful tribute to the field of wood turning, had you not so accurately depicted another turner's technique, use of material and even typical vessel form. Ron Kent, my friend and renowned wood turner from Hawaii, has been doing this work for at least two decades, much of it residing in many prestigious museums and private collections. In addition, through conferences, videos and publications, he has for years unselfishly demonstrated his technique and use of Norfolk Island Pine to many aspiring wood turners.

Do I fault your featured turner, Gene

Blickenstaff, for his fortuitous circumstance? Perhaps, but I doubt that any woodworker would reject the opportunity to be showcased so prominently on the back cover of a benchmark journal. It's quite a feather in one's cap. As I see it, however, the very prominence of such depiction lends a great deal of weight to the presumption of originality by an uninformed reader.

I realize that as a publisher you are probably under no obligation nor have a desire to distinguish original vs. derivative work. That you choose to feature someone's work so distinctively, however, makes me think that you owe your readers, especially those unfamiliar with the field, the responsible act of making sure the feather is in the right cap.

—J. Paul Fennell, Scottsdale, Ariz.

**EDITOR REPLIES:** Perhaps we should have given a nod to Ron Kent and his excellent work. The fact that we did not in the short write-up on Gene Blickenstaff's bowls was our oversight. Kent, who is a friend

of Blickenstaff's, has encouraged Gene to seek recognition for his work. As I'm sure our readers know, a great deal of woodworking, perhaps all of it, is derivative to some degree. We try to give credit to originators whenever we can.

## A call for wooden chests

The Taunton Press is seeking examples of wooden chests, old and new, for an upcoming book. The types of chests we're interested in include hope chests, blanket chests, campaign chests, trunks and toy chests. Have you made a beautiful one lately? Do you have a family heirloom in the attic? All submissions will be acknowledged, and material that can't be used will be returned. Please send photos (35mm slides or larger-format transparencies) along with a description of the chest to Strother Purdy, The Taunton Press, P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506. Deadline for submissions is Feb. 1, 1999.

## THE CONOVER LATHE



**T**hinking of moving up? Need a machine with greater length, more horsepower and greater rigidity? Most of our customers have exceeded the capacity of smaller machines.

Heavy cast iron construction, precisely machined, produces a lathe with 16" swing. With user supplied 2"x6" timbers, this lathe can be sized to fit your workshop or project. Excellent for faceplate or spindle work. Guaranteed to please and compliment the craft of even the most discerning of craftsmen.

The Conover Lathe. A long tradition of pride in American-made quality.



**CONOVER**

(440) 350-4545 • (800) 433-5221

[www.conover-lathe.com](http://www.conover-lathe.com)

P.O. Box 418, Mentor, OH 44061

READER SERVICE NO. 86

# NO MORE DUST

Introducing Microplane® Rotary Shaper Power Tool Attachments for low-speed shaping. The razor-sharp teeth create tiny shavings that fall to the surface instead of clouding your air. Call 501-968-5455 or

1-800-555-2767

*dealer inquiries encouraged*

[www.microplane.com](http://www.microplane.com) email: [info@microplane.com](mailto:info@microplane.com)

Microplane®

A Product of Grace Manufacturing

READER SERVICE NO. 45

## Need Knobs?

**Woodworker's Hardware** leads the industry with thousands of items of cabinet hardware in stock. The hardware you need for cabinets, entertainment centers, computer work-stations and countless other applications is available from our stock for next business day shipment.

Call today for a **FREE Sale Flyer.**

PO Box 180 Sauk Rapids, MN 56379 24 HOUR FAX: 800-207-0180

800-383-0130

**Mention offer #644**

READER SERVICE NO. 57



# FREE SHIPPING!

(On orders over \$75 in the Cont. U.S.)

Celebrating  
**20 Years of Service**

**VISA** **MasterCard** **DISCOVER** **AMERICAN EXPRESS**  
401 Radio City Dr. Rt. 29 • N. Pekin, IL 61554  
email: aisupply@mtco.com  
**WE SINCERELY APPRECIATE YOUR BUSINESS!**

# To ORDER CALL TOLL FREE:

## 1-800-260-2647

24 Hr. Fax Orders: (309) 382-1420

Limited Quantities & Prices Subject to Availability

### BINKS

#### HVLP Spray Gun

Use with only 1-1/2 H.P. compressor! Now you don't have to rely on a limited turbine. Great for a wide range of materials. Includes gun and one quart cup, 25 ft. 3/8" air hose with connection and air regulator with gauge.  
#BKS 98-1121 List Price \$524.00  
**SALE PRICE \$399.00**



### PORTER-CABLE

#### Brad Nailer & Air Compressor

**Combo Kit**  
Choice of BN125 or BN200 Nailer.  
Includes: 1 HP comp., brad nailer kit, 25 ft. air hose and M/F hose connections.  
#PCT CFBN125 **SALE \$258.90**  
#PCT CFBN250 **SALE \$296.00**



### DELTA

#### 12-1/2" Planer

Features: •Quick change knife system  
•Exclusive cutterhead-spring control lock  
•Easy-to-read English and Metric scale.  
#DEL 22-560 List Price \$568.00 **SALE.....\$328.50**

**BONUS:**  
Free Extra Set of Planer Knives & Dust Chute!



### DELTA 30" Table Board CTE 2731 \$23.90

52" Table Board CTE 2747 \$28.90

Uni-Saws With Biesemeyer or Uni-fence

NEW! 36-800 White Classic Edition Unisaw

w/50" Biesemeyer Fence .....\$1599.00

36-830 3HP, w/30" Uni-fence .....\$1399.00\*

36-820 3HP, w/52" Uni-fence (Special Edition).....\$1499.00\*

36-821 3HP, w/50" Biesemeyer 52" T-Square Fence \$1499.00\*

34-182 Tenoning Jig .....\$85.90

11-990 SSP Drill Press .....\$192.00

14-650P 1/2 H.P. Hollow Chisel Mortiser SUPER

BONUS: w/ 4 Free Delta Mortise Chisels & Bits (1/4", 5/16", 3/8", 1/2") .....\$248.00

50-840P 1 HP 650 CFM Dust Collector

Includes Over \$27.00 Value Free

•FREE 1-Delta 4' x 10' Dust Hose

•FREE 1-Delta Alum. Blast Gates

•FREE 2-Delta 4" Hose Clamps

**TOTAL PACKAGE ONLY \$229.90**

50-850P 1-1/2 HP 1200 CFM Dust Collector

Includes Over \$42.00 Value Free

•FREE 1-Delta 4' x 10' Dust Hose

•FREE 2-Delta Alum. Blast Gates

•FREE 4-Delta 4" Hose Clamps

**TOTAL PACKAGE ONLY \$298.90**

\* Price After Delta Rebate

NEW! 50-820 Portable Dust Collector .....\$184.00

50-851 2HP 1200 CFM Dust Collector .....\$492.00

36-865 Versa-Feeder .....\$239.00

22-675 Y15" Planer with FREE 50-655 stand (a \$260.55 value) .....\$1058.00\*

28-275 14" Open Band-Saw .....\$497.90\*

28-280 14" Enclosed Band Saw 1 HP .....\$679.00\*

31-780XPS Sander Super Bonus Buy! Includes

Sanding Spindle Set, PLUS Free Abrasive Rubber

Cleaning Stick & Delta T-Shirt (\$89 value) \$214.95

36-235 12" Compound Miter Saw .....\$308.00

40-650 Q-3 18" Scroll Saw .....\$398.90

37-190 8" Deluxe Jointer .....\$379.00\*

NEW! 37-195 6" Pro Jointer .....\$519.00

37-350A 8" Jointer w/stand .....\$1337.90\*

43-379 Special Edition Shaper .....\$1335.00

43-505 Router/Shaper .....\$297.90

50-345 Universal Mobile Base .....\$48.40

31-280 Sanding Center .....\$728.00\*

### BIESEMEYER

78-900 50" Right 12" Left Fence System .....\$339.00

17-900P 16-1/2" Floor Drill Press **BONUS BUY:**

Includes Delta 17-920 Mortising attachment & 4 chisels in case (a \$68.00 value) .....\$358.90

17-900 16-1/2" Floor Drill Press .....\$344.00

**New!** **DELTA** **New!**

NEW! 36-920 Grand Edition White Uni-Saw

52" Uni-Fence w/ White Legs and Extra Cast Iron Wing on

Right Side. Includes White Table and Shelf Board - 50T

Ind. Carbide Blade. Personalized Insignia Plaque \$1599.00\*

NEW! 36-455 Grand Edition White Contractor's Saw

Left Cast Iron Wing, White 30" Uni-Fence, White Laminated

Table Board and Legs. Pro 50T Carbide Blade .....\$785.00\*

NEW! 28-270 Grand Edition White Band Saw Includes

Enclosed Stand, 18" White Rip Fence, Mobil Base and

Cool Blocks .....\$788.00\*

36-820L Left Tilt UniSaw 3HP .....\$1499.00\*

36-821L Left Tilt UniSaw Beismeyer Fence .....\$1499.00\*

23-710 Sharpening Center .....\$148.90

31-460A 6 Belt/Disc Sander .....\$117.90

31-695 6x9 Belt/Disc Sander .....\$293.90

**JDS COMPANY** NEW! JDS 750 750 CFM Filtration System \$255.00

JDS 8-12 1570 CFM Filtration System.....\$488.00

### PORTER-CABLE

#### NEW! 557 Plate Joiner Kit

•Does mini size biscuits & standard size #7.5 amp motor. •Tilt-fence does not have to be removed for flush cuts. •7-position depth stop •Fence let's you position your cut from outside face  
•Includes case, dust bag, 2" & 4" blades & extra biscuits.

**SUPER SALE ..... \$197.90**

5554 1000 Pc. Asst. Biscuits \$22.50

Brad, Finish & Framing Nailer Kits

All kits include case

NEW! CDA250 15G Cordless

Angle Finish Nailer .....\$277.00

BN125 18G 1-1/4" Brad .....\$87.90

BN200 18G Brad Nailer Kit .....\$124.00

DA250A 15G 1-1/2" Finish .....\$214.90

FN 250A 16G 1-1/2" Crown Finish .....\$181.50

NS150 18G 1-1/4" Crown Stapler \$136.90

FC350 Clipped Head 2"-3" Framing

Nailer Kit .....\$287.00

FR350 Full Round Head 2"-3" Framing

Nailer Kit .....\$287.00

693PK 1-1/2 HP Plunge Router Kit

Includes 690 w/ fixed base & plunge

base w/ case .....\$188.00

690 1" HP Router .....\$142.00

691 1" HP HDL Router \$159.00

693 Plunge Base Only \$82.00

6911 D-Handle Base Only .....\$72.00

7539 3-1/4 HP Plunge Router -

Plus Free Fine Depth Adjuster

(\$26.50 Value) .....\$294.90

7518 3-1/4 HP SSP FB Router \$274.00

42000 8 pc. Templet Guide Kit \$29.95

97310 Laminate Trim Kit .....\$192.50

697 Router Table w/1-1/2 H.P. Router \$233.00

698 Router Table w/out motor \$133.50

9862F 12V Cordless Drill Kit

w/ Free Flashlight.....\$158.90

9872 14.4V Cordless Drill

Kit w/hwo batteries, case &

charger .....\$178.90

9872R 14.4V Recon Kit.....\$158.90

9444 Sander Kit .....\$103.50

330 Speed Block Sander .....\$68.00

332 5" QS Palm Sander .....\$59.90

333 5" QS R/O Dst Sdr H&L .....\$63.90

333VS VS R/O Palm Sander \$77.00

334 5" QS R/O Dustless Sdr \$64.90

352VS VS Belt Sander .....\$177.00

9352VS VS Belt Sander w/ case \$188.90

7335 5" VS R/O Sander .....\$139.00

97355 5" VS R/O Sander with Dust

Collection & Case .....\$149.00

552 Prod. Pocket Cutter .....\$59.00

7800 Drywall Sander .....\$348.80

362 4x24 Belt Sander w/ Bag \$227.90

362VS 4 x 24 VS Belt Sander & Bag \$235.00

360 3x24 Belt Sander w/ Bag \$224.00

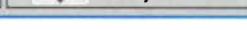
360VS 3x24 VS Belt Sander & Bag \$227.00

347K 7-1/4 Circular Saw w/Case \$127.90

743K LH 7-1/4 Circular Saw w/Case \$127.90

### ITW DeVilbiss

The top name in spray finishing is ready for your woodworking needs.  
FLG-622-322 HVLP Suction Gun \$159.95  
FLG-631-318 HVLP Gravity Gun \$169.95



### BOSCH

#### 1613EVS 2HP Plunge Router

.....\$188.00

#### 1615EVS 3-1/4 HP Plunge Router \$297.00

NEW! 1617EVS 2HP

EVS Router .....\$179.00

#### NEW! 1618 1-3/4 HP D-Handle Router .....\$169.00

1276DVS 4x24 Variable Speed Belt Sander .....\$223.00

3315K 12V Cordless Drill Kit w/ Case & 2 Batteries .....\$157.90

3615K 14.4V Cordless Drill Kit w/ 2 batt., case & charger .....\$173.90

3107DVS 5" H.D. R/O Sander-Polisher .....\$94.60

3725DVS 5" H.D. R/O Sander-Polisher .....\$137.90

3915 10" Slide Compound Miter Saw .....\$497.00

NEW! 1295DHS" Swift Sand R/O Palm Sander .....\$84.00

NEW! 1587 AVSP Jigsaw Kit w/ 8 assorted blades & case .....\$158.90



### RYOBI

#### RYB WDS1600P

1632" Drum Sander with

FREE stand

(\$85.00 value)

only .....\$568.90

RYB DBJ50 Detail Bis-

cut Joiner .....\$68.90



### SENCO

#### NEW! 910001N 5/8-1 1/2"

Brad Nailer w/case .....\$98.90

#### NEW! 920001N 5/8-2"

Brad Nailer w/case .....\$134.50

#### NEW! 900001N 1/2-1 1/4"

(1/4" crown) Stapler .....\$119.90

#### NEW! 950001N 1/2-1 1/2"

(1/4" crown) Stapler .....\$144.50

#### SLP20 Brad Nailer

.....\$198.00

#### SPN1-1 1/2" Finish Gun

.....\$269.00

#### SPN40 1-2 1/2" Finish Gun w/case

.....\$317.90

#### SKS Med. Duty Stapler

.....\$247.00

#### NEW! PRO600 Framing Nailer

.....\$362.90

#### SCN40R Roofing Nailer

.....\$387.90

#### SN60 Full Round Head Nailer

.....\$388.90

#### PC0701 A9 Palm Nailer

.....\$159.00



### FEIN

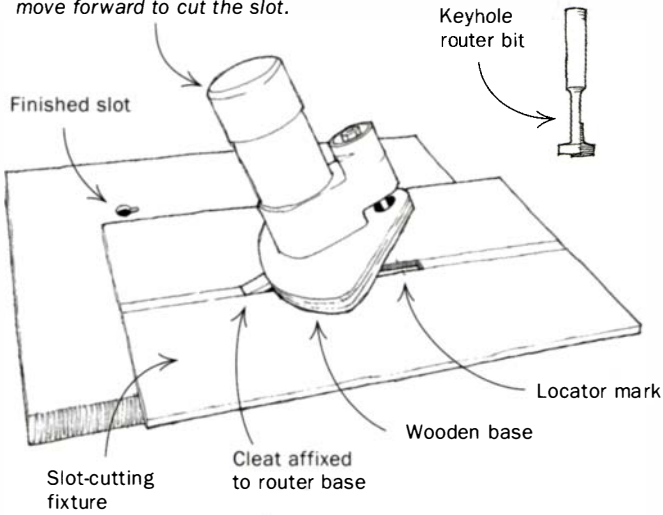
#### FEIN Turbo II Dust-Free Vac

Powered by 2-stage motor w/ bypass cooling to assure motor runs cool even if the hose or filter is blocked. Excellent Quality!  
FIN 9-55-13 \$244.95  
FIN MSXE-636-2  
NEW! Multi-Master VS Triangle Sander Kit with Case .....\$169.00



## Mounting panels with keyhole slots

Plunge the router down, then move forward to cut the slot.



A keyhole router bit cuts a T-shaped slot that is useful for hanging picture frames. However, with a couple of simple fixtures, you can also use this bit to mount large panels flat to the wall. The benefits are many: The slots allow solid wood panels to expand and contract; a damaged panel can easily be taken down, repaired and reinstalled; and finally, there's no visible means of attachment, such as wires or nail holes.

To mount a panel with keyhole slots, you'll need a slot-cutting fixture and an alignment template. The alignment template is simply a piece of hardboard or plywood drilled with a pattern for mounting the screws. Attach the template to the wall, drill holes in the wall and insert pan-head screws, tightening them against a 1/4-in.-thick scrap of wood to leave a consistent gap between the screw head and the wall. Transfer the template to the back of the panel and mark each screw location.

To make the slot-cutting fixture, glue up several pieces of 1/4-in.-thick material, leaving a 3/4-in.-wide, 6-in.-long slot in the middle of the fixture (as shown in the sketch). To ride in that slot, make a 3/4-in.-wide, 5 1/2-in.-long maple cleat, drill a hole through one end of the cleat, then screw the cleat onto the bottom of your router base with the hole centered over the bit. (A wooden base added to your router makes this easier.) It is important that about 1 in. of the cleat hang over the edge of the router base to provide a lever arm for plunging the router. The cleat should slide freely in the slot.

Place the fixture on the back of the panel, aligning it with the

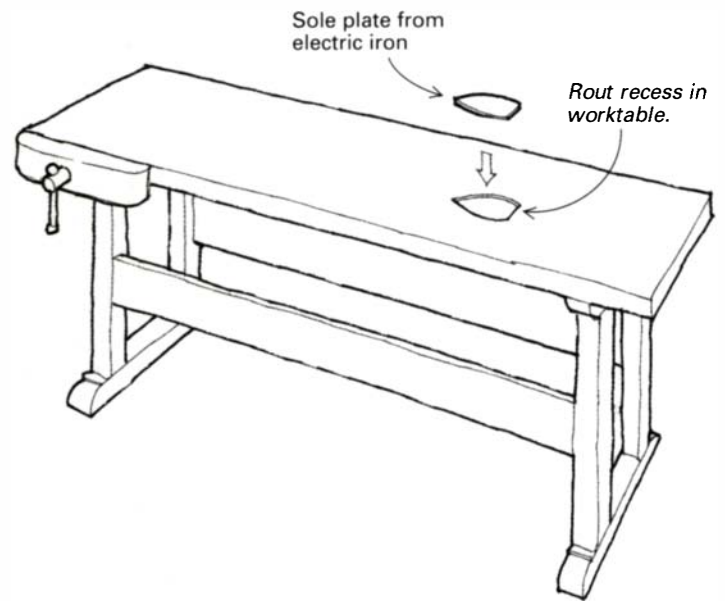
### A new reward for your best tips

Beginning with our next issue (April 1999), *Fine Woodworking* will present an engraved Lie-Nielsen plane to the author of the featured tip in each issue's *Methods of Work*. We will continue to pay for the other tips, jigs and tricks published in *Methods of Work*. Send details, sketches (we'll redraw them) and photos to *Methods of Work*, *Fine Woodworking*, P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506. We will return only those contributions that include a SASE.

screw-location marks, and clamp the fixture in place while you make your plunge cuts. You may need to adjust the depth of the screw heads on the wall for a perfect fit.

—Tom Griffin, Pleasanton, Calif.

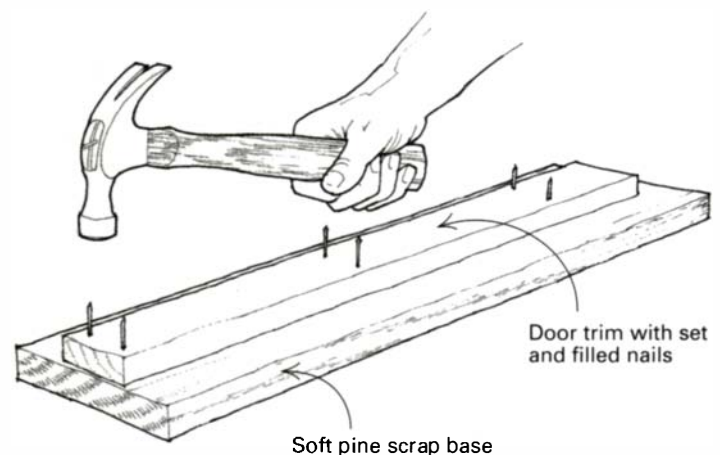
## Workbench anvil



One of the things missing in my workshop was a hard surface to hammer against. I solved this problem by routing out the top of my workbench and inlaying the sole plate of an old electric iron. An 8-in. square of 3/8-in. steel plate would work just as well. If possible, locate the inlay over a structural member.

—Bruce Revell, Magill, South Australia

## Split-free nail removal




When removing nails from window and door trim that will be reused, the heads invariably splinter the face of the trim when the nail is backed out. To avoid this, place the trim upside down on a



Free Workshops • Prizes • Hundreds of Products • Seminars by Mastercraftsmen

See the Widest Variety of Woodworking Products All Under One Roof!



★THE WOODWORKING SHOWS★  
tools • supplies • education

THE NATION'S PREMIER WOODWORKING TOUR

**VISIT THE SHOW NEAR YOU!**

• Atlanta	• Dallas	• New Orleans	• Seattle
• Baltimore	• Detroit	• No. California	• So. California
• Charlotte	• Houston	• North Jersey	• St. Louis
• Chicago	• Indianapolis	• No. Virginia	• Tampa
• Cleveland	• Kansas City	• Phoenix	• Twin Cities
• Colorado	• Massachusetts	• Portland	• Winston-Salem
• Columbus	• Milwaukee	• San Diego	• plus others

Call for free brochure Monday - Friday 8:30 am - 5 pm Pacific Time  
1-800-826-8257 or 310-477-8521 e-mail: woodshow@earthlink.net

READER SERVICE NO. 172

**PRICES ARE DOWN!**

Call or write for our FREE catalog  
1-800-642-0011

- German Engineered Movements
- Clock & Furniture Kits
- Detailed Clock Plans
- Satisfaction Guaranteed

Emperor Clock, L.L.C.  
Dept 6808 P.O. Box 1089  
Fairhope, Alabama 36533



www.emperclock.com



READER SERVICE NO. 99

**1-800-945-7579 ASK FOR VICK**  
GUARANTEED LOWEST PRICES,  
& BEST CUSTOMER SERVICE!  
The fastest growing machinery  
company in the U.S.

SERVICING THE NEEDS OF AMERICAN  
WOODWORKERS FOR 18 YEARS

- EPIC MACHINERY BY HOLZ-HER • MINI-MAX
- JET • RITTER • POWERMATIC
- DELTA & MUCH MORE



**TOOLS PLUS**  
153 Meadow St.  
Waterbury, CT 06702  
203-573-0750

www.tools-plus.com

READER SERVICE NO. 52

**ONE-MAN SAWMILL**  
Turns Timber Into  
**CASH!**



Goes right to the trees!

Call NOW for FREE FACTS!  
**1-800-942-4406 ext. SB25**  
TIMBERKING, INC. Dept. SB25  
1431 N. TOPPING, KANSAS CITY, MO 64120  
www.timberking.com

READER SERVICE NO. 128

**IMPORTED and DOMESTIC LUMBER**  
widths to 18", lengths to 16'

- Architectural Plywood
- Veneers • Mouldings
- Turnings • Trims
- Custom Millwork

**m.l. CONDON**  
COMPANY Inc.  
248 Ferris Ave • White Plains NY 10603  
Call 914-946-4111 • FAX 914-946-3779

Call for a FREE price quote!

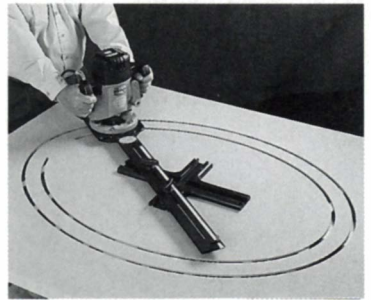


READER SERVICE NO. 111

**CUT PERFECT OVALS IN MINUTES!**

IT'S TRUE - WITH THE ELLIPSE MASTER® IT IS NOW POSSIBLE TO PRODUCE TRUE AND PERFECT ELLIPSES SO FAST AND ACCURATE YOU WON'T BELIEVE IT.

- The ELLIPSE MASTER®.....
- SETS UP IN MINUTES
  - PRODUCES CONCENTRIC CUTS TO .010 IN.
  - HAS A MINIMUM SIZE OF 21" x 27"
  - OPTIONAL EXTENSIONS CAN BE ADDED IN MINUTES TO PRODUCE ELLIPSES OF PRACTICALLY ANY SIZE AND SHAPE
  - CUTS CIRCLES TOO!
  - IS COMPLETELY PORTABLE



See why the ELLIPSE MASTER® is the quickest, easiest and most accurate way to cut true ellipses in practically any combination of sizes. You will see cuts being made from smaller picture frame sizes to large conference table sizes.

Call Toll Free 1-877-ELLIPSE

**NOW AVAILABLE**  
Demo/Instructional Video  
Just \$9.95 plus \$2.95 S/H  
Fully refundable with the purchase of the ELLIPSE MASTER®

**MBK ENTERPRISES Incorporated**  
P.O. Box 7692  
Hilton Head Island, SC 29938  
Fax: (843) 689-3709

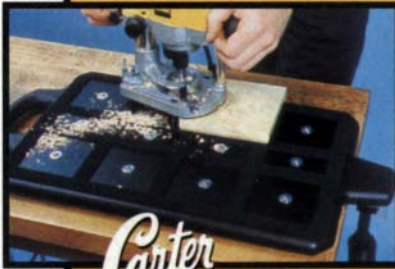


READER SERVICE NO. 119

**MINI MACH™**

THE TOTALLY PORTABLE VACUUM CLAMPING BED

- POWERED BY YOUR OWN SHOP VACUUM.
- IDEAL FOR ROUTING, SANDING, HAND PLANING AND SAWING APPLICATIONS.



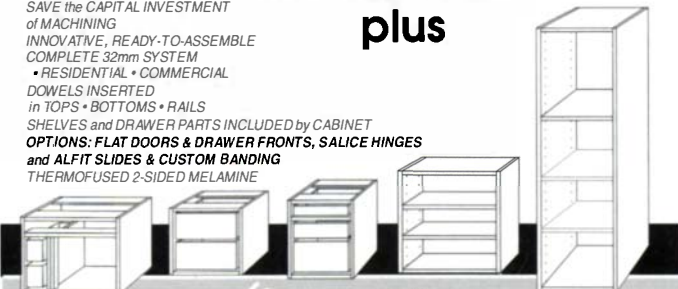
**Carter**  
PRODUCTS COMPANY Toll-free 1-888-622-7837 For FREE BROCHURE  
EMAIL: SALES@CARTERPRODUCTS.COM WEBSITE: WWW.CARTERPRODUCTS.COM

READER SERVICE NO. 132

**COMPONENTS plus**

SAVE the CAPITAL INVESTMENT of MACHINING  
INNOVATIVE, READY-TO-ASSEMBLE COMPLETE 32mm SYSTEM

- RESIDENTIAL • COMMERCIAL
- DOWELS INSERTED in TOPS • BOTTOMS • RAILS
- SHELVES and DRAWER PARTS INCLUDED by CABINET
- OPTIONS: FLAT DOORS & DRAWER FRONTS, SALICE HINGES and ALFIT SLIDES & CUSTOM BANDING
- TERMOFUSED 2-SIDED MELAMINE



**alfit > SALICE**

SIMPLIFIED ORDERING!  
Just fill out the spec form and order form. VASS will do the pricing for you.

**VASS**

CALL FOR A BROCHURE  
PHONE 303-321-5320 • FAX 303-321-5333  
3838 EUDORA WAY • DENVER, CO 80207

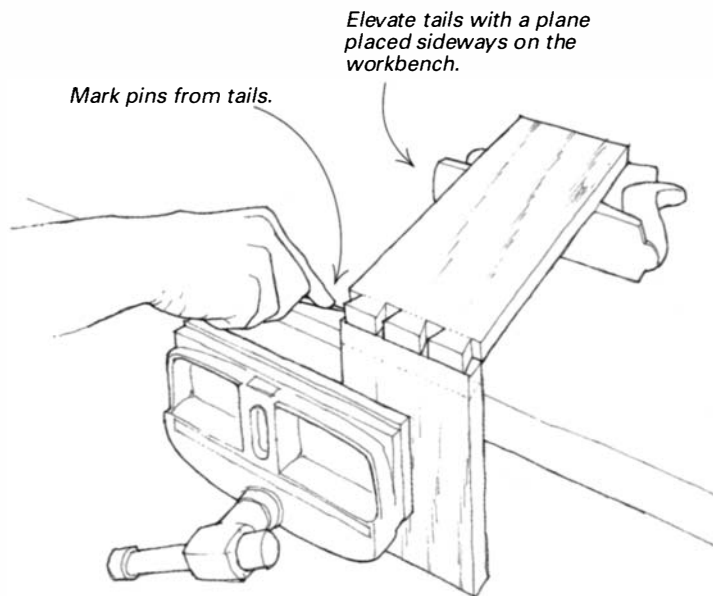
READER SERVICE NO. 17

# Methods of Work (continued)

soft pine scrap, and drive the nail heads into the pine. The pine supports the wood around the head and reduces splintering.

—Tom Quinn, Auburn, N.Y.

## Marking dovetail pins



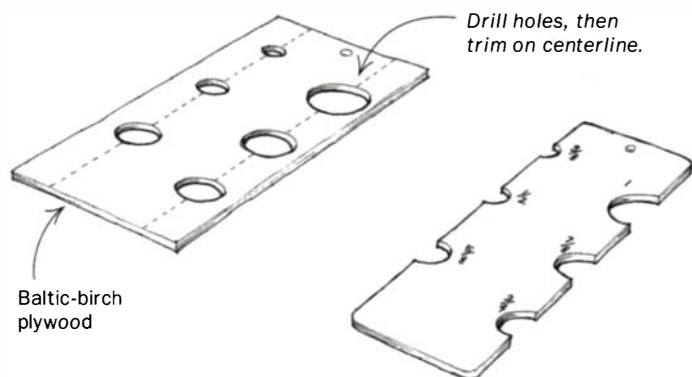
Here's a trick that simplifies the critical step of marking dovetails. Cut the tails in the drawer side first. Lay a handplane on its side on the bench, and clamp the drawer front (on which the pins will be marked) in the vise to the height of the plane. It's easy to lay the drawer side across the plane body and the clamped drawer front and transfer the outline of the tails to the pins by marking with a knife or an awl.

—Anthony Guidice, St. Louis, Mo.

**Quick tip:** The world's finest sanding block for curved surfaces is a piece of piano felt  $\frac{7}{16}$  in. thick. A piano tuner will know where to get the stuff.

—David Sawyer, East Calais, Vt.

## Tenon gauge



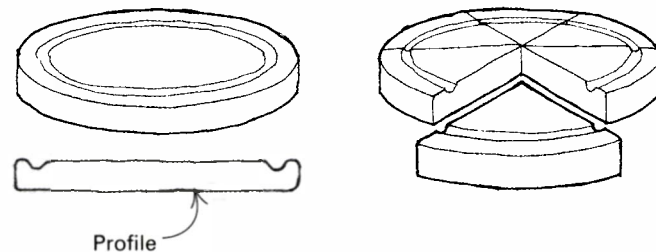
This gauge lets me check the size of turned tenons in a flash. Make the gauge from Baltic-birch plywood, which resists dimensional

changes with fluctuations in humidity. Sand and finish the gauge before you drill the holes so that the operations will neither add nor subtract from the final dimensions.—R.B. Himes, Vienna, Ohio

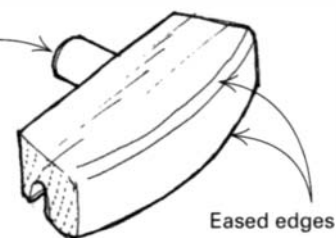
## Drawer pulls from a turned block

Turn disc with cove for finger space.

Slice disc into wedges.



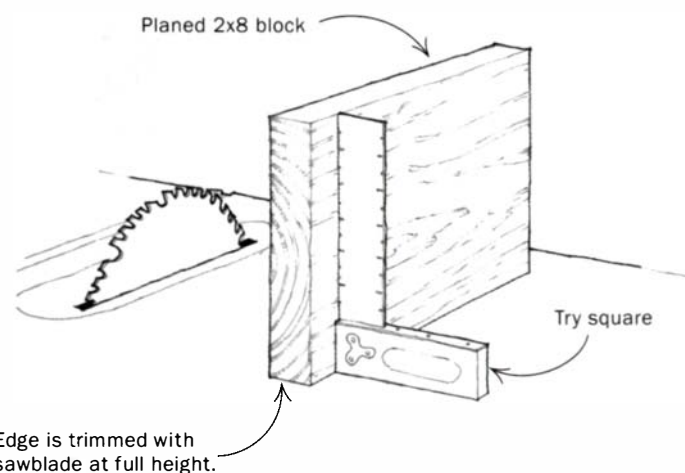
Trim off short end and make round tenon with plug cutter.



To make unique walnut drawer pulls for a bird's-eye maple bureau, I turned a 2-in.-thick, 8-in.-dia. disc on my lathe with a cove-shaped groove on the underside for finger space. On a band-saw, I sliced the disc into six pie-shaped pieces and trimmed off the short ends of each. Next I cut square tenons on the short ends of each piece and made those into dowels, or round tenons, using a plug cutter. I then drilled holes for the tenons in the drawer faces for installing the pulls.

—David St. George, Old Lyme, Conn.

## Setting a tablesaw blade at 90°



The time-honored way for setting a tablesaw blade so that it cuts a true 90° angle is to raise it up to its full height and put a square against it, carefully avoiding any of the teeth. I used this method

# Garrett Wade Tools Free Catalog



**SALE A / Cabinetmaker's Clamps Are Very Inexpensive – And Incredibly Useful**  
Despite their low cost, these are not Taiwan copies. They are high quality German-made. With a throat depth of 2½", these small fast-acting clamp are endlessly useful. They're light and strong, and the vinyl capped swivel end and perfectly flat jaw minimizes marring.

You'll be glad you have a bunch of them around your shop. You will be able to work faster and more efficiently because you won't have to search for those clamps you need.

*Regular Sale*  
37F01.10 4" Cab. Clamp (10) \$62.95 ~~\$44.95~~  
37F01.20 8" Cab. Clamp (10) \$68.95 ~~\$48.95~~  
37F01.30 12" Cab. Clamp (10) \$73.95 ~~\$52.95~~

Combination Set consists of 10 of each of the 3 sizes of clamps. 30 Clamps total- only \$4.65 each.

37F10.10 Combination Set \$205.85 ~~\$139.50~~

## B / Repointed Carbide Drills & Rasps Are An Incredible Bargain

These ⅛" shank drills, used in the electronics industry, have all been professionally resharpened. The assortment will have some duplications but there are about 20 different sizes and types. All are made in the spiral upcut style. The rasps have penetrating tips. *A phenomenal value.*

50J51.01 Carbide Set of 50 \$19.95

## SALE C / The Historic Stanley " #1 Odd-Job" Layout Tool Is Born Again

Originally made by Stanley from 1888 to the early 1930's, as useful to us today as it was then. Made in the USA of solid manganese bronze casting, carefully machined to .0015" tolerances on all sides. The screws are stainless steel.

It's an inside mitre and try square, a depth gauge, a scribing tool for arcs and circles, a T-square, a

depth marking scribe, a plumb level, and a 6" brass bound rule (also marked in mm). A 12" rule is an option. Rules are laser engraved.

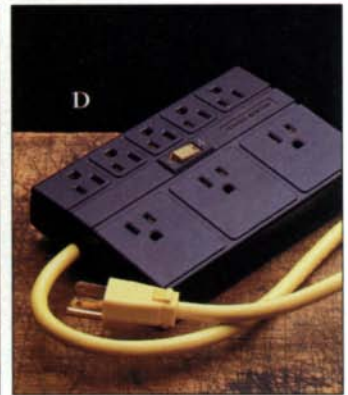
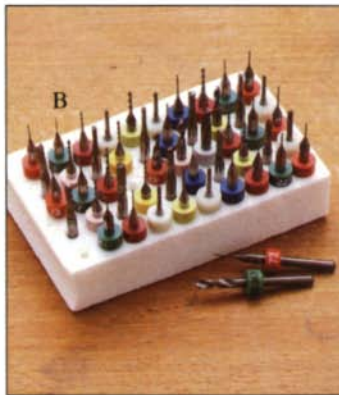
A special package of the #1 Odd-Job plus the optional 12" Rule is available at a big savings.

*Regular Sale*  
23N02.01 #1 Odd Job \$49.95  
19S11.02 12" Wood/Brass Rule \$29.95  
23N02.10 Odd Job & 12" Rule \$84.90 ~~\$72.50~~

## NEW D / An Outlet Designed For Shop Use – One With A Surge Protector & One Without

This Shop Multiple Outlet power strip contains 5 conventional sockets *plus 3 transformer outlets* – the type we all use for our computers, fax machines, answering machines, as well as recharging the batteries on our power tools.

13K08.01 Special Shop Mult. Outlet \$15.75  
06K08.01 Surge Protect. Mult. Outlet \$19.95



Like all Japanese saws it cuts very smoothly and quickly, but in the Western fashion, on the push stroke. The specially hardened teeth should last a lifetime. Must be used to be believed.

*Regular Sale*  
93K01.01 Japanese Tenon Saw \$37.50 ~~\$29.95~~

**Garrett Wade Co.**  
161 6th Avenue  
New York, NY 10013  
(USA & Canada call)  
phone- 800-221-2942  
fax- 800-566-9525

**Shipping Charges**  
Normal shipping charges apply. We will ship all over the world.  
Int'l 212-807-1155, or  
fax 212-255-8552

**SALE E / Iron Backed Tenon Saw Combines The Best Of Western & Japanese Style Saws**  
This new saw, with its unique tooth design, works astonishingly well – with a very smooth finish and an exceptionally fast cutting action.

This is a classic Western style tenon saw but with precision diamond cut Japanese-pattern teeth. (A Japanese-pattern tooth design is noted for its very fast cutting properties.) The 12" long blade has 15 tpi, and is set into a ¼" thick solid soft iron back. Depth of cut 3". The body of the blade is .025" Kerf is a narrow .035".

## FREE CATALOG

Our high quality Woodworking Catalog has thousands of tools to choose from. Visit our web site at [www.garrettwade.com](http://www.garrettwade.com) or call/fax us at the numbers below to order a catalog.

## Special Offer

### SALE F / Stanley Honing Guide

The Stanley's body is made of steel nearly ⅜" thick with a cast clamp jaw. It has two rollers, side by side, for an effective roller width of 1⅜", without tending to drag, as a single, wide roller may. Particularly effective for holding very short tools (like spokeshave blades). Made in England. *Save 35%. Limit one Honing Guide per order.*

*Regular Sale*  
23M01.02 Honing Guide \$15.95 ~~\$9.95~~

*When you purchase anything else from us, just add this item number to your order to obtain the special price shown. A truly great value.*



To Order Call 800-221-2942 or fax 800-566-9525  
Or Visit us at [www.garrettwade.com](http://www.garrettwade.com)

# Methods of Work (continued)

for many years but never found it completely satisfactory for two reasons. If you have a wobbling blade or a throat insert that isn't level, you don't get an accurate reading.

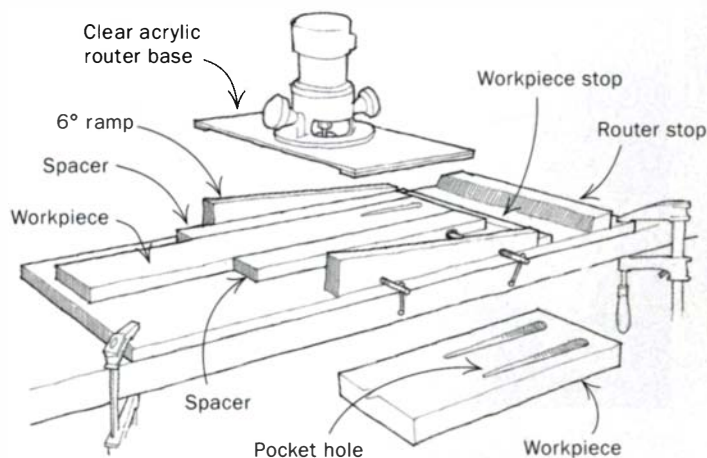
I now use another technique that's easy to set up and totally accurate. Select a piece of 2x8 scrap a foot or so in length and plane both sides of it. Trim both edges of the block with the blade fully raised. Remove the sawdust from the saw table and stand the block on one of the freshly trimmed edges. Place a try square against the block. A board this wide and this thick will give a highly accurate reading against a good square. Adjust the tilt of the blade and trim the block again, until the cut is perfectly square.

—Thomas J. Brooks Jr., Jackson, Miss.

**Quick tip:** Use a lever-arm paper cutter, available at any office supply store, to cut sandpaper. The built-in ruler makes the job simple and quick. Also, the cutter does not get dull quickly, as you might expect. Mine has been in use for more than five years and still cuts like new.

—Ed Reiss, Berea, Ky.

## Router ramp for pocket holes



I built this router-based pocket-hole ramp when I became frustrated with my drill fixture. The router slides down the ramps to cut a low, 6°-angle pocket hole. It's quick and simple. There's no shifting of the workpiece and no frayed edges on the cut.

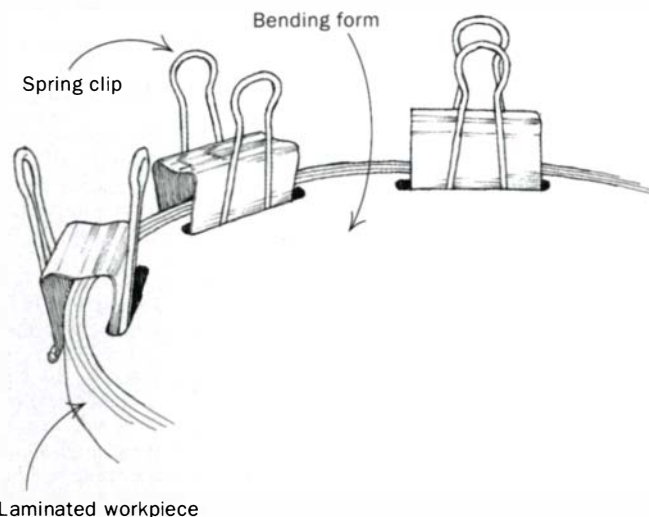
To make the fixture, attach two 6° ramps on each side of a plywood base. Install T-nuts and bolts in one of the ramps to provide a clamping system for the workpiece. Attach stops for the workpiece and the router at the base of the ramp. The distance between the router stop and the workpiece stop will determine the depth of the pocket hole, so position the stops carefully. Also, you will need to make an acrylic or Plexiglas base for your router. Add 1/4-in.-thick guide rails to the underside of the base to ride on the outside of the ramps.

To set up for a cut, place the workpiece in the fixture against the stop, positioning the workpiece so that the pocket cut will be in the right location. Drop in some scrap spacers to hold the workpiece in position. Tighten the clamps. Chuck a 3/8-in. round-nose bit into the router. With the router in place at the top of the ramps, turn it on, and slide it down to the router stop to make the pocket hole. Drill the pilot hole in the pocket after the workpieces have

been clamped together. Use a 6-in. pilot bit and driver to keep the screw angle low.

—Michael Csontos, Prescott, Ariz.

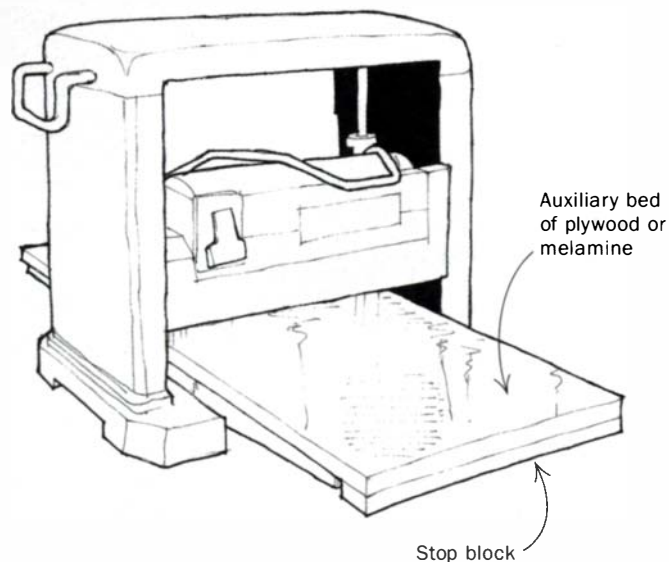
## Spring clips for clamping



When making bentwood laminations, I had never had enough clamps, until I began using spring clips available at the stationery store. The clips come in several sizes and are cheap, lightweight and strong.

—Steve Borton, Vancouver, B.C., Canada

## Auxiliary planer bed



I use a piece of 3/4-in. plywood over the bed of my thickness planer when I plane thin boards, to avoid lowering the head so tightly. This fixture also reduces snipe. Attaching a stop block to the underside of the fixture will prevent it from moving through the planer. For better wear and reduced friction, you could also make the fixture from melamine.

—Omar Showalter, Harrisonburg, Va.

WWW.

woodcraft

.com

Get with the click.

READER SERVICE NO. 87

MAKE YOUR SHOP PERFECT

You've invested a lot into your workshop. Now get the most out of your equipment.

- Mobile bases
- Pedestal rollers
- Outfeed rollers
- Tool tables
- Shop accessories and more

For a FREE full-color catalog, call: 1-800-624-2027

HTC Products, Inc., Royal Oak, MI 48068-0839



READER SERVICE NO. 131

# Tight Quarters?

Concerned about space? Concerned about cost?

So are we. Our X31 Combination machines have it all: Panel saw, shaper, planer, mortiser, jointer, and microwave. Less space, less cost, less hassle and less time wasted if you own a Robland X31 or LX31. Do it right the first time with the very best

European machine from the largest and most experienced direct seller in North America, Laguna Tools. The finest craftsmanship, durability, and value for the

money. You can spend more, but you can't

buy a more precise, powerful or dependable machine. Backed by the most complete customer support in the industry. Call our 800 number today to receive your free demo video and learn why the Robland X31 is the most popular combination machine in the world today.



## LAGUNA TOOLS

2265 Laguna Canyon Road, Laguna Beach, CA 92651  
800-234-1976 • (949) 494-7006 • Fax (949) 497-1346

E mail: lagunatools@earthlink.net • Visit our Website: www.lagunatools.com

READER SERVICE NO. 43

The Professional's Choice

for over 60 years

# Titebond

Tech Service  
1-800-347-GLUE

Customer Service  
1-800-669-4583

©1998 Franklin International

READER SERVICE NO. 6



**Lee Valley and Veritas® Tools bring you a selection of products from their full-color, 252-page catalog.**



Forstner Bit



Saw Tooth Bit

**Forstner Bits/Saw Tooth Bits**

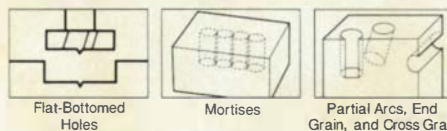
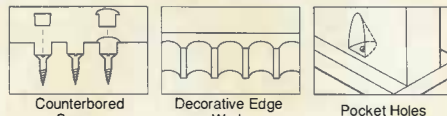
Forstner-pattern bits are used wherever edge-holding ability is needed, such as in the overlapping holes of a mortise. The razor rim allows the bit to hold perfectly, even if the brad point is over a void. Since the rim is several thousandths of an inch higher than the chippers, the bit enters cleanly and the double chip channels clear well. The bit gives a cleanly cut, flat-bottomed hole ideal for plugging. A primary use for this bit in the woodworking industry is to drill out knots for later plugging.

Saw tooth bits (usually over 1" in diameter) are primarily for use in a drill press. They are most useful for boring smooth, clean holes in all wood varieties at any angle. The double chip channels are less subject to rim heat than forstners and are easier to sharpen. Although their edge-holding ability in overlapped holes is slightly less than forstners, the difference is negligible in drill-press use.

**High-Speed Steel Forstner/Saw Tooth Bits**

Made exactly to our specifications, these HSS bits took over a year to develop and refine. In difficult woods or under continuous use, heat build-up will not draw the temper of high-speed steel, a problem that is common with carbon steel forstner bits. Bits larger than 1" dia. have 1/2" hex shanks to prevent slippage in a chuck. Bits up to 1" dia. are forstner pattern and have 3/8" round shanks.

The rim on the forstners is proud of the chippers by only .005", reducing rim heat. The saw tooth styles are true saw teeth, not forstner bits with rim notches. The teeth have a skewed shear-cut design to prevent fiber pull and to give clean holes. Both styles have slightly sloped chipping bevels so that bits ride a shallow cone of wood to keep them boring straight. Center brads can then be shorter, increasing bit versatility in thin material. As a last touch, bits have been finished with extra-fine grinding wheels to reduce friction.



Overall length is 3 1/2" for bits up to 1", 5" for bits from 1 1/8" to 2", and 6 1/2" for bits over 2". These are the best value we have in bits.

- A. Set of 7 Forstner Bits – in 8ths**  
Our most popular set of bits. They include sizes 1/4", 3/8", 1/2", 5/8", 3/4", 7/8" and 1". Also available with a wooden box for storage.  
**FW570** Set of 7 HSS Forstners **\$27.50**  
**FW566** Box of 7 HSS Forstners **\$32.50**
- B. Set of 6 Forstners – in 16ths**  
This set of six includes sizes 5/16", 7/16", 9/16", 11/16", 13/16" and 15/16".  
**FW565** Set of 6 HSS Forstners **\$27.50**
- Set of 13 Forstners – in 16ths**  
A set of 13 sizes from 1/4" to 1" by 16ths. Wooden box included.  
**FW567** Box of 13 HSS Forstners **\$56.00**
- C. Set of 16 Saw Teeths – in 8ths**  
This boxed set includes 16 sizes from 1 1/8" to 3" by 8ths. Sizes include 1 1/8", 1 1/4", 1 3/8", 1 1/2", 1 5/8", 1 3/4", 1 7/8", 2", 2 1/8", 2 1/4", 2 3/8", 2 1/2", 2 5/8", 2 3/4", 2 7/8" and 3".  
**FW568** Box of 16 HSS Saw Teeths **\$179.00**
- Set of 29 Bits**  
This boxed set of 29 bits includes our set of 13 forstners (1/4" to 1" by 16ths) and our set of 16 saw teeths (1 1/8" to 3" by 8ths).  
**FW569** Box of 29 HSS Bits **\$225.00**

**Lee Valley & Veritas®**  
*Innovation in tools®*

Products with the Veritas® trademark are made by Veritas® Tools Inc., the manufacturing arm of Lee Valley Tools Ltd.  
**Lee Valley Tools Ltd., 12 East River Street, Ogdensburg, N.Y. 13669**

**Guarantee** – We pledge to you the best service we can provide with personal attention and the best value on every order. If you are not satisfied for any reason, just return your purchase within 3 months by insured parcel post to our Ogdensburg, N.Y., address. You can choose to either exchange the product, or receive a complete refund, including your return insured parcel post costs.



Individual Forstner Bits					
Size	Product#	Price	Size	Product#	Price
1/4	FW504	\$ 3.90	11/16	FW511	\$ 5.40
5/16	FW505	\$ 3.90	3/4	FW512	\$ 5.50
3/8	FW506	\$ 4.40	13/16	FW513	\$ 5.75
7/16	FW507	\$ 4.65	7/8	FW514	\$ 6.00
1/2	FW508	\$ 4.70	15/16	FW515	\$ 6.25
9/16	FW509	\$ 5.00	1	FW516	\$ 6.50
5/8	FW510	\$ 5.30			

Individual Saw Tooth Bits					
Size	Product#	Price	Size	Product#	Price
1 1/16	FW517	\$ 6.90	2 5/16	FW537	\$15.65
1 1/8	FW518	\$ 7.15	2 3/8	FW538	\$16.25
1 3/16	FW519	\$ 7.25	2 1/2	FW539	\$17.25
1 1/4	FW520	\$ 7.40	2 1/2	FW540	\$18.15
1 5/16	FW521	\$ 7.55	2 9/16	FW541	\$18.75
1 3/8	FW522	\$ 7.65	2 5/8	FW542	\$19.40
1 7/16	FW523	\$ 8.00	2 11/16	FW543	\$20.30
1 1/2	FW524	\$ 8.40	2 3/4	FW544	\$20.90
1 9/16	FW525	\$ 8.75	2 13/16	FW545	\$21.60
1 5/8	FW526	\$ 9.00	2 7/8	FW546	\$22.25
1 11/16	FW527	\$ 9.40	2 15/16	FW547	\$23.15
1 3/4	FW528	\$ 9.65	3	FW548	\$24.00
1 13/16	FW529	\$ 9.90	3 1/8	FW550	\$24.65
1 7/8	FW530	\$10.00	3 1/4	FW552	\$25.50
1 15/16	FW531	\$10.25	3 3/8	FW554	\$27.20
2	FW532	\$10.50	3 1/2	FW556	\$28.75
2 1/16	FW533	\$11.50	3 5/8	FW558	\$30.65
2 1/8	FW534	\$12.15	3 3/4	FW560	\$32.20
2 3/16	FW535	\$13.50	3 7/8	FW562	\$34.00
2 1/4	FW536	\$14.70	4	FW564	\$34.90

### Veritas® Power Tenon Cutters

For anyone building rustic furniture, our new aluminum-body tenon cutters will cut perfect, smooth tenons with radiused shoulders. The anodized bodies are balanced to run vibration free when driven by an



electric drill and include an integral level vial for accurate in-line cutting and a built-in honing guide for easy blade sharpening.

Sizes 5/8" to 1" cut 2 3/4" long tenons and are typically used for rustic furniture. Sizes 1 1/2" and 2" cut 4 1/4" long tenons for larger structural connections such as fence rail to post. Each has a non-slip hex shank; sizes 5/8" to 1" are for use in an electric drill with a 3/8" (or larger) chuck, while sizes 1 1/2" and 2" are for use in an electric drill with a 1/2" (or larger) chuck. The square-shanked adapter is for use in a hand drill. Patent pending.

- FW580 Power Tenon Cutter - 5/8" \$ 52.75
- FW581 Power Tenon Cutter - 3/4" \$ 54.75
- D. FW582 Power Tenon Cutter - 1" \$ 56.75
- FW583 Power Tenon Cutter - 1 1/2" \$ 59.75
- E. FW584 Power Tenon Cutter - 2" \$ 61.75
- FW585 Set of 3 Cutters (5/8" to 1") \$145.00
- FW587 Set of all 5 Cutters \$250.00
- FW586 Repl. Blade \$ 11.50

### Veritas® Mini Tenon Cutters

We developed these smaller-diameter tenon cutters for use with small stock. Available in four cutting diameters: 1/4", 3/8", 1/2" and 9/16". The 9/16" tenon is the size used historically for chair rungs. The other sizes (1/4" to 1/2") are useful in many areas, e.g., members within trellis or lattice work. All sizes have a straight blade that cuts a 60° shoulder tenon (not a radiused shoulder tenon as on the larger sizes). The 1/4" and 3/8" sizes cut tenons up to 1" long, and the 1/2" and 9/16" sizes cut tenons up to 1 1/2" long. A plug gauge is included for easy blade setting. For use in any hand drill. 3/8" round shank. Patent pending.

- E. FW590 Mini Tenon Cutter - 1/4" \$17.50
- FW591 Mini Tenon Cutter - 3/8" \$19.50
- FW592 Mini Tenon Cutter - 1/2" \$21.50
- G. FW593 Mini Tenon Cutter - 9/16" \$23.50
- FW594 Repl. Blade \$ 1.95

### H. Silicon Carbide Sleeves

These silicon carbide sleeves are specifically for sharpening our power tenon cutter blades. Available in either 80x or 120x as packages of three. Although they fit a standard 1 1/2" x 1 1/2" sanding drum, we have a single drum listed separately in case you do not have this size in your shop.

- FW597 80x SiC Sleeves, pkg. of 3 \$2.50
- FW598 120x SiC Sleeves, pkg. of 3 \$2.50
- J. FW596 Sanding Drum, 1 1/2" x 1 1/2" \$2.50

## A Catalog Of Solutions

Our 252-page, full-color catalog has the widest selection of woodworking hand tools on the market. It is filled with detailed information (like above) plus many technical tips.

Visit our Web site at [www.leevalley.com](http://www.leevalley.com)

Call: 1-800-871-8158

or fax: 1-800-513-7885

Our catalog is \$5 (refunded with first order) or FREE with any purchase from this ad.

N.Y. residents, add sales tax.

Overseas, call: 1-613-596-0350 or fax: 1-613-596-6030.

# Tools & Materials

## Power planer excels at trimming curved work



**Fair that curve.** The Virutex curve planer has an adjustable sole plate. It will cut concave radii as tight as  $17\frac{11}{16}$  in. or convex radii as tight as  $16\frac{3}{4}$  in.

The Virutex curve planer is a big improvement on the only other tool made for this kind of work, the old-fashioned compass plane. Unfortunately, the hand tool is difficult to use without getting some tearout because the wood's grain often changes direction at some point on curved work. But the Virutex is easy to use and produces a very clean cut. (For a discussion on using a classic compass plane, see Master Class on p. 114.)

Spinning at 16,500 rpm, the two blades in the Virutex cutterhead make 33,000 cuts per minute. That's 550 cuts per second. Even when planing against the grain, tearout is minimal. The Virutex's flexible steel sole can be adjusted to the radius of a concave or convex curve. The tool also can be used on flat surfaces.

I make a lot of curved handrails, window and door jambs. It's tough to justify a router or shaper setup for one or two parts. With the electric planer, I can bandsaw the part to the right radius, then simply plane it smooth. The Virutex can be adjusted to a minimum concave radius of  $17\frac{11}{16}$  in. and a minimum convex radius of  $16\frac{3}{4}$  in.

Made in Spain, the tool is stoutly built, has plenty of power and comes with a dust-collection vacuum hose adapter, reversible blades and a fence guide.

Compared with the \$175 price tag for a Record compass plane, the only such tool still made, spending \$299 on the Virutex seems reasonable. —Lon Schleining

## TransTint concentrated dyes resist fading

There is nothing new about liquid dye stains—they have been around for years. What makes Homestead Finishing Products TransTint concentrated dyes noteworthy is their resistance to fading.

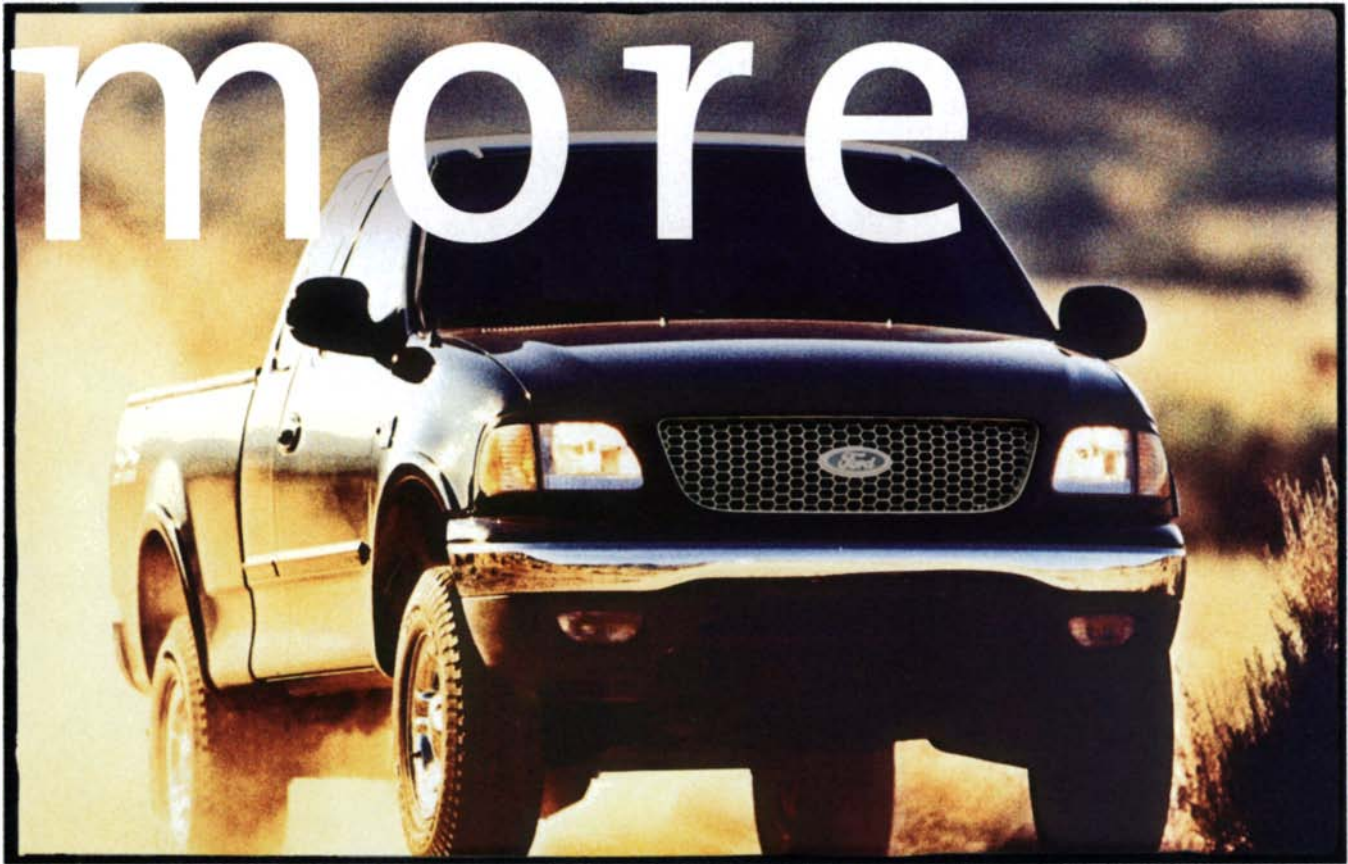
I tested several different shades of TransTint wood dye for light fastness in an industrial accelerated weathering chamber. I found that the TransTint dyes are superior to powdered alcohol dyes and equivalent to or slightly better than powdered water-soluble dyes (considered the most light-fast variety of dye).

As an added bonus, the colors are gor-



**Liquid dyes.** TransTint dyes, which are available in wood tones as well as in primary colors, resist fading.





**NOBODY GIVES YOU MORE MODEL CHOICES. NOBODY.**



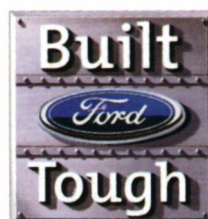
FORD F-SERIES AND SUPER DUTY F-SERIES.  
56 MODEL CONFIGURATIONS. THAT'S MORE  
THAN DODGE OR CHEVY CAN GIVE YOU.

INCLUDING 17 CONFIGURATIONS THEY DON'T EVEN OFFER.

WHICH MEANS NO TRUCK CAN BE TAILORED TO FIT  
THE JOB LIKE F-SERIES. IF YOU WANT MORE CHOICES,  
YOU'VE GOT JUST ONE CHOICE. FORD F-SERIES.



**Ford F-Series**



1-800-258-FORD or  
[www.fordvehicles.com](http://www.fordvehicles.com)

geous. The wood tones look like they should—natural with no odd-colored overtones or artificial appearance. The primary colors are vibrant and bright.

A 2-oz. bottle of TransTint dye concentrate makes up to a half gallon of stain when dissolved in two quarts of water or alcohol. Custom shades are easily produced by mixing two or more TransTint colors and adjusting the dye-to-solvent ratio. You can also make toners by adding the dye directly to shellac, water-based finishes or solvent-based lacquers.

TransTint dyes are soluble in water, alcohol and lacquer thinner. They are not soluble in VM&P naphtha or mineral spirits. If you wish to use them in oil-based varnishes (which are thinned with mineral spirits), the manufacturer recommends mixing the dyes with acetone, then adding that mixture to the varnish. Substituting lacquer retarder for acetone gave me better results. TransTint dyes cost \$15 per 2-oz. bottle. For availability, call (440) 582-8929.

—Chris Minick

## Diamond bench stones from Norton

Why should you consider sharpening with diamond bench stones? They cut fast, they're flat, and they stay flat. Need more reasons? Oh yes, the only maintenance required is an occasional rinsing with water.

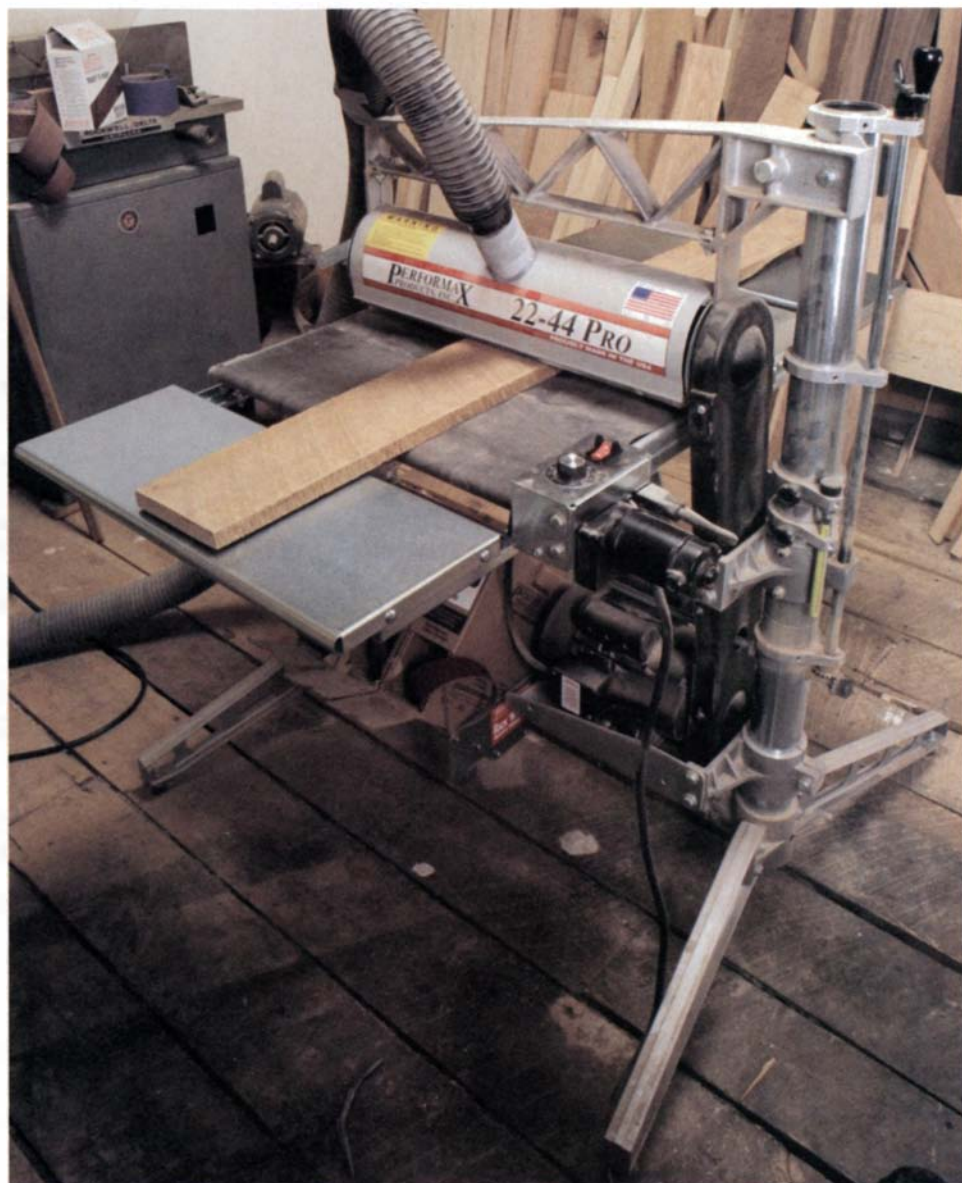
Norton is the latest company to introduce diamond bench stones. Four grits are available: extrafine (1,200 grit), fine (600 grit), coarse (325 grit) and extracoarse (220 grit). Unless you plan to grind rough castings or severely pitted tools, the fine and extrafine stones are all you need. (For a really fine edge, add a Japanese 6,000-grit stone to the routine.)

The diamond stones are good for lapping the soles of planes and for sharpening hand tools, including carbide-tipped tools. The stones come in several sizes, but we like the largest plates, which are  $\frac{3}{8}$  in. thick by 2½ in. wide by 11½ in. long.

We measured the stones, and they were within 0.0015 in. flat in either direction. The company aims for a tolerance of 0.002 in. The large stones cost about \$50 apiece. For availability, call Norton at (800) 848-7379.

—Fine Woodworking staff

## An affordable drum sander for the small shop



**Reasonably priced drum sander.** The Performax 22-44 Pro is a good compromise between a hand scraper and an expensive, commercial sander.

Two weeks of hand-scraping a large, curly cherry sideboard using a Stanley No. 112 scraper convinced me it was time to invest in a power drum sander. I couldn't justify a large commercial machine for my shop, so I decided to buy a Performax 22-44 Pro sanding machine. I figure I avoided another 40 or so hours of scraping by running the rest of the sideboard stock through the Performax.

I like the simplicity of the 22-44 Pro. It seems rugged enough, and adjustments are easy to make. While the machine is super for a small shop doing limited produc-

tion, I would not recommend it for a midsized or larger shop. It's a nice compromise between a hand scraper and a commercial belt sander costing thousands of dollars more. Although the Performax will thickness-sand too, I won't retire my thickness planer, which works faster.

A key to the success of the Performax is using high-quality abrasives, which are available from Klingspor or 3M. Abrasives are spiral-wrapped around the machine's 22-in.-wide aluminum drum. Changing paper takes only a few minutes. Because all sandpaper stretches initially, be sure to ad-

# 25" Wide Belt Sanders enter a new phase.

## Sunhill Single Phase 25" Wide Belt Sander



**NEW!**

**SDS-25**

- 10HP, 1Ph or 15HP 3Ph
- Variable Speed standard
- Photoelectronic tracking
- Call for full specifications and pricing

Also: Call for specials on our 15" Wide Belt Sanders!

We stock a full line of quality wide belt sanders, from 15" to 52", single & double belt

Call 1-800-929-4321  
or visit us at: [www.sunhillnic.com](http://www.sunhillnic.com)



The Best Machinery Value in America.™

Sunhill Machinery, 500 Andover Park East, Seattle, WA 98188  
toll-free: 1-800-929-4321 • fax: 206-575-3617 • e-mail: [sunhill@sunhillnic.com](mailto:sunhill@sunhillnic.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 137

## ODDS-N-ENDS TOOLS

TOLL FREE  
1 888 779 6444

MON-FRI 8 to 5 MST

## POWER TOOL BLOW-OUT

DeWALT  
DW705 COMPOUND  
MITER SAW

**\$315**

DW705

DW106 3/8 KEYLESS CHUCK DRILL	\$65	DW673K 7/8HP LAMINATE TRIM KIT	\$185
DW120K 1/2" RT ANGLE DRILL	\$225	DW677K 3 1/4 HD PLANNER KIT	\$145
DW124K 1/2" JOIST STUD DRILL KIT	\$319	DW682K 6.5AMP PLATE JOINTER KIT	\$189
DW130 1/2" SPADE HDL DRILL	\$165	DW708 12" SLIDING CMPD MITER SAW	\$645
DW236 1/2" VSR DRILL KEYLESS	\$159	DW730 MITER SAW WORK STATION	\$269
DW245 1/2" VSR DRILL	\$149	DW733 12 1/2" PORTABLE PLANNER	\$449
DW251 4000RPM DRYWALL GUN	\$85	DW744 10" PORTABLE TABLE SAW	\$529
DW257 2500RPM DECK/DRYWALL GUN	\$95	DW788 20" VS SCROLL SAW	\$435
DW274 HVY DTY 4000RPM D/W GUN	\$99	DW870 14" METAL CUTOFF SAW	\$209
DW290 1/2" IMPACT WRENCH	\$185	DW936K 18V CORDLESS TRIM SAW KIT	\$239
DW303 6.5 AMP RECIPRO SAW	\$99	DW937K 14.4 VOLT RECIPRO SAW KIT	\$239
DW307K 9AMP LEVER ACTION RECIPRO	\$149	DW938K 18 VOLT RECIPRO SAW KIT	\$278
DW309K 10AMPLVR ACTION RECIPRO	\$165	DW953K2 12V DRILL/DRIVER KIT 2 BATTS	\$149
DW318K 4.5 AMP JIGSAW KIT	\$119	DW952K2 9.6V DRILL/DRIVER KIT 2 BATTS	\$119
DW321K 5.8AMP JIGSAW KIT	\$159	DW972K2 12V DRILL/DRIVER KIT 2 BATTS	\$179
DW359K 7-1/4 CIRCULAR SAW KIT	\$129	DW991K2 14.4V DRILL/DRIVER KIT 2 BATT	\$189
DW378G "NEW" FRAMERS SAW	\$159	DW995K 18V DRILL DRIVER KIT	\$215
DW400 4-1/2 ANGLE GRINDER	\$68	DW997K 18V HAMMERDRILL/DRIVER KIT	\$229
DW402 HVY DTY 4-1/2 GRINDER	\$89	DW998K 18V HAMMERDRILL/DRIVER KIT	\$245
DW412 1/4 PALM GRIP SANDER	\$48	DW991KS2 14.4 DRILL/SAW KIT 2 BATTS	\$339
DW421 5" RANDOM ORBIT SANDER	\$65	DW995KS2 18V DRILL/SAW KIT 2 BATTS	\$349
DW423 5" RANDOM ORBIT VS SANDER	\$79	DW991KC2 14.4 DRILL/RECIPRO KIT 2 BAT	\$369
DW430 3X21 BELT SANDER	\$165	DW995KC2 18V DRILL/RECIP KIT 2 BATTS	\$399
DW431 3X21 VS BELT SANDER	\$185	DW997KC2 18V HAMMER DRILL/RECIP KIT	\$429
DW474 7" ANGLE GRINDER	\$149		
DW505 1/2" 7.2 AMP HAMMER DRILL	\$145		
DW514K 3/4" SDS ROTARY HAMMER	\$219		
DW610 1 1/2HP ROUTER	\$139		
DW621 2HP VS PLUNGE ROUTER	\$215		
DW625 3HP VS PLUNGE ROUTER	\$259		

### DW4PAK

18V DRILL  
RECIPRO  
CIRC SAW  
CASE  
2BATTS



PRICING AND AVAILABILITY SUBJECT TO CHANGE

Odds-N-Ends Tools 1763 E. Butler Ave, Flagstaff, Arizona 86001 — Fax 1 520779 0499

READER SERVICE NO. 163

# YOU'RE SERIOUS ABOUT WOODWORKING. SO ARE WE.

ERGONOMIC,  
SOFT GRIP HANDLE DESIGN  
FOR COMFORTABLE,  
ONE-HANDED CONTROL

ADJUSTABLE  
DEPTH OF  
DRIVE FOR  
FLUSH DRIVE OR  
COUNTERSINK

INDICATOR  
TELLS YOU  
WHEN  
IT'S TIME  
TO RELOAD

PADDED CONTACT  
POINTS KEEP YOUR  
WORK CLEAN  
AND MAR FREE

REAR EXHAUST  
KEEPS YOUR  
WORK CLEAN

Want to do woodworking like the pros? Then check out the new AccuSet™ line of air-powered fastening tools from SENCO, the brand chosen #1 by professional builders.\* AccuSet™ brad nailers and finish staplers have more power, more features and the best warranty in the business. And with prices starting around \$100, you'll have money left over for project materials. To find the retail outlet nearest you, call our toll-free number, 1-888-222-8144.

# ACCUSET

THE TOOLS YOU NEED FOR THE WORK YOU DO.



\* Professional Builders Brand Use Study, 1996, 1997.

Ask us. Call toll-free 1-888-222-8144 Or visit us on the web [www.accuset.com](http://www.accuset.com)  
©1998 Senco Products, Inc. 8485 Broadwell Road, Cincinnati, Ohio 45244-1699

just the tension after the first pass. It's also important to start with a sufficiently coarse grit and not skip any. I start with 36 grit for rough-sawn boards and 80 grit for most everything else.

The 22-44's cantilevered design, which is open on one side, allows you to sand a wide panel in two passes by sanding one half at a time. I can sand a panel just a hair under 44 in. wide. The machine accepts stock up to 4 in. thick. You can also sand very thin stock. I took some curly maple down to 0.040 in. with no problem.

The Performax has an infinitely variable feed rate from 0 ft. to 10 ft. per minute. Although the manufacturer claims the machine can remove up to 1/16 in. per pass, I found that lighter passes, especially with the finer-grit papers, work best. Running a batch of panels through four grits can take some time, but it beats scraping. I wonder whether that Stanley No. 112 would make a nice lamp. The Performax 22-44 Pro sells for about \$1,800. For more information, call Performax at (800) 334-4910.

—Ernie Conover



**Quick-cutting rasps.** Microplanes come in about a dozen shapes. They leave a finer surface than steel rasps do.

## Microplanes cut aggressively

Grace Manufacturing's line of Microplanes work on a principle similar to the Stanley Surform files and planes. Both employ perforated sheet-metal cutters, but the stainless-steel Microplanes cut finer and come in about a dozen shapes and sizes.

The flat and half-round shapes are held in a hacksaw frame. Some will fit Surform handles. And the round and square files are mounted in turned wood handles.

I got the best results working across or diagonally to the grain. The Microplanes meant to fit Surform handles, where the rows of blades are arranged in a semicircular pattern, work well cutting with the grain. These tools are aggressive; the hacksaw frame allows a two-handed attack.

When trying to make precision strokes, it was difficult to grasp the unhandled end of the round and square tools. Because these tools are light and somewhat flexible, they don't give me the control I get with heavier

# this fine project



# this free catalog

fasteners - finishes - hardware - hand tools - sandpaper - and more  
**Jamestown Distributors 800-423-0030**  
[www.jamestowndistributors.com](http://www.jamestowndistributors.com)

Boatbuilding & Woodworking Supplies to the Trade & Craftsmen  
 28 Narragansett Ave., P.O. Box 348, Jamestown, RI 02835, Fax 800-423-0542

READER SERVICE NO. 178

## THE SCHOOL FOR PROFESSIONAL CRAFTS

clay • fiber • metal • wood



At the Worcester Center for Crafts, you'll have one-on-one instruction from nationally recognized craftspeople and 24-hour studio access.

Call, fax or email for information on all our programs;  
 School for Professional Crafts, Artists-in-Residence,  
 Workshops, Adult & Children's Classes

25 Sagamore Road Worcester, MA 01605  
 508-753-8183 • fax: 508-797-5626  
 email: [craftcenter@worcester.org](mailto:craftcenter@worcester.org)  
[www.craftcenter.worcester.org](http://www.craftcenter.worcester.org)



READER SERVICE NO. 191

## New!

From the makers of the  
 Collins Coping Foot



(cut exaggerated for clarity)



The Ply Prep router bit gives you a perfect glue line every time!  
 The Ply Prep cuts out just a little of the core, making space for inner plies to expand with glue. Eliminate the need for putty, clamp thin moldings with masking tape, use fewer clamps for heavy trim, and make plywood splices that are virtually invisible!

**Collins Tool Company**  
 Innovative Tools for the Professional Woodworker  
 P.O. Box 417, Plain City, Ohio 43064 — Pat Pend

\$24.95 plus s/h  
 Call 1-888-838-8988  
 Fax 1-614-873-1676.  
 All major credit cards.

READER SERVICE NO. 46

**ANDERSON RANCH ARTS CENTER**

**1999 Workshops**

Stephen Proctor Gail Fredell  
 Sam Maloof William Belisle  
 Garry Knox Bennett Peter Pieroban  
 Kim Kelzer Robert Ingham  
 Paul Sasso Lewis Knauss

P. O. Box 5598, Snowmass Village, Colorado 81615  
 Call for our free catalog: 970/923-3181  
 Fax: 970/923-3871 EMail: artranch@rof.net



READER SERVICE NO. 97

**General**

**10" Table Saw**  
 100% North American Made

**Only \$1,749**



**FREE**  
 Table Board, Leg Set & Carbide Blade

**More General Machinery**

- 15" Band Saw (#490-1) 1HP.....\$1,199
- 12" Lathe (#160-2) 1HP.....\$1,349
- 12" HD Lathe (#260-VD).....\$2,695
- 8" Jointer (#480-1).....\$1,699
- 6" Jointer (#1180-1) 1HP.....\$ 899
- 15" Drill Press (#34-01).....\$ 799
- 14" Planer (#130-1) 3 HP.....\$2,999



2625 Beaver Avenue, Des Moines, IA 50310

**1-800-835-5084**

http://www.augusthome.com

READER SERVICE NO. 44



**The Portable Sawmill.**

The **'affordable portable'** one man band sawmill. Weighs only 45 lbs. Cuts 20" diameter logs into lumber. Minimum 1/8" to maximum 9" thickness. Maximum width, 14". Start-up video available.



**Better Built CORPORATION**

789 Woburn Street, Dept. FW  
 Wilmington, MA 01887  
 Website: www.ripsaw.com  
 e-mail: info@ripsaw.com

(978) 657-5636

fax (978) 658-0444

Call or write for free brochure

READER SERVICE NO. 21

# Cut It Close.

Our line of bandsaws is truly remarkable. Not only for the selection, with over a dozen models to drool over, but for the amount of machine you get for your money. We give you larger re-saw capacity, greater power, and bigger blade widths. Exquisite European craftsmanship built to last and perform cut after cut.



Buy the only bandsaw you'll ever need from the largest and most experienced direct



seller in North America, Laguna Tools.

Consistently the choice for value, you can't buy a more dependable bandsaw. Backed by the most complete customer support in the industry. Call our 800 number today to receive your free demo video and you'll drool.



**LAGUNA TOOLS**

2265 Laguna Canyon Road, Laguna Beach, CA 92651  
 800-234-1976 • (949) 494-7006 • Fax (949) 497-1346

E mail: lagunatools@earthlink.net • Visit our Website: www.lagunatools.com

READER SERVICE NO. 42

**Like Having A Lumberyard Right In Your Shop!**



Now you can -  
 • PLANE • MOLD,  
 • SAND • SAW  
 ...all with *Infinitely* Variable Power Feed!

**Variable Speed Makes The Difference!**

Just a twist of the dial adjusts your planer from 70 to over 1,000 cuts-per-inch. Handles tricky grain patterns impossible on other planers.

**Versatile!** -- Quickly changes to power-feed molder, drum sander or gang rip saw! Produces high-profit millwork, cabinet trim, picture frame stock...much more! Use the Woodmaster to make over 350 standard trim patterns, any custom design!

**Powerful!** -- Industrial-duty, 5HP planer makes easy work of glue-ups, cabinet doors, shelving. Choose from 12", 18", or 25" models!

**More Planer - Less Money!**

100% Made-In-U.S.A. Five-Year Warranty, 30-Day Free Trial, Easy Terms.

**1-800-821-6651 ext. PE74**

Woodmaster Tools, Inc. 1431 N. Topping Ave. Dept. PE74  
 Kansas City, Missouri 64120  
 www.woodmastertools.com

READER SERVICE NO. 171

# Tools & Materials (continued)

steel files. The rounded corners of the square tool make it impossible to obtain a 90° inside corner. For that, you still need a traditional steel file.

As shaping tools, Microplanes have their place. They augment traditional carving tools, such as gouges and files, but won't replace them. For availability, call (800) 555-2767. —*Frederick Wilbur*



**Microplanes cut and shape wood.** Standard hacksaw frames and Surform handles will work with Microplane inserts.

## Compact belt sander from Bosch

I get a lot of work restoring the millwork in older homes. These jobs usually require a lot of sanding, and my belt sander is often too much tool, like using a bulldozer to garden in a greenhouse.

Bosch must have realized this, too. Its 1278VS compact belt sander is powerful enough to get the job done quickly without leaving a path of destruction.

The sander has a 1½-in. by 12-in. belt and a 3.3-amp motor with variable-speed control. You can work flush to one side of the belt (by flipping the tool upside down you can work flush to either side). The belt-tracking system is very precise, and there's a dust port that will hook up to a small-diameter hose.

Although the tool is compact by belt-sander standards, it's still too big for comfortable one-handed use. The tool could be improved by scaling it down slightly. Also, the switch is oddly placed midway



**Scaled down.** Bosch's compact belt sander gets into places other machines can't.

along the top of the tool, which puts it under my palm rather than near a fingertip.

For certain applications, such as back-cutting miters and trim in millwork or reaching into tight corners, the compact belt sander does a nice job. The machine costs about \$135. —*Roland Johnson*

*Lon Schleining is a stairbuilder in Long Beach, Calif.; Chris Minick is a contributing editor to Fine Woodworking; Ernie Conover is an author and woodworking instructor in Parkman, Ohio; Woodcarver Frederick Wilbur works in Lovingsston, Va.; Roland Johnson does custom millwork and restoration in Sauk Rapids, Minn.*

**NEW! Inca RULES**  
A NEW Concept in Precision Protractors

**Precision Marking Protractor**

- One-half degree increments
- Removable T-Bar
- Centering Rule
- And more...

This 21st century Marking Protractor has micro-fine guide holes at every 45°, 30°, 22.5°, 5°, 1°, and 0.5° interval to plot any angle with ease and absolute accuracy. A metal T-bar and see-through crosshairs provide perfect alignment against the edge of your workpiece. Remove the T-bar to work on flat surfaces or to use the 6" centering scale. FOUR angle scales, including one for marking narrow stock, suit every need. It's easy on the eyes, incredibly accurate, and just plain fun to use! *Patents pending*

To learn more about INCRA's new line of Precision Marking Protractors, Marking Rules, T-Rules, Bend Rules, and Centering Rules call, write, or fax:

**Taylor Design Group, Inc.**  
P.O. Box 810262, Dallas, TX 75381  
Tel: (972) 418-4811 Fax: (972) 243-4277  
For more information: [www.incra.com](http://www.incra.com)

Stainless Steel

READER SERVICE NO. 156

**ARMOIRE/ENTERTAINMENT CENTER**  
Full-Size Plan

Build this elegant Armoire designed for storage or Entertainment Center to hold TV, VCR.

Overall size: 68" high, 38" wide, 21" deep.

Plan #195 (ppd) ..... \$25.50  
Catalog (free with order) . \$3.00

Since 1968, the best plans available

**FURNITURE DESIGNS, INC., Dept. KE-19**  
1827 Elmdale Ave., Glenview, IL 60025 — 800-657-7692  
[www.furnituredesigns.com](http://www.furnituredesigns.com)

VISA M.C.

READER SERVICE NO. 12

**GYOKUCHO**  
Traditional Japanese Pull Saws.

(blade is replaceable)

370H Dozuki  
610 Ryoba  
405 Proton

SET OF THREE ~~\$98<sup>00</sup>~~ PRICE REDUCED **\$88<sup>00</sup>**

Free Hida Dowel Cutting Saw with your paid order.  
(Includes S&H 48 states Free)

Send for a free brochure of all lines of RAZOR SAWS.  
Tool Catalog \$4. Wholesale available.

**HIDA TOOL, INC./GYOKUCHO JAPAN**  
1333 San Pablo Ave., Berkeley, CA 94702 1-800-443-5512

READER SERVICE NO. 3

**JESADA TOOLS**

**Money-saving 3-bit sets!**

Our Three-Bit Special includes three of our most popular bits at about half our regular price. You'll get a 1/4" radius Roundover, 1/2" diameter Straight and a Flush Trim bit with micrograin carbide edges, mirror-finish grinding and our white PTFE coating.

Item	Description	Reg.	Sale
600-701	1/4" Shank 3-bit Set	\$69.90	<b>\$34.90</b>
600-702	1/2" Shank 3-bit Set	\$72.70	<b>\$36.90</b>

**3-Bit Ply-Groove™ Sets!**

Tired of sloppy fits when you rout grooves for plywood? We have the solution! Use our 23/32" bits for 3/4" plywood, 31/64" for 1/2" and 15/64" for 1/4". Each set includes bits that match up to the real size of 1/4", 1/2" and 3/4" plywood.

Item	Description	List.	Sale
600-624	1/4" Shank Ply-Groove™ Set	\$61.20	<b>\$45.90</b>
600-625	1/2" Shank Ply-Groove™ Set	\$65.90	<b>\$49.90</b>

To order or to request a free catalog call:  
**1-800-531-5559**

Toll-free FAX: 1-800-870-7702  
813-891-6160, FAX: 813-891-6259  
Shipping & Handling \$5.90

Visit our web site at <http://jesada.com>

JESADA TOOLS 310 Mears Blvd. Oldsmar, FL 34677  
Canada: 1-800-387-7005, UK: 0800 371822, Austral: 1300 301 335

VISA M.C. DISCOVER

READER SERVICE NO. 157

## EXTRA VALUE

The Grand Edition 14" Band Saw is one grand value. Rides around the shop on a mobile base and sports an 18" rip fence and Cool Blocks™. More than \$225 in extras. Then top it off with a **\$50 rebate**.



Model 28-270

## EXTRA VALUE

The Grand Edition 10" Contractor's Saw. Loaded with over \$200 in extras. A 30" Unifence Saw Guide, cast iron extension wing, white laminated table board and white adjustable support legs, plus a 50-tooth ATB&R carbide-tipped blade. Then add your **\$50 rebate**.



Model 36-455

Newly designed, 3-piece stand cuts 70% of your assembly time. Flared legs improve stability. New see-through blade guard locks in the "up" position to facilitate blade changes.

# White Hot.



## EXTRA VALUE

Grand Edition Unisaw extras add up to over \$300. Then add a **\$100 rebate** on top of that.



Unisaw stands alone for quality and precision. Every single arbor is flange-faced after assembly to reduce run-out. An extra step that other manufacturers don't bother with.

Each Grand Edition Unisaw carries the personalized name plate of its owner. Namely you.



Model 36-920

We've added an extra cast iron extension wing to start with. Then a 52" Unifence Saw Guide, white laminated table and shelf board, white adjustable steel support legs and a 50-tooth ATB&R carbide-tipped blade.

The Grand Edition series from Delta. Each a Delta classic. Each done in white. And each made in the USA and loaded with extra goodies. These babies are hot. And they'll be built in limited quantities, for a limited time only. (Extra values and rebates in effect through March 31, 1999.) For the name of your nearest participating dealer call Delta International Machinery Corp., 800-438-2486. In Canada, call 519-836-2840. Rebates are available in Canada (in Canadian funds) on these models only.



Proud sponsor of *The New Yankee Workshop* with Norm Abram and *The American Woodshop* with Scott Phillips.

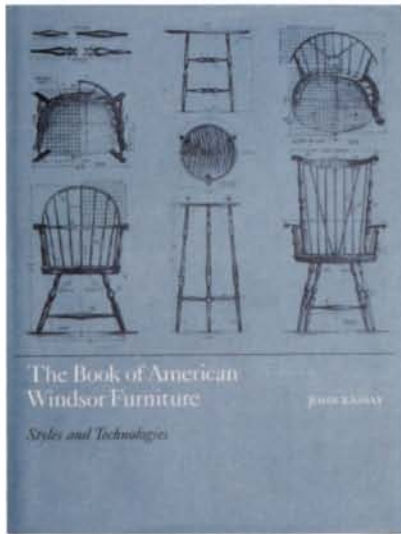
READER SERVICE NO. 168



www.deltawoodworking.com

# Notes & Comment

## New book on Windsors



***The Book of American Windsor Furniture: Styles and Technologies*** by John Kassay. The University of Massachusetts Press, Amherst, Mass. (413-545-2219); 1998. \$49.95, hardback; 224 pp.

This is the type of review a teacher likes to write. I am proud to have taught John Kassay to make Windsors in a class he took with me at Brigham Young University in 1981. In chronicling Windsor furniture, Kassay has done for chair making what Lynch, Margon and Salomosky did for cabinetmaking. He has spared chair makers trips to distant museums or lots of trial and error in establishing a chair's critical dimensions. His book stands as the largest source of measurements of Windsor furniture (there is a lot more than chairs here—settees, cradles, stools, candlestands and tables are also discussed). This book is a resource that all Windsor chair makers will want to have on hand.

The book is divided into chapters dedicated to a single style of chair or Windsor form. Each chapter includes one or two drawn examples followed by a number of photographs and brief descriptions of others of the same type. Kassay is an ac-

complished pre-CAD draftsman and, with his skilled shading technique, imparts critical knowledge about shapes and details not possible with a line drawing. It is too bad the drawings are limited to a single page each, which makes them small and hard to read. The information is there, but I found a magnifying glass helpful.

For the novice, the book is a useful survey of Windsors. But it is more helpful to the experienced chair maker who knows how to interpret the information Kassay has presented. This is the problem: Making Windsors requires different information than is recorded in traditional measured drawings like those in Kassay's book. For example, most Windsor chair parts require trim length that is removed after assembly. The parts have to be made longer than their drawn lengths. When chair making by hand, many dimensions are individual to the chair and will vary slightly from example to example. The chair maker determines the precise length of individual pieces from the chair itself as it is being assembled. The experienced chair maker must draw on his or her knowledge to extrapolate this additional information from a traditional measured drawing.

The reference to technologies in the subtitle is curious in that the book contains no chapters about the process of making a chair. Still, as a source of details and measured drawings, *The Book of American Windsor Furniture* is in a class by itself.

—Michael Dunbar of Hampton, N.H., is a contributing editor to *Fine Woodworking* and a master Windsor chair maker.



## Bench built for two

David Joly, a woodworker from Ashland, Ore., writes: "Seven years ago, I built this workbench for myself and my wife, Mary Burgess, who decided to take up woodworking and join me at my hobby (see the photo below).

The first thing to go in the shop, the 5-ft. by 8-ft. bench has two vises and two huge through-drawers, which run on wheels rather than on slides. Mary and I work on opposite sides, often on separate projects. If I just swallow every second helpful comment, it seems to go better."



**You stay on your side, I'll stay on mine.** David Joly and his wife, Mary Burgess, share this double-wide workbench.

## Wood webs

"Wood webs" features useful and interesting woodworking web sites. For more sites, check out Sites to See at *Fine Woodworking* Online ([www.taunton.com](http://www.taunton.com)). If you have a woodworking web site you would like to share, send the address to [mvasallo@taunton.com](mailto:mvasallo@taunton.com).

## Turn, turn, turn

Pathways, an international juried exhibition of wood turnings at the Cleveland State University Art Gallery last June, has a web site ([www.pathways98.org](http://www.pathways98.org)) that gives new meaning to the phrase "the show that never ends."

The original, real-world show—which was held in Cleveland—featured selected works of more than 40 artists from 20 states and 6 countries. The virtual show—online from now until forever?—is both a treasure trove of fine wood turnings and



# GRIZZLY INDUSTRIAL, INC.



"My Grizzly 20" planer has been a real workhorse in my shop and has planed over 200,000 board feet over the last five years with no problems. It required very little set-up when I bought it and has stayed in good adjustment ever since!" - Al Rosen

Since 1983, Grizzly Industrial, Inc. has served millions of woodworkers. We make it easy from start to finish. Try us, you'll be glad you did!

- Full Warranty
- Largest Stock of Parts
- Excellent Customer Service
- Easy Ordering & Fast Shipping
- 3 Great Locations



CHECK OUT OUR EXTREMELY LOW SHIPPING PRICES!



10" HEAVY-DUTY TABLE SAW



MODEL G1022Z ONLY \$449.00  
Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$60



15" PLANER W/STAND

MODEL G1021 ONLY \$795  
Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$60



6" X 47" HEAVY-DUTY JOINTER  
MODEL G1182Z ONLY \$395.00  
Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$40



FREE DUST COLLECTION

2 H.P. DUST COLLECTION SYSTEM

MODEL G1029 ONLY \$249.00  
Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$40



10" HEAVY-DUTY TABLE SAW

MODEL G1023

SPECIAL PRICE \$695.00

Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$60



20" PLANER

MODEL G1033 ONLY \$1,295.00  
Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$100



Shown with optional wing.

1-1/2 H.P. SHAPER

MODEL G1035 ONLY \$449.00  
Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$40



HOLLOW CHISEL MORTISER

MODEL G3183  
ONLY \$225.00



1/4 H.P. POWER FEEDER

MODEL G4176

ONLY \$399.95

Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$20



OSCILLATING SPINDLE SANDER

MODEL G1071  
ONLY \$495.00  
Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$60



HEAVY-DUTY 16" BANDSAW

MODEL G1073  
ONLY \$595.00  
Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$60



VARIABLE SPEED WOOD LATHE

MODEL G5979 ONLY \$295.00  
Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$40



1/2 H.P. POWER FEEDER

MODEL G4179  
ONLY \$599.95

Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$40



1 H.P. POWER FEEDER

MODEL G4181  
ONLY \$699.95

Ship anywhere in lower 48 for \$40

CALL TODAY FOR YOUR FREE 1999 WOODWORKING CATALOG



MEDIA CODE

1-800-523-4777

CUSTOMER SERVICE: (717)326-3806

FAX: (800)438-5901



197799658

3 GREAT LOCATIONS: Bellingham, WA • Memphis, TN • Williamsport, PA

READER SERVICE NO. 118



ORDER ON-LINE ANYTIME!

grizzlyindustrial.com

a lesson in good web-site design.

At the site, you can read an introduction by the curators and statements by the jurors, see photographs of the show itself or skip right to pages featuring the works of 47 wood turners, one turning and a short statement from each artist. A full range of turnings is represented: architectural elements, bowls and platters, furniture, hollow vessels, lidded containers, miniatures, sculpture and housewares. There's even a small show within a show of Peaseware, the 19th-century treenware named for its maker, David Mills Pease.

## Patrick's Blood and Gore

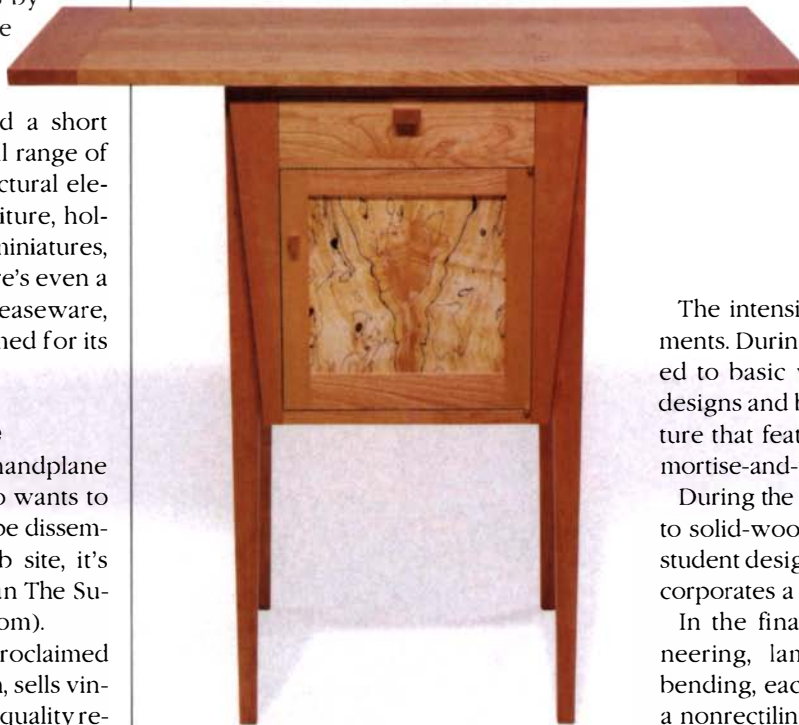
For old tool buffs, especially handplane aficionados, or for anyone who wants to see how much information can be disseminated via one individual's web site, it's hard to imagine a finer stop than The Superior Works ([www.supertool.com](http://www.supertool.com)).

The site's web master, a self-proclaimed tool fanatic named Patrick Leach, sells vintage tools and a handful of high-quality reproductions, including a smart-looking, cocobolo-handled layout knife, a copy of an original that belonged to a turn-of-the-century pipe-organ builder.

Leach says, "The Superior Works is doing its part to stem the tide of 'paint by numbers' woodworking." To that end, presumably, Leach includes on his site several heavily annotated photo galleries of old tools. Any one of these galleries (reached from the home page via a link called Et Cetera) might have been enough to earn the site a place in "Wood webs," but what really puts it over the top is Leach's cyber-tomb on handplanes, the cryptically titled cult classic *Patrick's Blood and Gore*. (Via e-mail, Leach explained that the title has to do with his anatomical dissection of handplanes and not with roadkill.)

Some may be put off by Leach's occasionally tongue-in-cheek tone, but the information is thorough and rigorous. Patrick's B&G, as it's known, covers Stanley planes by the numbers, from the No. 1 through the No. 608C, always in great detail and with lots of handsome photographs. The first of 15 sections, covering plane Nos. 1 through 8C, alone prints out at 20 pages! Make sure you remember to do a little woodworking in the years it might take you to digest Patrick's B&G.

## Give me 12 weeks



**Student work.** This hall table in cherry and spalted maple, made by Deneb Puchalski, is among the fine projects completed in the Twelve-Week Intensive at the Center for Furniture Craftsmanship.

The intensive is divided into three segments. During the first three weeks, devoted to basic woodworking, each student designs and builds a simple piece of furniture that features hand-cut dovetails and mortise-and-tenon joinery.

During the second three weeks, devoted to solid-wood carcass construction, each student designs and builds a piece that incorporates a drawer and a door.

In the final six weeks, devoted to veneering, laminate bending and steam bending, each student designs and builds a nonrectilinear piece of furniture involving at least one of these techniques.

The furniture that results is quite remarkable, but the real story, according to Korn, "is the growth the students go through as craftsmen and as individuals, their motivation and changing perception and mostly their enthusiasm and the joy they take in their work."

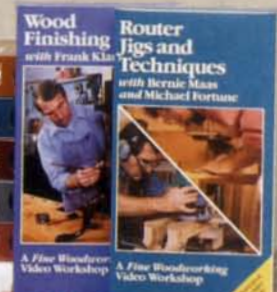
For more information on the Center for Furniture Craftsmanship and the Twelve-Week Intensive, call (207) 594-5611 or visit them on line at [www.woodschooll.com](http://www.woodschooll.com).

A rightly proud Peter Korn, director of the Center for Furniture Craftsmanship in Rockport, Maine, recently sent *Fine Woodworking* photographs depicting the work of participants in the center's Twelve-Week Intensive. The course is designed to meet the needs of aspiring professional furniture makers and amateurs on sabbatical from other professions. Most of the students begin with little previous woodworking experience.



**Blanket chest in cherry and anigre veneer by Richard Dunham. Wall cabinet in white oak by Chris Cain.**

# Sharpen your skills with these all-time video favorites!



## FINISHING AND FURNITURE RESTORATION

**Refinishing Furniture with Bob Flexner**  
65 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-942391-00-4,  
ITEM 060023, \$19.95

**Repairing Furniture with Bob Flexner**  
85 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-79-5,  
ITEM 060019, \$19.95

**The Woodfinishing Video with Michael Dresdner**  
40 MINUTES, ISBN: 1-56158-044-9,  
ITEM 060085, \$19.95

**Wood Finishing with Frank Klausz**  
110 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-38-8,  
ITEM 060003, \$19.95

## TURNING

**Turning for Furniture with Ernie Conover**  
55 MINUTES, ISBN: 1-56158-178-X,  
ITEM 060107, \$19.95

**Turning Wood with Richard Raffan**  
117 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-56-6,  
ITEM 060011, \$19.95

**Turning Projects with Richard Raffan**  
90 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-942391-90-X,  
ITEM 060065, \$19.95

**Bowl Turning with Del Stubbs**  
120 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-36-1,  
ITEM 060007, \$19.95

## FURNITURE MAKING

**Measuring Furniture for Reproduction with Phil Lowe**  
50 MINUTES, ISBN: 1-56158-188-7,  
ITEM 060095, \$19.95

**Dovetail a Drawer with Frank Klausz**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-34-5,  
ITEM 060001, \$19.95

**Making Mortise-and-Tenon Joints with Frank Klausz**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-57-4,  
ITEM 060021, \$19.95

**Build a Shaker Table with Kelly Mehler**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-942391-30-6,  
ITEM 060041, \$19.95

**Sam Maloof: Woodworking Profile**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-942391-26-8,  
ITEM 060045, \$19.95

## SMALL SHOP TIPS & PROJECTS

**Small Shop Tips and Techniques with Jim Cummins**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-58-2,  
ITEM 060025, \$19.95

**Small Shop Projects: Boxes with Jim Cummins**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-942391-49-7,  
ITEM 060057, \$19.95

## TOOLS AND TECHNIQUES

**Router Joinery with Gary Rogowski**  
75 MINUTES, ISBN: 1-56158-145-3,  
ITEM 060103, \$19.95

**Handplanes in the Woodshop with Mario Rodriguez**  
45 MINUTES, ISBN: 1-56158-144-5,  
ITEM 060101, \$19.95

**Mastering Woodworking Machines with Mark Duginske**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 1-56158-022-8,  
ITEM 060071, \$19.95

**Mastering Your Table Saw with Kelly Mehler**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-942391-86-1,  
ITEM 060053, \$19.95

**Mastering Your Bandsaw with Mark Duginske**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 1-56158-016-3,  
ITEM 060081, \$19.95

**Router Jigs and Techniques with Bernie Maas and Michael Fortune**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-60-4,  
ITEM 060015, \$19.95

**Radial-Arm-Saw Joinery with Curtis Erpelding**  
110 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-35-3,  
ITEM 060009, \$19.95

## CARVING

**Carving Techniques and Projects with Sam Bush and Mack Headley**  
90 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-59-0,  
ITEM 060017, \$19.95

**Carve a Ball-and-Claw Foot with Phil Lowe**  
115 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-37-X,  
ITEM 060005, \$19.95

**Chip Carving with Wayne Barton**  
60 MINUTES, ISBN: 0-918804-77-9,  
ITEM 060013, \$19.95

**ORDER NOW!**  
Call toll free  
**1-800-888-8286,**  
operator W812.

**Taunton**  
BOOKS & VIDEOS  
for fellow enthusiasts



## Alfreda Maloof: an appreciation

Alfreda Ward Maloof, Sam Maloof's wife of 50 years, died Sept. 23, 1998, at age 86, after a brief illness. Her health had been delicate in recent years, but that had not kept her from welcoming the hundreds of friends who visited the Maloofs each year at the extraordinary house Sam built in Alta Loma, Calif.

Nor had it kept her from accompanying Sam on a packed schedule of travel for chair-making demonstrations, speaking engagements, sightseeing and family gatherings.

The Maloofs nearly always traveled together, which reflected the closeness of their marriage. When he gave a lecture or spoke with someone about his career, Sam would talk about Alfreda—not in passing, but in depth and with great warmth—as being fundamental to his success and to his happiness.

Alfreda was Sam's partner, running the office end of an enormously successful business. But it is for her personality that she will be remembered. Perceptive, unpretentious and kind, she

made new friends easily and valued her many old ones. She was a beautiful woman with a natural sense of style and a discerning eye for fine craft and art. Her demeanor was placid, and her sense of humor was gentle and wry.

After earning a teaching degree at UCLA in 1934, Alfreda Ward spent eight years teaching English to Native Americans in New Mexico and Montana before returning to California, where she met and married Sam Maloof. Her experience in the Southwest is recorded in her own accomplished paintings of the time and in a book she published in 1997, *Recollections from My Time in the Indian Service, 1935-1943*. The book's clear, heartfelt writing and its focus on others rather than on herself mirrors her personality.

Alfreda and Sam shared many things, including a feeling of gratitude for the fullness of their lives. Some time ago, while writing an article about Sam, I traveled across the country to visit the Maloofs at their house. Learning that I had been married only two months, Sam exclaimed, "Two months! How can you travel and leave your bride behind?" And then he said, "I remember when Freda and I had been married just a short while, I agreed to go to the Middle East, and Freda couldn't go—that was a nightmare."

Freda, meanwhile, had been listening and calculating. "Sam, we'd been married 10 years when you took that trip."


"Yes," he said, "but we were still on our honeymoon."

Her face softened, and she said, "We're on it yet."

And he replied, "We're on it yet."


—Jonathan Binzen, senior editor at Fine Woodworking

**NORTHSTATE 15" PLANERS**




- Model 315: \$889
- Same features as the Model 310 plus:
- Table extension

**NORTHSTATE PLANERS**




- 20", 5 hp, \$1,395
- 24", V Speed \$2,995
- 5 hp & 7-1/2 hp

**NORTHSTATE 8" CABINET SHOP JOINTER**




- Heavy cast iron const.
- 2 hp, single phase
- 16" jointer: 111" bed
- Dual tilt fence
- Magnetic controls
- SALE: \$795
- 6" jointer: \$395
- 12" jointer: 87" bed
- Delta 8" jointer: CALL!

**MOULDERS**




- Four and Five Head models
- Variable speed
- 2-1/4" x 6" capacity models
- 6" x 9" capacity Model
- 5" x 8" capacity Models
- Designed to make high quality moulding at the lowest possible cost

**NORTHSTATE WIDE BELT SANDER**



- Best buy in the industry!
- Variable speed
- Platen head
- Dual motors
- Heavy cast iron & steel
- Plate construction
- 25" List: \$950
- 37" List: \$1,300
- SALE: \$900, 20 hp
- 43" SALE: \$1,600, 25 hp
- Phase converter avail.


**NORTHSTATE DUST COLLECTORS**



**SALE PRICES**

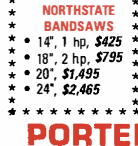
- 2 hp, 2 bag: \$295
- 3 hp, 4 bag: \$485

**NORTHSTATE BANDSAWS**




- 14", 1 hp, \$425
- 18", 2 hp, \$795
- 20", \$1,495
- 24", \$2,465


**STOCK FEEDERS**




**WILLIAMS & HUSSEY MOULDER / PLANERS**



**EMGLD 1-1/2 HP compressor.....CALL**




**PANEL SAWS & ROUTERS SAFETY SPEED CUT CALL!**



**SALE!**

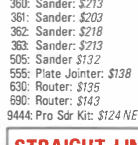
**WILLIAMS & HUSSEY MOULDER / PLANERS**

**PORTER CABLE complete line available**




- 330: Sander: \$69
- 332: Orbital Sander: \$75
- 333: Orbital Sander: \$93
- 351: Sander: \$164
- 360: Sander: \$213
- 361: Sander: \$203
- 362: Sander: \$218
- 363: Sander: \$213
- 505: Sander: \$132
- 555: Plate Jointer: \$138
- 630: Router: \$135
- 690: Router: \$143
- 9444: Pro Sdr Kit: \$124 NEW!

**RAISED PANEL DDOR MACHINES**




**DELTA**




- 2 & 3 hp/1 ph, 5 hp/3 ph
- 2 speed-reversible
- 2 spindles: 3/4", 1-1/4"
- 1/2", 1" available
- Router collets avail.
- Cast iron table
- Spring hold down & miter gauge
- Extra heavy duty
- 1 year warranty
- FROM \$650 - \$1295
- Tilt spindle model avail.
- Sliding Table model avail.
- \*\*\* FREEBORN \*\*\*
- Shaper cutters available

**SENCO Pneumatic Nailers..... Call**




**POWERMATIC III**




- Model 66 - All models Available. Call for Promo Pricing.
- Model 66 Saws
- Model 60 8" Jointer
- Model 180 18" Planer
- Model 72 14" Tablesaw

**STRAIGHT-LINE RIP SAWS**




- WOODMASTER
- DRUM SANDERS

**HITACHI**




- CH2F-2 Side Comp Saw CALL
- CR75F-Reband saw CALL
- TR-12 Pl Router \$187
- M12V 3 1/4 hp, vs router: \$229
- TSS-220 8 1/2" slide comp. saw \$48

**SCMI / MINI MAX MACHINERY ADJUSTABLE CLAMPS**



**BIESEMEYER VEGA EXCALIBUR UNIFENCE fences available**




Serving Woodworker's Needs Since 1942

## Sand-Rite

### Pneumatic Drum/Brush Head Sander

*Eliminate Tedious Hand Sanding!*



Sand irregular surfaces without loss of shape or detail.

Model No. DB-612 Made in U.S.A.

**Pneumatic sanding drum. Available in five diameters. 2" to 8". Operator-regulated inflated drum conforms abrasive sleeve to contoured work.**

Abrasive Belts, Sleeves, and Rolls available in all Grits and Sizes. Call for Quote

Call for a **FREE** Catalogue and Price List

# 1-800-521-2318

We try not to be undersold, tell us our competitors' prices

# Econ-Abrasives

WE MANUFACTURE ABRASIVE BELTS ANY SIZE, ANY GRIT!

## ABRASIVE SHEETS:

(9X 11)

### CABINET PAPER

	50/pk	100/pk
40D	\$18.90	\$35.60 C
50D	17.80	32.25
60D	16.70	30.00
80D	15.60	27.80
100 thru 150C	14.50	25.60

### FINISHING PAPER

80A	\$11.15	\$18.90 C
100 thru 280A	10.00	16.70

### NO LOAD PAPER

180 thru 400A	\$12.25	\$21.25 C
---------------	---------	-----------

### STEEL BAR CLAMPS

Quick release feature, available in four different lengths, these clamps are fast adjusting with cast iron jaws



Size	Price
2-1/2 x 6	\$6.50 ea
2-1/2 x 12	7.00
2-1/2 x 24	7.75
2-1/2 x 36	9.50

### HEAVY DUTY SPRING CLAMPS

Clamps come with PVC tips and grips.



Size	Price
4"	\$1.75 ea.
6"	2.25
8"	3.50

### OTHER PRODUCTS

\*ROLLS\*FLAP WHEELS\*PUMP SLEEVES\*ROUTER BITS\*WOOD GLUE\*WOOD BITS\*SANDING BLOCKS\*DRAWER SLIDES \*HINGES\*TV SWIVELS

\*Check or COD  
\*SATISFACTION GUARANTEED  
\*Texas add sales tax  
\*Continental US Shipping Charges add \$5.50.

## ABRASIVE BELTS

PLEASE SPECIFY GRITS

1X30	\$ .81 ea.	3X24	\$ .93 ea.
1X42	.81	3X27	.96
1X44	.81	4X21 3/4	1.06
2 1/2X16	.85	4X24	1.10
3X18	.86	4X36	1.35
3X21	.90	6X48	3.50
3X23 3/4	.93	6X89	6.24

Other sizes priced upon request



HEAVY DUTY VULCRO® VACUUM DISCS FOR BOSCH AND PORTER CABLE SANDERS

Disc	Grit	Price	Disc	Grit	Price
5"	60	\$ .48 ea.	6"	60	\$ .65 ea.
5"	80	.46	6"	80	.63
	100			100	
5"	320	.45	6"	320	.62

WE STOCK BOTH S & B HOLE PATTERNS

Size	Grit	Price/Roll	Discs Per Roll
5"	80	\$16.90	125
5"	120	16.35	125
5"	180	32.70	250
5"	220	32.70	250
5"	320	32.70	250

PSA DISC ROLLS (white) silicon carbide for D.A. sanders

Size	Grit	Price/Roll	Discs Per Roll
6"	80	\$24.15	125
6"	120	22.30	125
6"	180	44.55	250
6"	220	44.55	250
6"	320	44.55	250

## Econ-Abrasives

P. O. Box 1628  
Frisco, TX 75034  
(972)-377-9779

CALL FOR FREE CATALOG!

Toll-Free (800)367-4101

READER SERVICE NO. 142

# HUT

Products, Inc.

Pen Turners' **FREE!**

## CATALOG

1-800-684-9371

- High-quality pen, pencil & project kits
- The largest selection of pen blanks
- HUT wood finishes & polishes
- Sherline lathe systems
- Wholesale & retail

HUTpfw@aol.com  
Visit our improved web site at:  
www.hutproducts.com

**New Online Catalog!**

READER SERVICE NO. 58

## LEIGH ROUTER JOINERY JIGS

# When You Own The World's Most Versatile Dovetail Jig System, You'll Create A Lot More than Dovetails.

**The D4 Dovetail Jig**  
Create Through, Half-blind and Sliding Dovetail Joints with the D4 Jig

Create Square and Rounded Finger Joints with the F1 Template

**At the center of the Leigh Router Jig System is the amazing 24" D4 Dovetail Jig.**

Create through, half-blind and sliding dovetails with *infinite adjustment* of joint spacing and tightness of fit in wood up to 1 1/2" thick.

Add the F1 Finger Joint Template for an incredible range of square or unique *rounded* finger joints from 1/2" down to a tiny 1/16". All infinitely adjustable for fit with the Leigh Variable Guidebush System (VGS).

With the Multiple Mortise and Tenon Attachment you'll rout perfectly snug rows of multiple mortises and tenons, in virtually any layout you can imagine, and in material from 5/16" to 1 1/2" in thickness.

And finally, the *world's first* organically-shaped *interlocking* joints are easy to cut with our Isoloc™ Templates. Three different Isoloc templates create six unprecedented joints that are *impossible* to cut by hand. And again, you have complete control of joint tightness with the VGS.

*Precision, strength and beauty* are the hallmarks of every Leigh joint. Create them all, from the dovetail and beyond with the world's best router jig system.

Create Multiple Mortise and Tenons with the M2 Attachment

Create 6 Isoloc Joints with the I1 Joint Templates

**Call For Your Free 32-Page Catalog Now!**

# 1-800-663-8932

Leigh Industries Ltd., PO Box 357, Port Coquitlam, BC, Canada  
V3C 4K6 Tel. 604 464-2700 Fax 604 464-7404

**LEIGH**

Joining Tradition With Today

## SHAKER CHAIR KITS

Discover the beautiful proportions and classic simplicity of Shaker furniture. Our catalog features reproduction dining chairs and tables, rockers, bar stools, candle stands, small tables, clocks, oval boxes, baskets, peg board and Shaker chair tape. Furniture available as precisely fashioned kits for easy finishing or custom finished.

**FREE Catalog**

**SHAKER WORKSHOPS**

Box 8001-FW9, Ashburnam, MA 01430  
1-800-840-9121

READER SERVICE NO. 116

## Tennis-racquet chair



*Fine Woodworking* received a tantalizing letter this past summer from Robert Scott of Pietermaritzburg, South Africa. Scott writes: "Some years ago, a leaky roof at a local tennis-racquet factory spoiled a fairly large quantity of English hornbeam strips, destined to have been laminated into racquet frames. Hearing about this on the timber hotline, I was informed upon inquiry that the strips were mine if I came and collected them immediately, which I did. Enclosed are photographs of the above-mentioned hornbeam strips having been spared the waste bin. Rather time-consuming to make, as I work alone, the chairs are entirely my design and concept." Point, game, set and match to Scott.

**Courtside seat.** Robert Scott turned hornbeam strips meant for tennis racquets into lithe chairs with a hint of racquet in them. The spoiled hornbeam had been destined for the ash bin before Scott admirably saved it.

## Red oak mouse



It had to happen sooner or later. A Denver-based company called TechStyle Computers has crafted a computer mouse from wood. TechMouse has the usual metal and plastic innards, but its outer shell is made of solid hardwood—everything from red oak, maple and cherry to wenge, cocobolo and bubinga. The wood shell varies in thickness from 1/4 in. to 5/8 in.

To make clickable buttons, woodworkers at TechStyle cut kerfs into the shell and then tune each button individually to get just the right amount of spring. In addition to TechMouse (starting at \$99), TechStyle makes a full line of computer components trimmed or housed in solid woods, including towers, monitors, printers, speakers and keyboards.

Contact TechStyle at (888) 832-4789 or at [www.techstyle-com.com](http://www.techstyle-com.com).

**DISCOUNT PRICES ON BOOKS & VIDEOS**  
 Call Toll Free 1-800-243-0713  
 No shipping charges in US on orders over \$35 others add \$3  
 Canada & Overseas add 15%  
 Fax 606-255-5444  
 phone inquiries call 606-255-5444  
[www.mannyswoodbooks.com](http://www.mannyswoodbooks.com)

**Manny's Woodworkers Place**  
 555 South Broadway  
 Lexington, KY 40508

**NEW BOOKS FOR WOODWORKERS**

	Glue Book (Young) \$17
	Traditional Woodwork (Rodriguez) \$17
	Water Based Finishes (Charron) \$17
	Doorhanger's Handbook (Katz) \$30
	Kitchen Idea Book (Bouknight) \$25
	Measuring, Marking and Layout (Carroll) \$30
	Not So Big House (Susanka) \$26
	Art of Making Fine Wood Jewelry (Lydgate) \$17
	Fine Decorative Boxes (Crawford) \$17
	Making Shaker Woodenware (Pierce) \$16
	Fine Decorative Boxes (Crawford) \$17
	Woodworker's Guide to Joints (Kingshott) \$20
	Your Ideal Woodshop (Stankus) \$21
	The Art of Fine Tools (Nagyszalanczy) \$30.00
	The Shaker Legacy (Becksvort) \$32.00

**Videos**  
 All "Fine Woodworking" and "Fine Homebuilding" Videos  
 Only \$16.00 each

**FOR MORE INFORMATION CHECK OUT**  
[www.mannyswoodbooks.com](http://www.mannyswoodbooks.com)  
 or e-mail [purchasing@mannyswoodbooks.com](mailto:purchasing@mannyswoodbooks.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 29

**the Toolminator's**  
 of high tool prices

Bob-make sure these specials get in the next ad!!

**PORTER + CABLE**

693PK router kit	\$ 189
CFBN125 nailer/compressor combo	259
9444VS detail sander	109
557 biscuit joiner	196
333VS RO sander	77
360VS 3x24 beltsander	224
362VS 4x24 beltsander	229
7518 5spd 3hp router	277
7538 3hp plunge router	248
9352VS 3x21 VS beltsander with case	187
9690 1.5 hp router with case	\$ 158

**SENCO**

SLS20 Stapler	199
SLP20 brad nailer	199
SFN40 finish nailer	337

Accuset by SENCO

A100LS 1/4" stapler	114
A125BN brad gun	98
A200BN 2" brad	132

**Milwaukee** 1/2" #0234-6 #6509-21  
 1/2" 14v Cordless drillkit just \$169

1175 N. East St. Anaheim, Ca 92805  
 Calif. residents add 7.75% sales tax  
**USE VISA, MC, DISCOVER**  
**FREE SHIPPING** on any order over \$50, to the 48 states, HI and AK extra.  
 If you can find it cheaper we will beat that price by 5%

**Abbey Tools**  
 Great Big Tool Store little bitty prices  
 1-800-225-6321  
 want to see more... [www.abbeytools.com](http://www.abbeytools.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 47

# Cabinet Kits

C O M P L E T E R T A

Cabinet Kits: Premium quality, European-style cabinetry, easily assembled using a few common household tools.

Designed for new construction, remodeling or do-it-yourself home improvement projects. Each kit, complete with hardware and assembly instructions, is individually packaged and shipped directly to you from the factory. Call, fax or write to us for more information. We Make Cabinets EASY!

716 B Arrowst Road, Grand Junction, Colorado 81505



PHONE 970.241.6608 FAX 970.241.6606

READER SERVICE NO. 14

WE ARE YOUR "STOCKING" INDUSTRIAL DISTRIBUTOR IN VIRGINIA FOR:

**BOSCH** **DEWALT** **POWERMATIC**  
High Performance Industrial Tools

**HITACHI**

**freud MiniMax**

**adwood**

**HARPER**  
**HARDWARE CO.**  
100th Anniversary

1712 E. Broad Street (18th & Broad)  
Richmond, VA 23223-In Historic Shockoe Valley  
800-831-2281

Industrial • Commercial • Contract Supplies  
Machinery • Power Tools • Abrasives • Sundries  
General Hardware • Factory Authorized Service  
Phone: 804-643-9007 FAX: 804-643-9009

"Serving the Craftsman since 1898 with Specialty Tools and Supplies"

**FELDER** Machines and Tools  
for Woodworking  
Details make the difference

Quality and  
precision made in  
**FELDER**  
Austria

Quality without compromise on Solo and Combination machines



Sliding Table Saw K-7

- sliding table system with linear accuracy of .003" over four feet
- 6 different sizes available
- self cleaning, non-lubricated linear bearings
- everything to enhance your woodworking



Woodworking System  
BF 6-31

- minimal space requirements with maximum machining facilities
- sliding table system with linear accuracy of .003" over four feet
- hundreds of configurations available
- digital controls



100 min. Video  
Info-package  
\$10,-

Call now for free INFO! 1-800-572-0061

**FELDER USA, Inc.** 4003 Seaport Blvd. - W. Sacramento, CA 95691  
Call 916-375-3190 - Fax 916-375-3194 - <http://www.felder.co.at>

READER SERVICE NO. 186

Save Money - saw your own lumber



(Shown with optional loading ramps.)

With a Wood-Mizer!

- Cut logs up to 28" D. x 9' L.
- Extra bed sections permit longer lengths.
- Easily transportable.

\$4795

Free \$2  
Catalog\*

**Wood-Mizer**

8180 West 10th Street Dept. Z90  
Indianapolis, IN 46214-2400  
[www.woodmizer.com](http://www.woodmizer.com)

\* With purchase of  
All Products Video @ \$10.

LT15 Personal Sawmill

1-800-553-0219

New Catalog: FREE!



450-PB  
PEDESTAL  
BASE with  
LEGS  
(SUPPLY YOUR OWN TOP)

14 NEW  
styles, many  
now in PINE.

800-843-7405  
[www.tablelegs.com](http://www.tablelegs.com)

CLASSIC DESIGNS  
by MATTHEW BURAK

P.O. BOX 329, DEPT FW 115, ST. JOHNSBURY, VERMONT 05819  
FAX 802-748-4350 E-MAIL: LEGS@CONNRIVER.NET



402-L 401-L 401-XLF 303-SB 303-XL 505-L 201-L 110-D

READER SERVICE NO. 129

Some dovetail  
jigs promise you  
everything...

The Keller Dovetail  
System only promises  
what it can deliver.

Fast setup. No test cuts. Precision joinery. Unlimited widths. Classic and variable spacing. Compound, acute and obtuse angles. Curved dovetails. Box joints. Made in USA since 1976. 20-yr. warranty. 30-day money-back guarantee.

"Your best choice.  
It's the easiest of all the  
jigs to use and great for  
production use."

-Woodworker's Journal

VIDEO: \$8.95 + \$2 P/H



**KELLER & CO.**  
1327 T Street, Dept. F19  
Petaluma, CA 94952  
1-800-995-2456  
707-763-9336

**Keller Dovetail System**  
Simple. Fast. Accurate. Enjoyable!

READER SERVICE NO. 169

# Soften Hard Edges with a Side Bead

BY GARRETT HACK

Shakers taught me about beads, the semicircular moldings they ran along the edges of everything from peg rails to door rails. Forbidden superfluous ornament, the Shakers used beads for their practicality, rounding an edge to hide wear. Outlined by a flat-bottomed groove called a quirk, a bead softens an edge, gives it definition and draws your eye along; it can hide the necessary gaps around drawers and doors or the joint between tongue-and-groove boards. Both utilitarian and beautiful, beads are quite easily added to your repertoire.

I cut beads, properly known as side beads, any of three ways: with a Stanley No. 66 beading tool or shopmade scratch stock, with a beading plane or with a router. The method I choose depends on which tool will work best for the least effort, how many feet of bead I need and the size of the bead. With a router or beading plane, I have fewer size options than with a beading tool or

scratch stock, for which I can make any size cutter. A router and plane cut the most consistent beads, especially for straight runs, but a beading tool or shopmade scratch stock works best in difficult woods and can follow nearly any curve. Because I usually have just a few yards of bead to cut and prefer to work with hand tools, I most often use a scratch stock or plane. Both tools cut a bead with a hint of handmade irregularity and a fine quirk, more appealing to me than the consistent profiles cut by a machine.

## Beading tools go easy around curves

The Stanley No. 66 beading tool (no longer made) and its derivative, the bronze beading tool from Lie-Nielsen (888-751-2106), are the most common of several manufactured versions of the shopmade scratch stock (see the left photo below). All manufactured beading tools and shopmade scratch stocks work with a high-

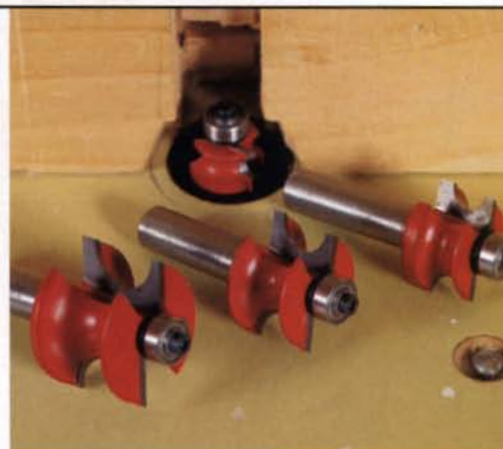
Use a beading tool, a plane or a router to shape this delicate detail



**Beading tool.** All beading tools work with a scratching action. Front to back: two shopmade scratch stocks, Woodcraft's bronze beading tool, the Veritas beading tool, Lie-Nielsen's bronze beading tool and a Stanley No. 66.



**Beading plane.** Antique beading planes are relatively inexpensive and widely available. They come in a range of sizes—one profile per plane—and cut straight runs of nearly polished beads.



**Router.** A router is ideal for cutting long runs of consistent beads. You can find bits for a wide range of bead sizes.





**Classic bead with a classic tool.** The prototypical beading tool, a Stanley No. 66, cuts a bead with a pleasing hint of handmade irregularity.

## Many uses for a simple side bead

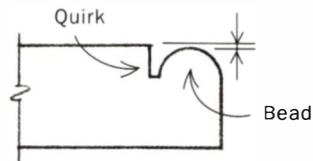
Bead shapes show up in Greek and Roman architecture and from there seep into furniture design. Colonial craftsmen cut beads along exposed beams to add visual appeal and to eliminate sharp edges, which ignite more easily than rounded ones. They also cut beads along the lower edges of clapboards, again for visual reasons and, supposedly, to shed water better. The Shakers ap-



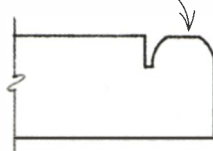
plied side beads to everything from furniture to panel doors to peg rails. Side beads are useful for creating a shadow line and softening or defining an edge, as in the table apron above, and for hiding the joint between parts, as in the panel door (right) and the flush apron drawers (above). The quirk also happens to be a fine place to hide a nail.—G.H.



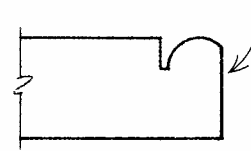
Cut bead below surface; ...



... otherwise, bead can get flattened on the top.



Plane edge before cutting bead; otherwise, bead can get flattened on the side.



angle scraping action—different from the true cutting action of a beading plane—and although they don't cut very quickly, beading tools and scratch stocks will cut any size bead, with or against the grain, even in the most difficult woods. The Stanley No. 66 beading tool, with which I am most familiar, has a flat sole, an adjustable fence and a single cutter, which can be securely clamped into place. All manufactured beading tools come with a number of cutter profiles, as did the Stanley No. 66.

Despite the versatility of manufactured beading tools, I much prefer the control and even greater versatility of shopmade scratch stocks. I make them from worn-out, heavy hacksaw blades, which I attach to a wooden fence (see the story below). A shopmade scratch stock has several advantages over a manufactured beading

tool. One is the flexibility I have to tilt it to get the optimum cutting angle or to cut toward me or away using either side of the cutting edge. With the No. 66 beading tool, the wide sole prevents adjustment of the cutter angle, and changing direction requires resetting the fence. The No. 66 is comfortable to use, but it's guided with two hands, so it's easy to skew the cut unless you apply even pressure. With a scratch stock, you can make the fence long enough to hug the edge of the board. You can add a special fence to the No. 66 for beading along curves, something all commercial beading tools and shopmade scratch stocks do very well.

Beading tools, whether manufactured or shopmade, are not difficult to use, as you immediately get a feel for the scraping cut. (The challenge is sharpening the cutter to scrape well.) Slip the

## Crafting a shopmade scratch stock



Scratch stocks are good examples of craftsman ingenuity—they are simple to make and work extremely well. A piece of hacksaw blade, bandsaw blade or similar steel makes an excellent cutter and also works as a cutter for a Stanley No. 66 beading tool.

I grind and hone shallow molding shapes into hardened steel, but I file deeper profiles only after softening the blade by heating it red hot with a torch and then cooling it slowly in ashes or sand. Chain saw or round needle files work well for shaping beads. The cutting edges of the blade must be honed very square and polished. A softened blade will cut well, but it

will dull after cutting a dozen or so feet of board. For a longer-lasting edge, I heat the shaped cutter red hot again, quench it in water and then rehone the profile.

To complete the scratch stock, I shape a small block of wood to serve both as a handle and as a fence to guide the blade. Typically, I'll chamfer the edges of the block. Then I saw a thin kerf into the block as deep as the blade and tap the blade into position. I like to test the blade on a piece of scrap and make adjustments and refinements as necessary. —G.H.



**Watch it on the web!**  
See a video of a scratch stock in use at [taunton.com](http://taunton.com)

**Step back and plane forward.** To give the plane some bead to track on, start a plane's length in from the far end. Plane forward to the end, back up a length, then plane forward again. Continue stepping back and planing forward until you've beaded the full length. Then you can plane the entire bead to its full depth.

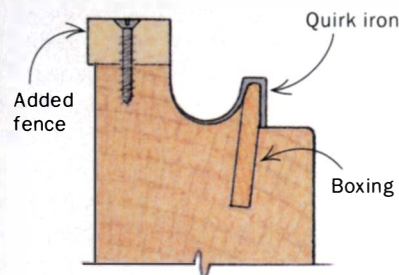
cutter in place with the top of the bead profile just proud of the sole. This will allow you to cut the bead slightly lower than the surrounding surface, which protects the bead somewhat and allows you to handplane the finished surface later without flattening the bead (see the drawings on the facing page). Align the fence with the outside of the bead. It's a good idea to plane that edge before beading, as any smoothing of the edge later cuts into the bead. But don't sand beforehand; a sanded surface will dull your cutter.

Hold the tool with the fence tight to the work and, with repeated cuts as long or as short as feel comfortable, scratch the bead to the final depth. The No. 66 beading tool stops cutting when the sole rides along the surface, but none of my scratch stocks has a depth gauge. Instead, I draw a line on the work at the top of the bead, and when I scrape the line off all along, I know I've cut deep enough. I often sand the bead lightly to even out small imperfections.

### Beading planes do a smooth job

Beading planes cut much faster than beading tools or scratch stocks, and except for areas of extreme cross-grain, planes leave a nearly polished bead. A beading plane is a superior tool for cutting a run of straight beads or even for cutting beads along modest curves, as coach makers once did with short-soled planes. Over the years, I've collected a whole range of antique beading planes (see the middle photo on p. 40). The planes cut beads from 1/8 in. to 1/4 in. (these measurements usually include the quirk). Old beading planes are quite common, not very expensive and, once tuned, will work reliably for years with no set-up or trial cuts. Tuning can be tricky, though, unless you buy a plane in good condition to start with.

A plane has a long sole shaped to the mirror image of the bead to guide it and an integral fence and depth stop. A half-dozen or fewer passes leave a perfectly formed bead and quirk. Clamp the work flat on a bench, with the edge you're beading just proud of the bench edge, so that the fence will clear the table. Instead of starting at the near end of the board and planing its full length in one pass, start a plane's length or so in from the far end (see the photo above). Hold the fence tight to the edge and plane forward, the short distance toward the end. Back up a length and again plane forward to the far end. Continue backing up and planing forward, working down the length of the board. The plane will track



**Hone and check, hone and check.** As you sharpen a plane iron, stop frequently to sight down the plane (left). The iron should conform to the sole, but keep the quirk iron slightly wider than the quirk boxing (drawing above) to prevent binding. This plane reveals inlaid boxing as well as an extra fence, screwed on to improve tracking and stability.



**Think of a quirk cutter as a miniature plane iron. Sharpen the bevel of the quirk-cutting portion of the iron on a stone, as you would a plane. Sharpen the curved section that cuts the bead itself with round and knife-edged slip stones (bottom of photo).**

better if it's planing into an area that's already partially molded. Once the quirk has been started, the plane should cut consistently. The major problem with a beading plane is cross-grain, which you can't really do anything about, other than to take a lighter cut. Unusual two-way beading planes overcome this with one side that cuts right to left and another side that cuts left to right.

Tuning a beading plane involves sharpening and shaping the iron to the same profile as the sole, repairing boxing, if necessary, and adding a fence for stability. On better beading planes, thin strips of boxwood, known as boxing, are inlaid at points of wear, such as along the quirk. Boxing can wear down, come loose or break, but it can be replaced easily with any hardwood.

Sharpen the bevel of the plane iron with slip stones or fine abrasive paper wrapped around a dowel, and polish the back of the iron on a stone. The part of the iron that cuts the quirk works like a miniature plane iron and should be sharpened as one (see the photo below). Ideally, you want a sharp iron that conforms to the shape of the sole, but small differences are okay. Lightly wedge the iron in place and sight down the sole to see where the iron deviates (see the bottom photo on p. 43). Keep honing and checking—as much as your patience will allow. Finally, add a shallow fence the entire length of the plane, in line with the outside of the bead. Giving the iron a light honing is your only regular maintenance.

### A router cuts miles of beads

Routers demand no tuning and cut consistent and handsome beads, as long as you can find a bit the right size and are willing to take the time to set up. You can cut beads around curves with a

router, although a router is best for long, straight runs. When I'm making a set of doors with beaded stiles and rails, I prefer a router for this consistency, as I can then make identical copes or miters and know they'll fit. My only complaint is that the part of the bit that cuts the quirk is fatter than I would like, and the bead profile is not as nicely proportioned as the one cut by a beading tool or plane. Presumably this is due to the limitations of the materials and the strength necessary for a bit spinning at 20,000 rpm.

You can cut a bead with a router either of two ways. Most beading bits have a pilot bearing for guiding the router freehand along an edge. I wouldn't recommend this method unless you have a wide edge to support the router—a bed rail, for instance—as the

**A router table is safer for cutting beads than a hand-held router. Set the bit so that the bottom of the bead is flush with the table.**



**A finer quirk. The author honed the quirk cutter on the router bit at right to achieve a finer quirk.**



slightest slip or jiggle could easily ruin a small bead. A router table is a safer alternative.

With a router table, the face of the work is vertical against the fence (see the photo above). Be sure that the fence is high enough to support your work and that the table is flat and certainly not hollow around the bit. If it is, the bead will be partially missing as the stock spans either side of the hollow and rides up on the bit. Set the bit so that the bottom of the bead is flush with the table. You may want to remove the pilot bearing so it doesn't get in the way of cutting to the depth you choose. Set the fence (cutting depth) and bit height by test cuts. Cut in two light passes rather than a single, heavy one for the smoothest cut, but still expect to sand a little.

As with any detail, the more you cut and use beads, the more possibilities you'll see. I'm reminded of the Shakers' use of beads throughout their architecture and furniture. They avoided ornament, but not practical and beautiful solutions to problems. □

*Garrett Hack is a furniture maker in Thetford Center, Vt.*



# The Quick, Modern Way to a Polished Finish

Combine automotive finishing materials and power-buffing methods to work wonders on furniture

BY JEFF JEWITT

**T**he basic concept of rubbing out a finish is easy: Abrade the surface with very fine sandpaper to remove surface defects and level it out, then polish to the sheen you want. The old-world approach is to do this work by hand, using pumice and rottenstone (*FWW* #119, pp. 46-49), which work well but are time-consuming and physically exhausting to carry out. Some modern products simplify and speed up this process considerably. Combined with power-sanding and buffing equipment, these products deliver an efficient system for rubbing out a finish.

I prefer to wet-sand small surfaces, such as table aprons and legs, by hand. But I switch to air-powered equipment for larger areas, such as tabletops. The best tools for wet-sanding have opposing, in-line pads that vibrate back and forth in a

straight-line motion, rather than making a circular scratch pattern. You can dry-sand some finishes, such as oil-based polyurethane and some lacquers, with an electric-powered random-orbit sander, as long as you use very fine (1,000-grit, or higher) stearated, or nonloading papers. Never use electric sanders when wet-sanding because of the risk of electric shock.

Start the process with the finest grit size that will remove the defects and level the finish. You can begin with 320-grit paper if the surface is badly orange-peeled or shows ridges from brush strokes. Or you can start with 800- or even 1,000-grit paper if you have only minimal surface problems and you're shooting for a gloss finish in the end. I usually start with 400- or 600-grit silicon-carbide wet-or-dry sandpaper, and I use mineral oil cut 50% with mineral spir-



**Wet-sand with water or oil. Either lubricant levels a finish and removes brush strokes or small bits of dust and debris. The author prefers rubbing oil thinned with mineral spirits.**

its as the lubricating medium for all of my oil- or lacquer-based finishes. I spray the mixture with a plant mister. Some people prefer to use water instead of oil. If you use water, add a small amount of dishwashing liquid as a lubricant.

I always work around the edges of a tabletop first, then move toward the center

## CREATING A SATIN FINISH



**What you'll need for a satin finish.** After wet-sanding the surface by machine, the author accomplished the rest by hand, using 0000 steel-wool pads, Behlen's Wool-Lube and a little soapy water for lubrication. Then he rubbed the surface in long, even strokes to achieve a classic hand-rubbed finish.



### STEEL-WOOL TIP

**Improve the ergonomics of steel-wool pads.** Unwrap 0000 steel-wool pads and refold them into quarters so that they will better fit your hand.

(this routine helps me keep track of where I am), working in sequence up to at least 600-grit paper. If you're aiming for a gloss finish, work up to at least 800- or 1,000-grit paper. Sanding to a higher grit will speed up the polishing procedure later on.

If you want a classic, hand-rubbed satin finish, you can achieve the best results using steel wool and Wool-Lube (a rubbing lubricant made by Behlen) or thinned wax (see the photos above). Squirt a couple of stripes of Wool-Lube on the surface, then mist it with soapy water. (I mix a capful of dishwashing liquid into a quart of water to clean up the mineral oil from the wet-sanding process.) Using moderate downward pressure, about 25 lbs. (you can

practice by pushing down on a bathroom scale), rub the surface in straight strokes with the pad, following the direction of the grain. Repeat this process several times, then switch to a clean part of the steel-wool pad and rub the whole surface down again. Wipe the slurry off to check your progress. If you've done it right, the surface should look like brushed metal when viewed in backlighting.

If you are going for gloss, automotive compounds, available from auto-supply stores, offer a real innovation for polishing furniture finishes. Compounds are simply abrasive powders in liquid suspensions, or pastes. Two manufacturers, Meguiar's and 3M, offer products that work very well on

wood finishes. They are used in stages to remove defects and scratches from wet-sanding. Some manufacturers sell a single product that breaks down into smaller grits as you use it, but I prefer using more than one compound. Because compound grit sizes vary, you should stick with products from a single manufacturer.

Beware—some buffing compounds create a whitish, hazy look on water-based lacquers. You may simply need to let the finish cure longer, but the haze is usually caused by solvents in the compound that soften the lacquer, making it hard to polish. If this happens, discontinue use of the compound and switch to a different one. (I've found that Meguiar's #10 plastic pol-



### BUFFING TIP

**Smear it on, then buff it out.** Use the buffer pad first to spread out the liquid compound, then tilt the pad slightly as you move it slowly over the surface. After buffing the surface in two directions, a deep gloss emerges from the surface of the finish.



**Use compounds in a sequence of grits.** After wet-sanding the surface, the author buffed this table first with Meguiar's #1 medium-cut cleaner, then with #2 fine-cut cleaner. After that, he finished with #9 swirl remover to fill in the tiny hairline scratches left by the #2 cleaner.



ish works well as the final polish for water-based finishes.)

You can use most rubbing compounds by hand, but for a large surface such as a dining-room table, a power buffer is the way to go. The most popular buffers are right-angle sander/polishers. If you purchase one, get a variable-speed buffer or a two-speed tool (rated at a maximum speed of 3,800 rpm). A polishing bonnet of either cotton or synthetic foam is attached to the buffer with a locking nut. Any bonnet can be cleaned, but to ensure efficient polishing, purchase a separate bonnet for each grade of compound that you use.

Polish the furniture in an area where flying compound won't be a problem, and

wear an apron. Squirt a few stripes of compound across the surface, about 8 in. apart. With the buffer turned off, smear the compound all over the surface of the finish. Hold the buffer off the surface at a very slight angle, then turn it on and begin moving it slowly across the surface of the finish (see the photos above). Move the buffer about a foot every three to four seconds and work in sequence—edges first, then in toward the center. Work the buffer in smooth, confident strokes, and pay attention to the angle and rotation of the buffer when polishing edges: They may catch the pad and cause kickback.

The scratches from sanding disappear as you buff, and it's easy to see when you're

done with the compound. Good overhead lighting or backlighting will highlight errant scratches. Follow the first compound with finer grits until you see a deep gloss appear. Let the compound dry, then wipe it off with a soft cloth.

At this point, some finishers apply a glaze that contains silicone or some other type of oil or polymer emulsion, which fills in the tiny hairline scratches. But I usually finish up with the #9 swirl remover—first with the buffer set on slow speed, then by hand. I apply a little to a soft cloth and polish the surface manually. □

*Jeff Jewitt is the author of Hand-Applied Finishes (The Taunton Press, 1997).*

# 18th-Century Six-Board Chest

Copying an original is an excellent way to hone your hand-tool skills



BY MIKE DUNBAR

This copy of a ca. 1800 blanket chest—also known as a six-board chest—is an ideal project for honing your woodworking skills. While the chest can be made by machine, its various parts are made equally well (and about as fast) by hand. It was fun to spend a few afternoons making something by hand. It reinforced for me how delightful the shop can be when the only noise is the whisk of sharp tools. I rediscovered how pleasant woodworking is without hearing, eye and

lung protection. When a storm knocked out the power one afternoon, I was able to keep working. It was delightful—just me, the wood, the tools and the sunlight.

At first glance the chest appears to be little more than a nailed box. As you make the project, you'll begin to respect simple joinery that requires mostly rabbets and dados. You'll begin to realize how much today's woodworking has developed construction into a design element. The original chest from which this one was copied

**White pine chest made the old way.** Using sharp hand tools, the author made a blanket chest in a few afternoons. The till—a box within the box—is used to hold small items.

has been in continuous use for nearly 200 years and is still solid and very much intact. Its survival is not unique. The chest seems to violate an important woodworking principle, in that the grain of the ends and sides is arranged in opposite directions. One would expect this to cause the front or



back boards to split. However, that did not happen to the original example or to the untold numbers of other chests like it. Unlike glue, the nailing allows enough movement to compensate.

The original chest is generally referred to as a blanket chest, underscoring its purpose—to store folded items made of cloth. However, this was also a utilitarian piece of furniture usually kept in a bedroom against the wall or at the end of a bed. An average house would have several such chests.

The original piece's everyday function dictated a couple of construction choices for the cabinetmaker. Time-consuming joinery, like dovetails, was replaced with equally strong rabbeted joints. The original was made in New England, where white pine is still sold everywhere. Had the cabinetmaker been working in another region, he might have used yellow poplar. I used 5/4 clear white pine. The original box was made when a 1-in. board was a full inch thick. I felt the proportions of the original were important to the chest's overall appearance, which is why I chose 5/4 stock. The exception is the chest's bottom panel, which I made from 3/4-in.-thick #2 pine.

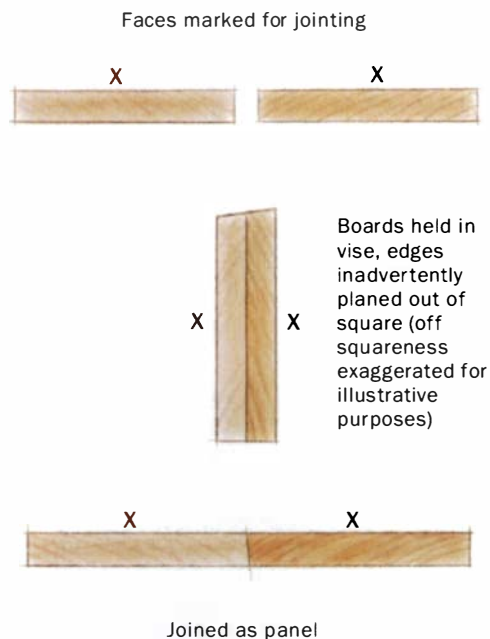
### Jointing stock, gluing panels

The original chest was made of six wide boards, excluding the three smaller pieces that make up the till, a small lidded compartment within the chest. Today, 18-in.-wide 5/4 pine is rare, so I bought 5/4x10 boards that could be glued up into six wide panels. Crosscut the stock 1 in. longer than the finished lengths of the panels so that when you glue them together, you won't have to worry about aligning the ends.

Like all hand-tool operations, cutting with a handsaw is easier when the wood is securely clamped to a bench. For me, it's easiest to follow my pencil line if, with each pull stroke of the saw, I raise the saw's teeth out of the kerf, away from the line, and then push them back into the line with each push stroke. This technique helps prevent the saw from wandering. To make a cut that's square to the face of the board, rather than one that is undercut or overcut, try to stand right over the saw. This way, when you look down, all you'll see is the

## PERFECT PANELS

**Two edges at once.** Boards that will be edge-glued into panels are folded into a vise so that facing sides are clamped against opposite jaws. Any off squareness in the planed edge will be neutralized when the boards are married into a panel.



**Spring a joint.** After jointing paired boards in a vise, take a final pass that begins and ends several inches from the boards' ends. When placed flat on a bench, the boards' edges will touch at each end and have a two-plane-shavings-wide gap in the middle (left). Two clamps will pull the gap together for glue-up (right).

thin top edge, not the face of either side of the blade (see the photo on p. 50).

Determine and mark the good side of each board—the side you want to face out—and pair up the pieces into panels. Place the paired-up boards together and clamp them in a vise for jointing. Jointing the two boards at the same time ensures that any variation from square on the two edges is equalized and that the finished panel will be flat (see the photos and drawings above).

Use a jointer plane to make the edges straight, which may take a little practice. The key is weight transfer; as you start a cut, exert more hand pressure on the plane's front knob. As you push the plane along the length of the board, transfer pressure to your other hand and to the rear of the plane. The long, straight sole of a jointer plane will remove only the boards' high spots. The first several passes you take will probably result in less-than-full-length curls of wood. Once you are able to plane

a few full-length curls, sight along the boards for straightness or check them with a long straightedge.

Once the boards are straight, take a final pass with your plane, beginning about 3 in. from the front end of the boards and ending about 3 in. from the far end. This technique, called springing the joints, aids in gluing up boards. This incomplete pass creates a slight gap—two plane shavings wide—in the center of the boards when they are placed together on the bench for



**Two-handed handsawing.** To avoid breaking a fragile edge, and thus making it difficult to restart a cut, hold the fingertips of your free hand lightly against the thin waste piece. To saw a square edge, stand directly above the cut so that you see the thin top edge of the saw, rather than either side of the blade.

clamping. Because the boards touch at each end, one or two clamps spring the middle of the boards together.

### Surface the panels and cut them square

Surface both sides of the panels to remove thickness-planer marks and to level the sides. As you plane, you'll find that what seemed like flat boards have lots of hol-

lows. The panels are too long for a smooth plane. Its short sole will ride down into the hollows in the surface. I prefer a No. 6 jack plane, which is slightly longer and wider than a No. 5. For surface planing, use an iron with a slight crown honed into it. A crowned iron, as opposed to one with 90° corners between the cutting edge and the sides of the iron, reduces the likelihood of planing sharp ridges into the surfaces of the panels. Instead, the surface will be slightly scalloped, almost unnoticeably so, which is a sign of handplaned work.

One at a time, joint an edge of each panel. Use a framing square to lay out the ends prior to trimming. Lay out the finished width at the same time. Measure corner to corner to be sure the panel will be square; if the diagonal measurements are the same, the panel has four 90° corners. Cut the panels to size using a rip saw along the length and a crosscut saw on the ends. When ripping, the saw's teeth should just touch the outside of the pencil line. This way, when you joint the edge to remove the saw marks, you will not be undersized.

Because the rough length of the boards are cut very close to the finished length of the glued-up panels, you'll be left with a thin strip to trim off each one. When using a handsaw, a slight twist of your wrist can break the thin strip, and trying to start the cut again in the middle of the edge can make it ragged and uneven. I like to use the fingertips of my free hand to push lightly against the strip to keep it from breaking (see the photo at left).

### Cut boot-jack ends and the stop joint

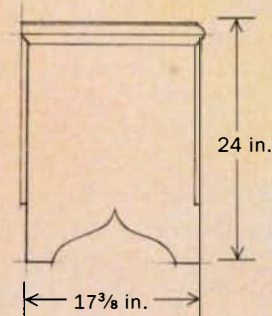
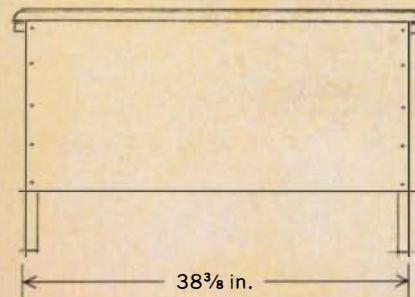
The graceful, curved feet of the blanket chest are referred to as boot-jack ends because their shapes are similar to a once-common device used to help pull off boots by jamming the heel into the V.

To cut these ends, first make a template half the width of the chest's side and draw a curve that pleases your eye. After tracing the pattern ends of the chest, cut out the pattern using a small bowsaw (see the top photo on p. 56). The saw works best on the pull stroke. Use two hands and try to create a fluid motion that uses almost the entire length of the blade. Clean up the cuts using a spokeshave and a chisel, working from the center out on each side so as to cut with the grain.

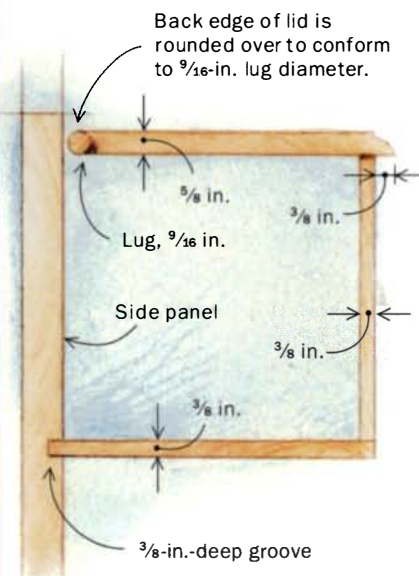
Lay out the stop butt joint using a square and a marking gauge. Cut the return with a

## HANDMADE BLANKET CHEST

Chests like this were as common as candles in period homes, which were notoriously devoid of closets. The chests were usually placed at the end of beds and stored cloth goods. Local woods, available in wide boards, were used to make these chests. The boards were held together with rabbets, dadoes and cut nails.



### TILL CONSTRUCTION



Till front butts bottom. Thumbnail on till lid is smaller than thumbnail on chest lid.

Thumbnail molding (see detail below) cut on front and sides of chest lid. Back edge has no thumbnail.

Lid, 1 in. by 18 $\frac{1}{8}$  in. by 40 $\frac{5}{8}$  in.

Cleat, 1 in. by 1 in. by 18 $\frac{1}{8}$  in.

Till lid,  $\frac{5}{8}$  in. by 8 $\frac{1}{2}$  in. by 16 $\frac{7}{8}$  in.

$\frac{5}{8}$ -in. hole for lug

$\frac{3}{4}$  in.

Hinge rabbet

Stop butt joint captures front-panel rabbet (no stop cut on opposite edge of side panel).

Till bottom,  $\frac{3}{8}$  in. by 8 $\frac{1}{2}$  in. by 16 $\frac{7}{8}$  in.

Till front,  $\frac{3}{8}$  in. by 7 $\frac{5}{8}$  in. by 16 $\frac{7}{8}$  in.

See bottom corner detail below.

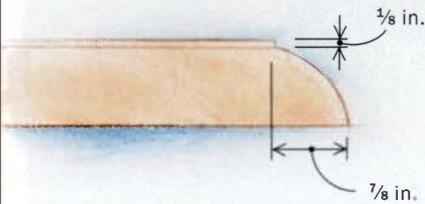
Bottom panel,  $\frac{3}{4}$  in. by 16 $\frac{7}{8}$  in. by 37 $\frac{3}{8}$  in.

Side panels, 1 in. by 17 $\frac{3}{8}$  in. by 23 in.

Front and back panels, 1 in. by 17 in. by 38 $\frac{3}{8}$  in.

8d fine-cut finish nails

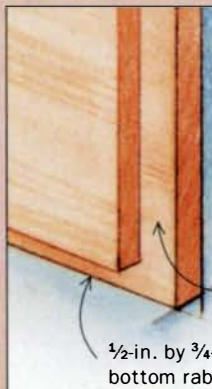
**THUMBNAIL MOLDING ON CHEST LID**



Rabbet plane is used to make  $\frac{1}{8}$ -in.-deep cut, then edge is rounded over with block plane.

**BOTTOM CORNERS OF FRONT AND BACK PANELS**

Cross-grain rabbet is cut 1 $\frac{1}{8}$  in. wide. After chest has been assembled, block plane is used to trim edge flush with sides.

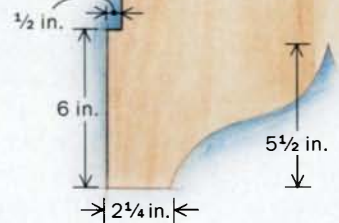


$\frac{1}{2}$ -in. by 1 $\frac{1}{8}$ -in. side rabbet

$\frac{1}{2}$ -in. by  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. bottom rabbet

**BOOT-JACK ENDS**

Boot-jack ends are cut with a bowsaw and finished with a spokeshave and chisel.





**Bowsawed boot jack.** A plywood half pattern, seen on the uncut panel, is used to trace the boot-jack end that forms the blanket chest's feet. If the bowsaw jams in the cut, pop out the waste piece with a chisel blow to the panel's end grain.

dovetail saw. Cut the length of the joint with a fine rip saw. The surface needs to be smoothed with a block plane to remove saw marks. By skewing a block plane, you can start close to the stop. Straighten out the plane as you continue the cut. Clean into the stop using a chisel. Test the joint with a straightedge.

### Cut the rabbets and dadoes

The front and back of the blanket chest have a rabbet cut across the grain. An iron rabbet plane has an adjustable fence that regulates the width of the cut. Set the plane to cut a rabbet 1½ in. wide—wider than the 1-in. width of the sides. The face edge will overhang the sides slightly and can be planed smooth after the chest has been nailed together. The plane's depth stop regulates the depth of cut; set it to cut a ½-in.-deep rabbet. The plane has a scribe (also called a nicker) under the depth stop. The scribe looks like a rounded cross with one corner missing. Each corner is sharpened and, when placed into the opening, projects below the sole. It is used when cutting cross-grain. The scribe severs the

wood fibers ahead of the cutter, eliminating dreaded tearout.

To avoid blowing out the end of a cross-grain rabbet, clamp a strip of sacrificial wood to the far side of the board you're cutting. And when starting a cross-grain rabbet, draw the plane backward so that the scribe makes a preliminary cut. When you push the plane, be sure to keep it square with the surface and end of the panel. You need to apply as much pressure in and down with the hand supporting the plane as you do with the one pushing it.

As the rabbet nears completion, the depth stop will begin to ride on the panel's surface. Usually, it comes in contact first on the side nearest you, as it is a natural tendency to decrease the pressure on the plane as your arms become extended. Make sure the rabbet has a consistent depth, then test the fit of the side panel into the rabbet. Cut all of the cross-grain rabbets, then cut the rabbets along the bottom of the front and back pieces to accommodate the chest's bottom panel.

The bottom panel of the chest also fits into dadoes cut in the side panels. In soft

white pine, you can cut a dado very easily using a utility knife and a chisel (see the photo below). Lay out the dado and clamp a straightedge along the mark. Score the line several times with a utility knife. Repeat on the other mark. With a chisel, pare the waste from the dado. When necessary, score the dado again and trim to depth.

### Making the till

Like most early blanket chests, this one has a till in one end. The till was used for storing small items that would be hard to find if placed in the chest itself. The till fits into stop dadoes cut in the front and back panels and in a dado on one side panel.

Surface-plane all till parts. Joint and cut them square. Thin wood presents a problem when cutting with a handsaw. The saws used in general work are too large and frequently break the piece. I own a number of small handsaws that are cut with 14 teeth per inch for small work.

The till has its own lid that hinges on two wood pins called lugs, which are made by removing all but a short rounded tenon from the lid's end-grain ends. Lay out the lugs with a try square and trace a ¼-in. circle on the end of each lug. Cut away the waste with a dovetail saw and a small handsaw. Clean up next to the lugs by paring away with a chisel. Using a chisel, undercut the waste on the corners of the square lugs (see the left photo on the facing page). Pare away the waste to round the lug. Test its fit into a ⅜-in. hole drilled in a piece of scrap.

The till lid's front edge is molded with a very traditional profile known as a thumb-



**Scribe with a knife, then cut a dado with a chisel.** Soft white pine, used for this chest and for thousands of similar antique versions, cuts easily with sharp hand tools. After a little chisel work, scribe again with the knife to cut cross-grain fibers until the dado is ½ in. deep.



**Wood hinge for the till.** After clamping the chest together for a test fit, mark the dados for the till. The till's lid hinges on lugs, small round tenons made by removing a strip of wood from each end of the lid and rounding off the remaining stub with a chisel.

nail. Make this molding the same way as those on the chest lid (see below).

### Final assembly doesn't require glue

Use a square to lay out the dados for the till bottom and front, but do not cut them yet. First, test-assemble the chest. This not only allows you to check your joints but also to be sure that the stopped dados you've laid out will intersect. Run a clamp through the boot-jack ends to hold the bottom in place and the ends vertical. You can easily assemble the rest from this stage.

Disassemble and make any necessary adjustments. Cut the till dados the same way as those in the end pieces. Drill the  $\frac{5}{8}$ -in. holes for the lugs in the locations shown.

When you're sure of the fit, reassemble the chest with the till parts in place and nail the rabbet joints. I used 8d fine-cut finish nails from Tremont Nail Co. (800-842-0560). These nails look the same as those on the original chest.

Because the nails are visible, their spacing is important; use five nails per joint. Drill a  $\frac{3}{16}$ -in. pilot hole for each nail and run the long head with the grain.

Use a low-angle ( $12^\circ$ ) block plane to trim the rabbets' face edges flush with the chest ends. (Remember that you cut the rabbet joints wide on the front and back panels.)

### Make and fit the lid

Cut the lid to size and make the cleats. Trace the beveled ends of the cleats with a



**Start the thumbnail with a rabbet plane; finish it with a block plane.** The lid of the blanket chest has a thumbnail, a popular edge profile from the 18th century, on the two sides and the front. The thumbnail is made in two steps; first, cut a  $\frac{1}{8}$ -in. rabbet, then round over the remaining square edge with a low-angle ( $12^\circ$ ) block plane.

bevel gauge set to the desired angle and cut them with a dovetail saw. Strike the bevels with a low-angle block plane to smooth away the saw marks.

To make the thumbnail molding, start with a rabbet plane to cut a  $\frac{1}{8}$ -in.-deep rabbet on the lid's front and side edges. Again, it's a good idea to clamp a sacrificial waste block when planing end grain. Turn the rabbet into a thumbnail by using a block plane to round the square edge (see the photo above). Check to ensure that the profile is uniform along all edges. Attach the cleats using #10 by  $1\frac{1}{4}$ -in. screws.

The original chest had snipe hinges, which look like two cotter pins connected by their eyes. The leaves of the snipe

hinges were drilled through the chest and clinched over into the wood. Some early blanket chests used butt hinges, while others used blacksmith-made offset strap hinges. Ball and Ball (800-257-3711) sells the handsome wrought-iron reproduction strap hinges I used.

The location of the till makes it necessary to mount the hinges off center, a common practice in the 18th century. To mount the hinges, simply mark their locations on the chest, mortise the short leaves into the chest's back panel and drive in a handful of black iron screws. □

Mike Dunbar is a contributing editor to Fine Woodworking.

# The Almost Perfect

BY JAN CARR

A basement is hardly the most desirable location for a shop. Yet, for many woodworkers, it's the only alternative. I live in a city, and even if expense were not an issue, there is simply no space for a separate outbuilding. Furthermore, living in a cold climate, a shop in the garage is problematic to say the least.

When my wife and I moved to Minnesota some years ago, we looked for a house that was a candidate for renovation. From my own point of view, I wanted a house with a good potential for setting up a shop. So when we found this house in St. Paul with a large basement sporting 8-ft. ceilings and a separate outside entrance, the rest of the structure looked pretty good to me. With all the renovation work looming, I chose to build the shop first. What follows is an account of what I did and why, with the hope that this discussion will help others develop a strategy that works for them.

## A little research and The Rule of Five help make the space habitable

I am a researcher by inclination. When confronted with a problem for which I know of no clear-cut answers—for example, the best way to insulate basement walls—I try to confer with at least five people or sources for the answer. I look for a consensus, if there is any, but mostly use common sense to weigh the options toward a decision. Pablo Picasso supposedly said that all art is derivative, meaning that it's a by-product of others' ideas. That is certainly true in the case of my shop. Nearly every concept of shop design that I've incorporated into my own space came through a process by which I saw someone else's idea, then revised, adapted or tweaked it to meet my own needs.

Before moving to St. Paul, we lived in a loft space in New York City, where I appropriated a finished bedroom for shop space. Though it was small, that shop was extraordinarily comfortable. Once in Minnesota, we spent our first year in a rented



house, where I set up shop in a dark, dank, thoroughly depressing basement. Those two experiences convinced me to do whatever was necessary to make this new shop as pleasant as possible. That meant erecting insulated stud walls, installing ceilings, and painting floors and walls. Birch plywood was available for about \$30 per sheet at the time, so I hung my tools on stained and varnished birch panels and built simple birch cabinets that were tailored to my storage needs.

**Dealing with moisture and ventilation**—Any basement with stone or concrete walls will be cold in the winter and damp in the summer, at least in the northern tier of North America. Most states and many localities have some sort of energy-information center that will help you solve the problems common to your area. The energy people here gave me very detailed guidelines for erecting insulated stud walls with a continuous vapor barrier, which I did on all of the exterior walls. That alone made a substantial dent in our heating bills and rendered the space very comfortable through the notoriously cold winters.

In the summer I put screens on the windows and use some cheap 8-in. box fans to

Efficient organization, strong light and fresh air can transform a dreary dungeon into a refuge of calm and productivity

provide cross ventilation. Also, I run two 40-pint dehumidifiers during the summer. These devices are expensive to operate—each about equal to what a refrigerator costs to run—but they keep the shop dry and comfortable. I have never had any problems with rusted tools or warped boards, so the dehumidifiers seem well worth the expense to me.

**Lights: incandescent vs. fluorescent**—Take an informal poll, and you'll find that hardly anyone prefers the look of fluores-

# Basement Shop



**Once you get past the dog, getting into this shop is easy. A separate entrance (above left) into the basement from the street level facilitates bringing lumber and plywood into this organized and comfortable workspace.**

cent light to incandescent, but you simply can't beat it on cost and output. I wanted a shop with bright, shadowless illumination, a factor of increasing importance to those of us with the diminishing eyesight that comes with advancing years.

I haven't had good luck with the so-called shop lights available from most home centers for about \$8, because they're too noisy. So I bought standard 4-ft. two-bulb fixtures at about twice that price. You can eliminate the ubiquitous hum of the fixtures by going with electronic ballasts

(at about \$37 per fixture). However, an electrician friend of mine suggested that I return any of the standard fixtures that hummed, because the quality control over ballasts is pretty abysmal. I found about one in three to be defective. As a result, my shop lights are reasonably quiet.

Bulb selection is also important. A lighting expert I talked with suggested the best bulbs for accurate color rendition should be rated at about 3,500° on the Kelvin scale. That's what I installed in the shop, even though each bulb cost about \$2.50 at

a local electrical-supply house. The result is a very pleasant light that to me is infinitely preferable to those cool-white bulbs you can pick up for a buck apiece.

**Keep the noise down**—Unless you want to outfit other members of your family with ear protection, you probably need to think

## MAKING THE SPACE WORK

Blessed with a large basement to begin with, the author improved its efficiency by ganging together specific areas for tool storage and work flow.

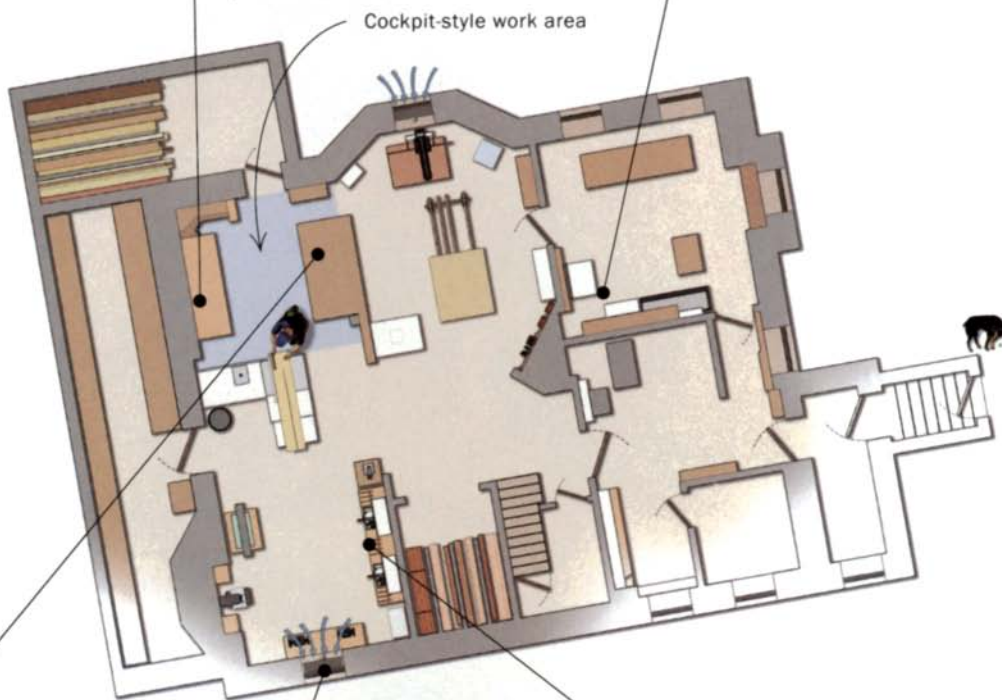
**1. Every tool has its place.** The author chose birch plywood over Peg-Board to make wall panels and storage cabinets for all of his tools.

**2. Clearly a shared space.** Laundry-room walls double as storage space for brushes and detergent.

**3. There are few shadows on this workbench.** A stickler for having plenty of light, the author ran 4-ft. fixtures continuously along the ceiling in closely spaced rows. All told, he spent about \$650 for 26 fixtures and color-correct bulbs.

**4. Small fans throw plenty of air.** This window fan, mounted above the sharpening station, exhausts air blown in by a fan on the opposite wall. The two small fans keep the air from getting stale.

**5. Dehumidifiers help prevent rust on tools.** Two of these devices run continuously from June through August to keep the space dry during humid weather. This one doubles as a support for a chopsaw workstation.



about shop noise. There are any number of measures you can employ to inhibit sound transmission, but most are rather elaborate and expensive.

I decided to take the simplest route, which was to stuff conventional fiberglass insulation between the rafters and use resilient channels (sometimes available from home centers but always from drywall

suppliers) to attach the ceiling drywall. This will certainly not stop all of the sound from drifting upward, but it does bring the roar of machines and tools down to a more tolerable level.

### Organizing for efficiency

After you've finished whatever decorating you've chosen to do, the sometimes daunt-

ing process of organizing your space begins in earnest. Most experts will tell you to think about work flow in setting up your space. That's difficult advice to follow in a basement, given the fixed obstructions—chimneys, support columns, heating and plumbing fixtures, etc. As a consequence, you are often forced to organize around these various obstructions and give sec-



## A knockdown utility table that sets up in no time

Two sawhorses and three lengths of 2x4s provide me with a quick, no-fuss worktable when I need one. I use it for cutting panels, assembling casework and as a drying rack for finishing. Half-lap joints make this table easy to put together and take apart. It stores readily out of the way (see the photos at right).—J.C.

ondary consideration to the logical flow of work. I knew that most of my shop time would be devoted to renovation tasks such as stripping doors and moldings and building case goods. With that in mind, I located the tablesaw first so that there would be adequate space to cut sheet goods and maintain an open area for stripping.

It makes sense to draw a simple floor plan of the available space. I've found it useful to make scale drawings of the machines, as well as some of the materials you expect to work, such as 4x8 sheets of plywood. You can then move your machines around on the floor plan to determine which placement gives you the most space to work the materials.

**Layout, cockpit style**—From my days in an office, I came to favor what I think of as a cockpit work environment—sitting at a desk with my necessary office machines and work materials in a U shape around my back and sides. I took that same idea to the shop. As I work at the tablesaw, my workbench is to my left, the tool wall is to my right, and necessary hardware and portable power tools are right behind me (see the floor plan on the facing page). For 90% of my work in the shop, everything I need is within two steps. I left enough room in the middle of this space to assemble cabinets.

**Keep the space flexible**—Given the obstructions and space limitations of most basements, you have to consider making as many items movable as you can. In my shop, everything can be broken down or moved, with the exception of the benches and the tablesaw. The challenge with machines, of course, is to make them movable, and then—when in use—immobile. I've tried a variety of devices over the years, but my current favorite is the universal mobile machine base made by Delta (available for about \$50).

One of the most adaptable devices in the shop is what I call the cutting rack (see the story above). It's simply a knockdown

table, consisting of two horses and three 2x4s, with half-lap joints between the top of each horse and each 2x4 to hold it all together. I use this rack for cutting up sheets of plywood, as an assembly bench and, with a sheet of plywood on the top, as a general utility table. And if I need the floor space, the whole thing can be pulled apart and moved aside in about 10 seconds.

**Match bench heights to fit**—You also need to think about the height of your machines. The top surface of my tablesaw is 34 in. off the floor, which, in turn, determined the height of nearby benches, so I can slide a sheet of plywood over the bench onto the tablesaw. Conversely, the jointer/planer sits at a lower height so that pieces of lumber will slip under the saw's extension table.

### The shop as a work in progress

In many respects, designing and building a shop will be the most complicated project most woodworkers will ever undertake. As such, it can be fairly intimidating, if you are as compulsive as I am and want to get it right the first time. However, somewhere along the line, it dawned on me that a shop should be treated more as a work in progress than as a project to be completed. Thus liberated, I felt more comfortable in trying some new arrangement or idea and discarding it if it didn't work as well as I had originally hoped. Any number of my friends seem to find use for my rejects, and there have been many.

All of which is to suggest that you don't spend too much time or effort trying to devise the ideal shop. Start somewhere and just accept the inevitable reality that you will reconfigure again ... and again ... and again. Even now, on my drawing board I'm trying to come up with another arrangement that would accommodate a dust collector, a 20-in. bandsaw and a shaper. □

*Jan Carr builds cabinets and restores the three-story, turn-of-the-century home he shares with his wife in St. Paul, Minn.*





# Bench-Mounted Router Table

A three-part table clamps to a workbench, and it hangs from the ceiling when not in use

BY PAUL MANNING

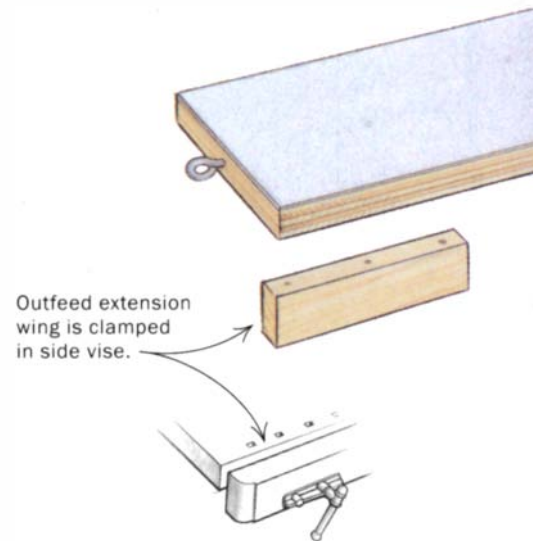


I was getting ready to make grandfather clocks—one for each of my three children—and I needed a router table. The clocks entailed routing lots of curved moldings, raised panels and long boards, and their imminence finally forced me to think about designing a router table that would suit my needs. Because of the limited floor space in my basement shop, I hesitated to build a freestanding unit. And I discarded the idea of building a table where the router would sit on my workbench because it would make the work surface too high to work at comfortably.

It occurred to me that I could make a suitable router table that took advantage of the features of my very sturdy 8-ft.-long cabinetmaker's workbench, if I could design the table so that the router hung below the workbench surface. In effect, my router table is really only a router tabletop in that it has no legs and gets its sturdiness from being clamped to the bench. The table has three parts: the main table, which is the center section that holds the router and fence, and infeed and outfeed extension wings, which are clamped in the tails and side vises, respectively. Best yet, when I'm not using the table, the whole thing hangs on hook eyes from my basement ceiling joists, freeing up valuable floor space.

## Buy the fence and build the table from scraps

I bought a phenolic-resin router-base insert and a cast-aluminum router fence from Trendlines (888-234-8665) for about \$120. I



Outfeed extension wing is clamped in side vise.

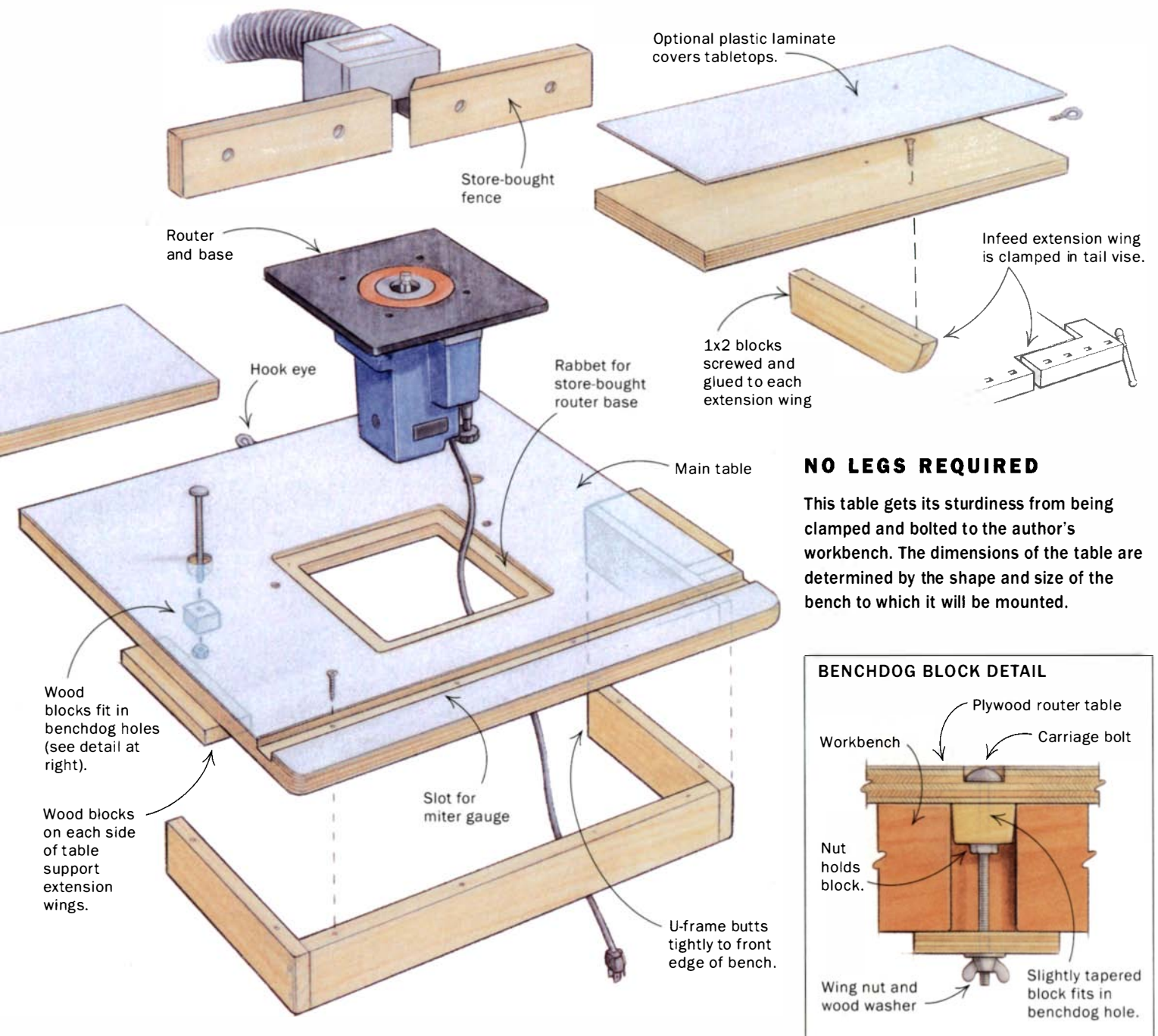
had been thinking about building a fence, and while toying around with a design idea, I came across what I thought was a perfectly adequate system from Trendlines. The system has 14-in.-long adjustable fences and a dust-collection port that plugs right into my shop vacuum.

My bench is very heavy. Even with the weight of the router and the 13-in. cantilever of the router table, the bench is sturdy enough that it won't tip forward, and thus no supporting legs are needed under the front edge of the table.

My main table is 30 in. wide and 24 in. deep, but obviously you'll have to size your table to fit the size and shape of your workbench. The most important dimension is the location of the router itself. It should be mounted as close as possible to the front edge of the workbench. The extension wings can be of any length and width, but I made mine 6 in. narrower than the front edge of the main table so that I can stand close to the working router bit.

The tabletop extends beyond the U-frame, permitting the use of clamps for featherboards and hold-downs and making room for a miter-gauge slot. The exten-





## NO LEGS REQUIRED

This table gets its sturdiness from being clamped and bolted to the author's workbench. The dimensions of the table are determined by the shape and size of the bench to which it will be mounted.

sions have short pieces of hardwood underneath for insertion into the bench vises.

### Assembly suggestions

After cutting the plywood for the main table, I transcribed the locations of two benchdog holes onto the plywood. To register the benchdog blocks in the holes, I glued and loosely bolted each one to the plywood with a short bolt. While the glue was still wet and the bolts were loose, I inserted the blocks into the benchdog holes. I then tightened the bolts and quickly removed the table.

After the glue dried, I replaced the short bolts with long carriage bolts, inserted the table into the benchdog holes and fixed the table to the bench with wing nuts (see detail drawing above). Holding the U-frame tightly against the front of the bench, I clamped it to the plywood, then screwed through the tabletop and into the U-frame.

For the extension wings, I clamped cleats in the bench vises and then aligned the tops of the extension wings, pushing them tight to the main-table edges. Then I screwed through the extension wings and into the cleats.

Note in the drawing that a block of wood is also glued and screwed under the main table's ends and protrudes 1 in. to provide a shelf support for the extension wings and to keep all surfaces in the same plane.

The table is well sealed with polyurethane, and the top surfaces are covered with plastic laminate. The plastic laminate is not an absolute necessity; a table that is well sealed and sanded smooth should be satisfactory. The grandfather clocks, by the way, turned out great. □

*Paul Manning lives in North Andover, Mass.*



# A Working Guide to Glues

Choosing the right adhesive for the job might mean more than grabbing that old bottle on the shelf

BY WILLIAM TANDY YOUNG

I worked wood for years before realizing that I knew virtually nothing about the glues I was depending on to hold my joints together. At the time my attention was focused on things like lumber, tools and machines. I took glue for granted, assuming that it would always work and keep joints tightly bonded for years to come. After experiencing a few nightmare glue-ups and hearing from customers that some of my furniture wasn't holding up as well as it should, I finally realized that to improve as a woodworker I had to learn something about glue.

Once I started to understand more about glue, I became aware of more design possibilities and expanded my range of work. As I learned which adhesives were best for particular jobs, the overall quality of my work also improved. Choosing the right glue helps glue-ups proceed smoothly and successfully. It also ensures that your work will have the structural integrity and durability it needs to survive in the world.

How much do you need to know about glue to choose the best one for your work and become a better woodworker? You should know more than you can learn from ads, sales brochures and container labels, which often contain inaccurate or misleading information, but you certainly don't have to become a polymer chemist. What you really need is some useful, well-organized information on adhesives.

## The principles of choosing glue

There is no such thing as a miracle adhesive with magical properties that will tackle any task. When I

## Glue or adhesive?

Is there a difference between a glue and an adhesive? Technically, there is. Strictly speaking, glues are based on polymers, such as starch and protein, that are derived from natural sources, such as rice flour or cattle hides. Adhesives are based on polymers that are chemically synthesized, like PVA resins found in white and yellow glues. However, most people use the terms glue and adhesive interchangeably on a casual basis, as we do in this article. In general, you won't encounter a formally observed distinction between glues and adhesives unless you read literature of a highly technical nature, such as engineering standards.

choose glue for a job, I try to take as many things into account as I can, without spending a lot of time dwelling on details and pondering different glues. This article is designed to help you choose glue in just such a fashion, so that your work flow won't be disrupted by endless head scratching.

All glues are carefully formulated products with specific properties, and they perform well only if the conditions in your workshop, such as temperature and humidity, are favorable. Gluing well is a matter of knowing how to get the best performance from the glues you use while also knowing their limitations. By keeping an assortment of glues at your disposal and knowing what to expect from different ones, you can choose the adhesive that best suits your needs in any given situation.

It is also important to keep in mind the condition of your work. Glue joints that are skillfully crafted and prepared usually can be bonded successfully with one of several types of glues. Glue joints that are poorly crafted are difficult to bond regardless of the type of glue you use. Gluing surfaces not only have to mate properly, but they also must be free of contaminants (such as oil or grime) and have a moisture content that's appropriate for the work being done and the glue being used.

Although woodworkers have a tendency to seek the strongest glue on the market, glue shouldn't be chosen on the basis of strength alone. While some glues are stronger than others, all of the adhesives discussed in this article—except for wheat or rice paste, hot-melt glue and contact cement—will produce a bond that is “stronger than the wood itself,” which means that if a glue joint is stressed to the breaking point, the wood will usually fail before the glue does. For many jobs, all you need to know is that the glue you're using is stronger than your wood. With this in mind, try to choose adhesives based on properties other than strength (such as open assembly time or rigidity), according to the demands of the job.

### Comparing the properties of adhesives

As you compare the properties of the adhesives listed in the charts on the next few pages, it may be helpful to evaluate different glues by grouping them into the following categories:

**Natural vs. synthetic**—Most glues that are derived from natural sources, like wheat paste or hide glue, are reversible, meaning they can be reactivated with water after they harden. Adhesives that are based on synthetic polymers, such as urea resin glue, polyvinyl acetate (PVA) or epoxy, generally can't be reversed after they cure, but they may have other properties that are superior to those of natural glues.

**Water based vs. non-water based**—Even though water-based adhesives are easy to handle, in general, they can add quite a bit of moisture to glued work. There often are instances when this added moisture is unwelcome. If you're face-laminating an unstable wood like beech or sycamore, for example, you're better off using an adhesive that contains less water. Of the glues in this article, most natural and nonreactive synthetic glues (except solvent-based contact cement and hot melt) are high in moisture content.

Of the reactive synthetic glues, only a few resorcinols and ureas contain a significant amount of moisture.

**Toxic vs. nontoxic**—It's common to encounter a trade-off between toxicity and performance: The glues that offer higher levels of performance and power are often more hazardous to use than those that are not as powerful. This is especially true when comparing different variations of the same kind of glue. For example, high-fume urea resin glue (which emits powerful formaldehyde



**The “wooden wonder.”** This British-designed World War II plane, called the Mosquito Bomber, was constructed mostly from wood and bonded with urea formaldehyde glue, which had just been developed.

vapors) usually outperforms low-fume urea resin glue, which is safer and less noxious to use.

### Using the charts in this article

Here's an example of how I might choose the best glue for a job using the charts on the next few pages. Suppose I need to glue down a metal inlay. Many woodworkers use epoxy for this type of work, but it's not a good choice because scraping or sanding metal inlay flush with the surrounding wood usually creates a lot of heat. Most epoxy has low heat resistance and softens as the inlay is being scraped, which can cause the inlay to lift out of its recess.

As you look at the properties of polyurethane glue, you'll notice that it has high heat resistance, long open and closed assembly times and is very easy to clean up with hand tools after it hardens—all of which make it an ideal adhesive for metal inlay. If you want to use a natural glue instead, you'll notice that fish glue's long

# NATURAL GLUES

Glues in this group are made of natural ingredients and cure by moisture loss, heat loss or a combination of both. Casein glue is a slight exception, as it is made of milk curd but accomplishes some of its curing by chemical reaction.



## RICE AND WHEAT PASTES

Commercial preblended instant formulas require no cooking and are easy to use. They are best for bonding porous, pliant materials (such as paper, cloth and leather) to wood.



## FISH GLUE

Handy and versatile, without any fishy odor. A good choice for light-duty, wood-to-wood bonding and repairs. Fish glue also bonds natural nonwood materials (such as cloth, metal and bone) to wood.



## HIDE GLUE

Unmatched for its combination of versatility, compatibility and strength. Hide glue is much easier to use than most people think. It is used for edge- and face-gluing, assembling joints, veneering, repairing and bonding natural nonwood materials to wood. It also can be used as a sizing, a wood conditioner and a grain filler.



## CASEIN GLUE

Casein glue bonds oily tropical woods well and is used for structural lamination, as well as panel and flush door pressing. Its coarse, grainy, mixed consistency may produce glue lines with a thick appearance.

assembly time and high heat resistance make it preferable to hide glue for metal inlay.

## Water resistant or waterproof

Over the last few years, the distinction between water resistant and waterproof has become hazy. Inaccurate and misleading claims have been made about the water resistance of various glues. Vague alternative terms like weatherproof and weather resistant have also come into use. To be rated properly for water resistance, a glue must be tested in accordance with established technical standards. There are various moisture-resistance tests for adhesives, such as intermittent exposure to water, continual immersion and boiling. On a practical basis, here's how the most widely used moisture-resistant woodworking adhesives stack up.

Type-II PVA glues are moisture resistant and will withstand in-



## Rice and Wheat Pastes

<b>Handling</b>	Mix with water and cook before use (if required); add preservative to prevent mold growth; can be tinted with dyes or inks to match wood color
<b>Open assembly time</b>	15 to 20 minutes
<b>Clamp time</b>	3 to 6 hours
<b>Cleanup</b>	<b>Tools and hands:</b> use warm water <b>Glued work:</b> pare off hardened excess with chisel
<b>Cured working qualities</b>	Easily cut with hand tools when cured; compatible with stains and finishes; reversible with water
<b>Structural properties</b>	Not strong enough for most structural wood-to-wood bonding
<b>Endurance properties</b>	Subject to bacterial and fungal attack unless preservative is added
<b>Health and safety</b>	Nontoxic

termittent exposure, but they aren't recommended for work that will be fully immersed in water. Polyurethane and urea resin glues are extremely water resistant and are better able to withstand periods of immersion. Resorcinol resin glues and marine epoxies are considered waterproof and can withstand prolonged periods of immersion. Of these last two, epoxy is a better all-around choice because it can be used as a sealant and coating as well as an adhesive, allowing wood to be shielded from moisture to keep it from cracking, splitting or rotting. When choosing glue for a project that will really put glue to the test (like a boat), review your glue's technical specifications carefully to see that it's up to the task.

## Altering, combining and customizing glues

You don't always have to use glue right out of the bottle, the way it was formulated. Many adhesives can be altered and customized



### Fish Glue

### Hide Glue

### Casein Glue

Ready to use; can be tinted with dyes or inks; refrigerate to extend shelf life

Mix granules with water and heat to 140°F before use; add water if glue thickens; add urea or salt to retard gel rate; add glycerin to plasticize cured glue line; can be tinted to match wood color; premixed, ready-to-use liquid hide glues also available

Usually requires careful two-step mixing with water to prevent lumping

15 to 30 minutes, depending on working temperature

1 to 10 minutes, depending on gram strength, condition of glue and working temperature

15 to 45 minutes, depending on working temperature

2 to 4 hours, depending on setting temperature

10 to 90 minutes, depending on gram strength, condition of glue and setting temperature; some glue-ups, like hammer veneering, don't require clamping

2 to 8 hours, depending on setting temperature

**Tools and hands:** use warm water  
**Glued work:** use warm water, either when glue is wet or hardened

**Tools and hands:** use warm water  
**Glued work:** peel off excess once it gets to rubbery state, then swab area with warm water; remove hardened excess with hot water and heat gun

**Tools and hands:** use soap and warm water  
**Glued work:** remove hardened excess with power sander

Cures hard; machines and sands well; compatible with stains and finishes; reversible with water

Cures very hard; machines and sands well

Cures hard, sands readily, but dulls cutting tools rapidly; permanently stains the surface of high-tannin woods such as oak and mahogany

Good strength, rigidity and creep resistance; not as strong as hide glue

Excellent strength, rigidity and creep resistance; thick glue layers can be brittle

Excellent strength, rigidity and durability; highly creep resistant; has some gap-filling ability

Excellent heat and solvent resistance; poor water resistance; glue layers desiccate, become brittle with age

Surprisingly resistant to moderate heat and moisture levels, despite reversibility; good solvent resistance and shock resistance; glue layers may desiccate, become brittle with age

High-grade formulas have good moisture and solvent resistance; low-grade formulas have lower moisture resistance; can be subject to bacterial and fungal attack unless preservative is added

Nontoxic

Nontoxic

Dry glue powder can irritate respiratory tract during measuring and mixing

to better meet the needs of the job. For example, I often retard the cure rate of hide glue by adding a gel depressant, such as granular urea. (It can be added in amounts up to about 30% of the weight of the glue granules.) I also regularly tint epoxy and other adhesives with specialty adhesive colorants or aniline dyes and inks to match wood color. Some adhesives, such as epoxy, can be altered and customized to a great extent; other products, like polyurethane glue, shouldn't be altered at all.

Also, glues can be combined to create mixtures that have enhanced properties and performance. For example, I sometimes add a small amount of fish glue to hide glue as a retarder, or some ethylene vinyl acetate (EVA) to PVA as a plasticizer. One of my favorite combinations is a mixture of PVA and urea resin glue. Lots of different results can be obtained by varying the types of glue you mix together and the proportions in which you mix them. You can

experiment to find out what works well by making small batches and testing them on scrap wood.

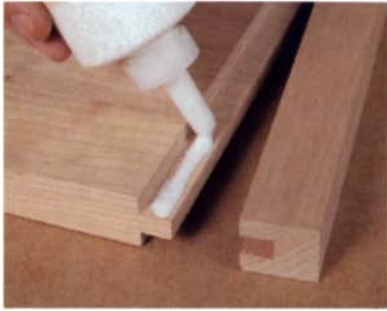
To minimize clamp time, the hardening of some glues can be accelerated. For instance, urea resin glue and resorcinol will harden more quickly if heated to 80°F or 90°F while your work is clamped up. Joints assembled with hide glue can be chilled during clamping to make the glue gel faster. You can also use alcohol, baking soda or an accelerator to speed up cyanoacrylate glue. With polyurethane glue, lightly moistening the gluing surfaces before applying glue promotes faster hardening.

### Myths and facts on filling gaps

Many glue manufacturers claim that their products will fill gaps. Whether the products really will or not depends on what sort of gaps you have to fill. Most of the glues featured in this article can

# NONREACTIVE SYNTHETIC GLUES

The glues in this group are formulated from synthetic ingredients but cure much like natural glues—by releasing water, solvent or heat.



## ETHYLENE VINYL ACETATE GLUE (EVA)

EVAs are very versatile and useful for specialty jobs that rigid glues can't handle. EVA is a good choice for bonding melamine-faced cabinet parts and for gluing cross-grain solid-wood assemblies where wood movement is likely. It's also handy for consolidating wormy or damaged wood.



**POLYVINYL ACETATE GLUE (PVA)**  
Both white and yellow glues are PVAs. "Aliphatic resin" is a meaningless marketing term coined to help identify yellow glue as a distinct product. The two types are low grade (craft, school or hobby glue) and high grade (professional/industrial glue). PVAs are useful for a wide assortment of tasks: edge- and face-gluing, bonding structural joints, bonding plastic laminates, as well as for biscuit joinery.



## CONTACT CEMENT

Some of the new water-based cements now available are fast drying and give high performance. Applying significant pressure to the work with clamps or a press greatly increases the strength of the bond. Contact cement is best used for bonding plastic laminates, for installing decorative overlays and for gluing up other rigid sheet materials.



## HOT-MELT GLUE

Hot-melt glues and guns are available with high, low or dual melt-point temperatures. High-melt systems are widely available and are commonly used; low-melt systems are safer and less likely than high-melt systems to harm the materials being glued. Hot melt is useful for edge-banding sheet stock and for the rapid assembly of jigs and other temporary fixtures.

be used to fill small cosmetic gaps, with varying degrees of success. But of the glues discussed here, only epoxy will fill gaps in joints with true structural strength.

Other glues just aren't up to the job of structural gap filling. For instance, PVA and hide glue lose water and shrink in volume as they cure. Two-part urea resin and cyanoacrylate become brittle when they are made to cure in thick bond layers. And regular hot melt simply lacks the adhesive power needed for structural gap filling. Polyurethane glue does expand into gaps as it cures, filling them with a spongy foam, but this foam has little or no structural

strength. In most cases, the best way to fill a gap in a bad joint is to shim the joint with wood or veneer.

## Work safe, work smart

Many woodworkers think that adhesives are benign and treat them casually, which is a mistake. Avoid skin contact whenever possible when using synthetic adhesives, and be cautious with glue, both when it's in liquid form and after it hardens. Often it's the smaller, less obvious hazards of glue that can cause the most trouble. For instance, thin glue can come streaming out of an ap-

EVA Glue	
<b>Handling</b>	Ready to use; can be tinted with dyes or inks to match wood color
<b>Open assembly time</b>	10 to 15 minutes, depending on glue formula and working temperature
<b>Clamp time</b>	30 to 120 minutes, depending on glue formula and setting temperature
<b>Cleanup</b>	<b>Tools and hands:</b> use warm water <b>Glued work:</b> clean wet excess with warm water; chisel or scrape when partially set; or scrape or machine after hardening
<b>Cured working qualities</b>	Soft and pliable when cured; can be worked with hand tools; machines well; sands moderately well; reversible with water and/or heat; compatible with some stains and finishes
<b>Structural properties</b>	Cures with acceptable strength but with little rigidity and creep resistance (which is an asset when gluing assemblies that incorporate seasonal wood movement)
<b>Endurance properties</b>	Low resistance to heat and moisture; fair resistance to acids and solvents; fair shock resistance; will gradually degrade if exposed to intense UV light
<b>Health and safety</b>	Generally safe to use; some formulas are fairly acidic and can be harsh on skin; clean glue from skin before it hardens





### PVA Glue

### Contact Cement

### Hot-Melt Glue

Ready to use; high in moisture content and can be thinned with water up to 5% to extend working time; can also be tinted with dyes or inks; premixed urea resin glue can be added to strengthen mix	Ready to use; can be thinned before application	Must be applied hot, according to product specifications; low-melt glue shouldn't be used in a high-melt gun
5 to 30 minutes, depending on glue formula and working temperature	Must dry prior to assembly; open drying times: 10 to 20 minutes (water based), 2 to 15 minutes (solvent based), depending on working temperature and humidity; aerosol cements usually have shorter assembly times	5 to 30 seconds, longer if parts are preheated
20 to 90 minutes, depending on glue formula and setting temperature	Briefly clamping or pressing (for 1 to 5 minutes at room temperature) will increase bond strength	No clamping needed; press parts together as firmly and quickly as possible
<b>Tools and hands:</b> use warm water <b>Glued work:</b> clean wet excess with warm water; chisel or scrape when partially set; or scrape or machine after hardening	<b>Tools and hands:</b> use soap and water for water-based cement; solvent for solvent based <b>Glued work:</b> clean excess with solvent or machine it off after assembly	<b>Glued work:</b> clean excess with scraper, naphtha or a chisel (soften glue with heat gun) or machine it off after hardening
All PVAs resist stains and finishes and can be softened or reactivated with heat up to several days after application; low grade is fairly soft and workable when cured, can be cut with hand tools, machines well but loads paper when sanded and is reversible with water for 2 to 6 weeks after curing; high grade cures hard, machines and sands well and is not reversible with water after curing	Soft and elastic when cured; can be machined and sanded but will gum up cutting edges and sandpaper; may be softened or dissolved by solvents in stains and finishes	Can be cut with hand tools when hardened; machines and sands adequately but can gum up cutting edges and sandpaper; reversible with heat; may be softened or dissolved by some stains and finishes
Low grade has adequate strength, low rigidity and creep resistance; high grade has much greater strength, rigidity, creep resistance and durability; top-grade PVAs have creep resistance comparable to some epoxies	Does not produce bonds with permanent structural strength but develops increased strength when pressed into thin layer; no rigidity; little or no creep resistance	Does not have enough strength to produce permanent structural bonds; develops increased strength when pressed into thin layer; limited rigidity and creep resistance; has some gap-filling ability but with limited strength
Low grade has low to moderate resistance to heat, moisture, acids and solvents (acetone, etc.) and good shock resistance; high grade has much greater resistance to heat, moisture, acids and solvents and very good shock resistance; type-II PVAs have good to excellent moisture resistance; all will gradually degrade if exposed to intense UV light	Good to excellent heat resistance once pressed into thin layer and cured; poor to fair moisture resistance if subjected to prolonged exposure; poor solvent resistance	Good moisture resistance; no heat resistance; poor solvent resistance; poor to fair shock resistance; will gradually degrade if exposed to intense UV light
Generally safe to use, but some formulas are fairly acidic and can be harsh on skin; clean glue from skin before it hardens	Water based is generally safe to use; solvent based contains elements that are health and environmental hazards; fumes are toxic and explosive	Heated glue guns and glue can burn skin; using low-melt glue in high-melt gun may cause glue to ooze out of the infeed port and burn your hand

plicator tip and douse your face if you squeeze the bottle too vigorously. Hardened excess glue on the surface of your work can fracture and fly about like shards of glass as you scrape it off. Gloves, safety glasses and a respirator are all standard gluing gear in my shop.

Some adhesives have short shelf lives and are sensitive to heat, light and humidity. Others may keep well for years in less-than-ideal conditions. Buy sensitive glues like urea resin and cyanoacrylate in small amounts and check them for freshness by looking for dates of manufacture on containers. Once you buy any glue,

store it as well as you can so that it will be in good shape when you need it. Otherwise, you'll end up regularly disposing of spoiled glue and replacing it with fresh material.

### Different glues have different life expectancies

While you want your best work to be long lasting, a glued assembly such as a jig may only have a useful life of a day or so. There's no point in carefully bonding the parts of a jig together with epoxy when a few quick dabs of hot melt will do. Similarly, if you expect a plastic laminate kitchen countertop to last only 5 to 10 years,

# REACTIVE SYNTHETIC GLUES

The glues in this group are formulated from synthetic components and cure primarily by chemical reaction.



	Urea Resin Glue	Resorcinol	Epoxy
Handling	One-part glue: mix powder with water; two-part glue: mix liquid resin and powdered catalyst; either glue can be mixed slightly off ratio; can be tinted with dyes or inks; can be mixed with PVA	Mix liquid resin and powdered catalyst; shouldn't be thinned; can be tinted black with dye or ink	Mix resin and hardener; can be mixed slightly off ratio; can be thickened with various additives; can be tinted with specialty epoxy tints
Open assembly time	15 to 35 minutes, depending on glue formula, mix ratio, dispersal of glue volume and working temperature	12 to 25 minutes, depending on glue formula, mix ratio, dispersal of glue volume and working temperature	2 minutes to 2 or more hours, depending on epoxy formula, mix ratio, dispersal of epoxy volume and working temperature
Clamp time	4 to 10 hours, depending on glue formula and setting temperature	5 to 10 hours, depending on glue formula and setting temperature	4 minutes to 48 hours, depending on epoxy formula and setting temperature
Cleanup	<b>Tools and hands:</b> use soap and warm water (don't use hot water—it will gum up the excess glue) <b>Glued work:</b> machine or scrape off hardened excess	<b>Tools and hands:</b> use soap and warm water (don't use hot water—it will gum up the excess glue) <b>Glued work:</b> machine or scrape off hardened excess	<b>Tools and hands:</b> Use hand cleaner, vinegar, alcohol or acetone <b>Glued work:</b> machine or scrape off hardened excess
Cured working qualities	Cures very hard; hand-scrapes, machines and sands well but dulls cutting edges quickly; resists stains and finishes	Cures hard to very hard, depending on formula; hand-scrapes, machines and sands well but dulls cutting edges; resists stains and finishes	Cures hard but can be cut with hand tools if warmed with a heat gun; scrapes, machines and sands well; doesn't dull cutting edges as quickly as urea resin glue; resists stains and finishes
Structural properties	Very strong, rigid and creep resistant; good durability; two-part systems (liquid resin and powdered catalyst) have moderate gap-filling ability	Very strong, rigid and creep resistant; slightly less rigid, more durable than urea resin glues when cured	Excellent combination of strength, rigidity, creep resistance and durability
Endurance properties	Fair to good shock resistance; good heat resistance; excellent solvent resistance, depending on formula. Low-grade formulas may craze, become brittle with age (especially in thick bond layers)	Waterproof; excellent heat and solvent resistance; good to excellent shock resistance	Waterproof; may gradually degrade if exposed to UV light; can be weakened, broken down by some solvents; fair to adequate heat resistance; superior shock resistance
Health and safety	Contains furfuryl alcohol and formaldehyde; squeeze-out can harden into sharp edges; cured glue can fracture into dangerous shards when scraped or machined; airborne dust can be hazardous	Contains phenols and formaldehyde; squeeze-out can harden into sharp edges; cured glue can fracture into dangerous shards when scraped or machined; airborne dust can be hazardous	Contains compounds that are respiratory tract and skin irritants; can cause acute irritation with repeated use

## UREA RESIN GLUE

High water resistance makes this a good choice for exterior wood bonding, bent laminating, veneering and pressing plastic laminate. In general, one-part ureas are easier and less hazardous to use than two-part ureas. But two-part ureas have better performance and cured properties.



## RESORCINOL

Among the best choice for waterproof exterior and marine wood bonding, but the dark red color creates highly visible glue lines in light-colored woods. It is a fine choice for bent laminations or veneering.



## EPOXY

Properties can vary greatly from one brand to the next—choose according to the job at hand. Best uses include waterproof exterior and marine wood bonding, bent laminating and veneering. Epoxy is also used for sealing, topcoating, casting and embedding hardware.





### Polyurethane

### Cyanoacrylate

Ready to use; don't alter glue; work can be moistened before applications to speed hardening; to prolong shelf life, squeeze air out of bottle, keep tightly capped and keep away from moisture and humidity

Ready to use; separate accelerator can be used to speed hardening, but for best results, it's not recommended

10 to 40 minutes, depending on glue formula, moisture content of workpieces, working temperature and humidity

30 seconds to 5 minutes, depending on glue formula, volume of glue applied, moisture content of workpieces, working temperature and humidity

45 minutes to 10 hours, depending on glue formula, moisture content of workpieces, setting temperature and humidity

2 seconds to 4 hours, depending on glue formula, volume of glue in joint, moisture content of workpieces, working temperature and humidity and use of accelerator

**Tools and hands:** use hand cleaner, alcohol or acetone  
**Glued work:** pare, scrape or machine hardened excess

**Tools and hands:** swab with acetone or debonder  
**Glued work:** machine or scrape off hardened excess

Cured foamout is soft and cuts easily with hand tools; scrapes, machines and sands well; compatible with stains and finishes

Cures hard to very hard, depending on formula; scrapes adequately but can be brittle; machines and sands well; resists stains and finishes

Good strength, rigidity, creep resistance and durability; fills gaps but only with foamed glue, which has no structural strength

Very strong and rigid, with fair durability, when used to bond small surface areas

Excellent moisture, solvent and shock resistance; superior heat resistance; not completely waterproof, as advertised

Good moisture and heat resistance; poor solvent resistance and shock resistance; yellows, may degrade with exposure to UV light

Contains di-isocyanate compounds that can acutely irritate skin and respiratory tract

Bonds human skin to itself and workpieces (accidentally bonded skin will release with debonder); fumes of most formulas are noxious and can affect skin and respiratory tract; glue squirted in eyes causes permanent vision damage

#### POLYURETHANE

Polyurethane is useful for water-resistant exterior wood bonding, laminating, veneering and for bonding nonwood materials, but it's a poor choice for biscuit joinery. It develops full strength only in well-fit, tightly clamped joints. New formulas cure faster than the older ones.



#### CYANOACRYLATE

Widely sold as all-purpose glue but is best used for rapidly bonding small wood and nonwood workpieces. Not as effective when bonding highly porous materials or large surface areas. Cyanoacrylates are sensitive to joint surface conditions like pH, moisture and grime.



there's no need to bond the laminate to the substrate with urea resin glue when contact cement should hold up sufficiently for that length of time.

As you choose glues for various jobs, it's important to consider how long you expect your work to last once it has been glued up. Unfortunately, there is no such thing as a truly permanent glue joint. Even perfectly crafted and prepared joints made from superb materials and bonded with the strongest adhesives eventually fail. The concept that all joints eventually fail is bothersome to many woodworkers, especially since the adhesives that are rated as being stronger than wood are commonly called "permanent" adhesives—an unfortunate misnomer. This doesn't mean that your best work is going to fall apart in your lifetime, though. Your glue joints may endure for centuries, as other joints have.

Joint failure occurs for a number of reasons—abuse, glue deterioration from ultraviolet light, humidity or just the inevitable seasonal movement of wood. There are, however, things you can do to combat failure. To begin with, design and make the best joints you can. Then bond them together with the highest-quality glue you can get. When you're choosing an adhesive, whenever possible consider using a reversible glue, such as hide glue, rather than a nonreversible synthetic adhesive, such as PVA or urea resin glue.

Reversible glue is easy to remove from the gluing surfaces of failed joints using hot water. This allows joints to be properly cleaned before being reglued. If older joints can't be disassembled, dry, brittle hide glue inside joints can be reconstituted by injecting water with a syringe. On the other hand, it's much harder to clean synthetic adhesives like PVA or urea resin glue without altering or damaging the gluing surfaces—they can't be reactivated with water or other agents.

I'm convinced that the best way to ensure the longevity of your work is to bond it with a reversible glue whenever possible. After all, the reason why so many antiques have survived for hundreds of years is not because the glue joints never failed; it's because those glue joints were easy to repair when they did fail. □

*William Tandy Young, author of The Glue Book (The Taunton Press, 1998), is a woodworker and adhesives consultant in Stow, Mass.*



# Chip Carving Limbers Up

The simple tools and techniques of an old art easily adapt to a more flexible use

BY CRAIG VANDALL STEVENS

**T**raditional chip carving most often takes the form of geometric designs in repeating patterns densely covering a workpiece. The knife strokes are small, and the chips of wood they remove create a kaleidoscope of tiny excavations that form a larger image. But that style is simply the convention. When I began learning to chip carve, I found that the traditional chip-carving knife, with its short, angled blade and the easy way it fits in

one's hand, lent itself equally well to a flowing, free-form style of carving. I found that I could use the knife almost like a pen or a brush and compose directly from the point of the blade, pulling it across the wood as if I were drawing in sand. The technique is fairly simple and efficient and requires only a small kit of tools—a chip-carving knife or two and a pair of sharpening stones to keep the knives behaving properly.

## THE GRIP

One grip does almost all of the cutting. The grip forms a tripod—the tip of the blade, the thumb and the first joint of the forefinger all contact the workpiece. This gives stability and control to the carving action.

I try to keep my thumb and forefinger in contact with the knife handle at all times rather than stretching out my thumb and using it as a lever, as one would when whittling with a jackknife. But the middle finger, ring finger and little finger are the ones that really grip the handle as you pull.

For a right-hander, the knife blade is always tilted to the right. The basic angle between the side of the knife and the wood surface is about 65°. I raise the angle closer to vertical at the beginning and the end of a tapering cut. And I flatten the angle slightly—to, say, 55° or 45°—when I'm carving a wide cut to prevent the carving from becoming too deep, which is especially important in harder woods. The tendency of most new carvers is to stand the knife up too much, resulting in too deep and difficult a cut.





## THE DESIGN

I begin any design by sketching ideas on large sheets of drawing paper. I sketch fairly quickly using a soft pencil, not worrying about perfecting the drawing. When I'm satisfied with the design, I trace it onto vellum or tracing paper. This is a chance to refine the design, fairing the curves and copying single lines where the initial sketch has multiple ones. I tape the tracing to the workpiece, which I've handplaned smooth in preparation for carving. I slide graphite paper beneath the tracing and

then go over all of the pencil lines to transfer the image to the workpiece.

I find chip carving to be an excellent medium for suggesting the flow and movement of natural forms. In my designs I try to emulate the example of the master brush painters of Japan and China, who create the suggestion of shape and movement with only a few lines. I have found I don't have to cover every inch of the board or supply every detail—I can allow the eye of the viewer to complete the image.

## Getting to the point

I keep my carving knives razor sharp using two small ceramic sharpening stones: a medium and a super fine. Made of a very hard synthetic material, these stones stay perfectly



flat. Softer stones will dish out with use, resulting in a curved cutting edge on the knife. Ceramic stones need no lubricant and are very portable.

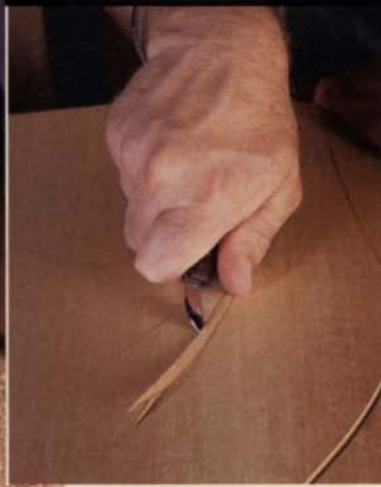
A chip-carving knife comes from the factory with a cutting angle of around 25°. The first thing I do is change this to 10°, which reduces drag in the wood and increases the maneuverability of the knife. Set a dime beneath the back edge of the blade to attain approximately the 10° angle. I use the medium stone to take down the bevel, then use the super-fine stone to hone the bevel, polishing and refining the surface. Sharpening is complete when the polished bevels meet and the burr has been honed away. Hold the blade under a bright lamp and look at the cutting edge, turning it in the light. If it is truly sharp, it will reflect no light off the very edge. A glint of light indicates that more honing is required.

I don't dread sharpening. I use it as a way to begin focusing on my carving. Not only does it prepare the knives for use, but it also sharpens my mind and prepares me for the work ahead. —C.V.S.



## MAKING THE CUTS

I use variations on one basic cut (see photos 1 to 3 below) to do nearly all of my chip carving. I focus on the pencil line just ahead of the blade to ensure a smooth line, but I don't always follow the line precisely. In the right wood, a sharp knife tracks pre-



**2 Return journey.** Spin the workpiece end for end to cut the second side of the chip instead of trying to cut with the knife tilted to the left. A carpet scrap beneath the workpiece acts like a lazy Susan while protecting the work from grit on the bench. Apply enough knife pressure to free the chip in one pass.



**3 Releasing the chip.** Raise the handle of the knife at the end of the cut and tilt the blade up toward 90°. Gradually diminish downward pressure until only the tip of the blade is in the wood.

**1 The fundamental cut.** The basic chip-carving cut is made with the knife tilted to the right (for a right-hander). The stroke is always toward you. Use your whole arm to draw the blade along the cut rather than leveraging with your thumb.

## FINISHING OFF A CHIP-CARVED SURFACE

I prefer to finish a carved panel with shellac. With the carving complete, I lightly sand away any remaining graphite lines with 320- and 400-grit sandpaper wrapped around a cork-faced block. I use a small brush to apply thin shellac to the walls of the carving and a cloth pad, called a fad in French polishing, used with overlapping strokes for the panel surface. I build up the shellac with several coats until the panel has the sheen I'm after, burnishing the carved areas with a stiff toothbrush between coats and using 0000 steel wool to even out the uncarved surface of the panel. Once the finish is dry and burnished, I apply beeswax to the panel surface and to the carving. In the carved areas, I use one toothbrush to apply the wax and another to buff it out.



dictably and can carve a beautiful fair curve, cleanly slicing through the wood fibers. Tracking can get difficult when the line of cut is parallel with the grain. I avoid laying out cuts along the grain, and where curving lines are briefly aligned with the

grain, I briefly slip the blade most of the way out of the cut while continuing forward progress. Slipping the blade increases control and keeps the blade from taking off. In harder woods, the blade is less prone to take off along the grain, but every

cut takes more energy. When working the hardest woods, I often remove a small chip well inside the pencil line and then widen the cut in two or three passes. Or I might clamp the workpiece and use my left hand to help pull the knife along.



**Clean up after yourself.** If the two passes don't meet in the valley of a cut, place the side of the blade on the wall of the cut and carefully sever the remaining fibers. Avoid cutting too deep, or you'll lose the crisp line in the valley.



**Stop cut.** When two cuts share a common ridge, use a stop cut to keep the ridge from crumbling. After removing the chip from the first cut, use a plunging action to make a short cut parallel with the edge of the ridge. Then cut the rest of the second chip. Here, as elsewhere, always try to work away from an area that has already been carved.



**Jump cut.** To create the impression that one element passes behind another, the lines of the background element are broken where they cross the foreground element. To make the illusion convincing, cut the two parts of a line in one motion so they line up. Use stop cuts (left) on each side of the element in the foreground.



**Choke up for a delicate cut.** Use your knuckle and thumb as a fulcrum and raise the knife handle to pivot the blade into the work, making a short, decorative plunge cut.



## GOOD WOODS FOR CARVING

Here are some things to consider when selecting wood for chip carving: A wood should be soft enough to carve with hand pressure; have close, fine grain to hold detail; and have mild grain patterns that won't be distracting. Any color is fine, but a light-colored wood will emphasize the shadows that carvings cast. I often compromise on one of these criteria. I sometimes carve European pear, for instance, which is quite hard but has tight, creamy grain and holds detail beautifully. —C.V.S.



# Better Batteries for Cordless Tools

Nickel-metal-hydride batteries pack a lot of power, keep a charge longer than nickel-cadmium batteries and don't have to be recycled

BY DENNIS PRESTON

**M**ore power! More power! More power!" The mantra of TV's *Home Improvement* tool junkie Tim Taylor is shared by cordless-tool users and manufacturers alike. That's why you will soon see cordless tools equipped with a nickel-metal-hydride (Ni-MH) battery pack instead of the familiar nickel-cadmium (Ni-Cd) pack. Continuous improvement of Ni-Cd batteries, the driving force in cordless tools, has fueled the inexorable push for more power. Over the years, Ni-Cd batteries have gotten better—higher output, longer run time and faster recharging. However, after two decades as the industry's prime mover, Ni-Cd battery technology may be topping out while the demand for more power continues.

Initially, Ni-Cd batteries delivered 1.0 amp-hour, the amount of electrical current

that can be delivered in a given period of time. They now produce about 2.0 amp-hours—double those first used in power tools in the early 1980s. Ni-Cd batteries will probably max out at 2.4 amp-hours. The power-tool industry is looking at 3.0 amp-hours as the next big step.

## High energy density: the holy grail of battery design

Cordless power-tool users want drills and saws that deliver a lot of power for a long period of time between charges. To meet this demand, manufacturers continue to research and develop batteries with high energy density, that is, batteries with more power in smaller, lighter-weight packages.

In the past, cordless-tool manufacturers simply raised the voltage

**Packed with batteries.** This 14.4-volt pack contains 12 individual 1.2-volt batteries. Putting more batteries into the pack boosts the total voltage, but there's a limit before the pack gets too bulky and heavy.





**Smart chargers.** Universal chargers will handle both the new nickel-metal-hydrate batteries and the old nickel-cadmium batteries.



to quench the power thirst because upping the voltage is the easiest part of the energy equation to tinker with. A single Ni-Cd battery (or cell) produces only 1.2 volts, so individual batteries are ganged together in series to produce a higher overall output. Six batteries were used in the battery packs of the old, anemic 7.2-volt drills. Eight batteries boosted the output to 9.6 volts, resulting in a tool that actually did some work. Twelve batteries power the 14.4-volt tools (see the bottom photo on the facing page). At some point, though, adding batteries just makes a battery pack, and thus the tool, too heavy and bulky, a common complaint with the current, hefty 18-volt drills.

Another problem is disposal of exhausted batteries from all of those cordless tools. The U.S. government has listed cadmium as a hazardous waste requiring proper disposal (see the related story at right). While handling the battery during use or at the time of disposal poses no problem, once in a landfill, the battery housing deteriorates, releasing the cadmium to leach into the groundwater. If the expired battery is incinerated, fine particles of cadmium are released into the air or collected in the ash. European and Scandinavian countries are making a strong push toward green technology, and eliminating cadmium is high on their agendas. Tool manufacturers, wanting to be part of these markets, are having to respond with batteries containing no cadmium, mercury or lead.

### Ni-MH batteries power consumer electronics

Power-tool manufacturers are looking to Ni-MH battery technology as the next generation of portable power. Ni-MH batteries have a higher energy density than Ni-Cd batteries, and because they do not contain cadmium, mercury or lead, Ni-MH batteries don't need to be recycled. The technology is not new. If you recently purchased a

laptop computer, video recorder or cell phone, chances are it is already equipped with Ni-MH batteries.

Power tools, however, demand more from batteries than home electronic components do. Initially, Ni-MH batteries did not provide acceptable performance for the high current drain and rough service expected for power tools. Recent improvements solved those problems. Like a Ni-Cd battery, the Ni-MH battery produces 1.2 volts for the same size and weight. The difference is that the Ni-MH battery delivers 2.2 amp-hours, a 10% boost in power over current Ni-Cd batteries. Power tools with 3.0 amp-hour batteries should be available by spring of 1999.

### You won't have to replace all of your power tools

Manufacturers have no plans to phase out Ni-Cd batteries, and, in fact, they continue to try to squeeze more power out of them. The new Ni-MH batteries will work with your older power tools because, thankfully, the new batteries are being packaged to fit in the old battery-pack configuration. With Ni-MH batteries, the only difference you'll notice about your cordless tool is longer run time between charging. The downside: A new Ni-MH battery will cost about 20% more than an equivalent Ni-Cd battery, and you will need a new charger. Manufacturers will be offering chargers that are capable of handling either Ni-MH or Ni-Cd batteries. □

*Dennis Preston is a woodworker, engineer and writer living in Brookfield, Conn.*

## Recycling nickel-cadmium batteries

Keeping Ni-Cd batteries out of the solid waste stream is the mission of the Rechargeable Battery Recycling Corp. (RBC). The RBC is a nonprofit organization founded in 1994 to educate the public about the benefits of recycling. To promote recycling, the RBC has launched a nationwide campaign, "Charge Up to Recycle!," featuring Richard Karn, Al in TV's *Home Improvement*, as the spokesman. Stores taking part in this campaign will display collection boxes for spent Ni-Cd batteries (see the photo below). To locate a participating store near you, call (800) 8-BATTERY, or visit the RBC web site at [www.rbc.com](http://www.rbc.com). —D.P.



# Frame-and-Panel Bed

Design rests on faceted legs with compound curves

BY DAVID FAY

**M**y favorite designs have come to me unexpectedly, in a flash of an idea, far away from the drafting table. The ensuing challenge to develop that vision into a finished product requires a lot of time spent refining what may seem like small details.

I begin with a sketch, nothing fancy or beautiful. The back of an envelope or napkin will do. Drawing this way frees me from the constraints of trying to perfect the piece; all I'm after is getting the inspiration down on paper.

If the piece is a commission, the next step is listening to the customer. That often influences the dimensions of a project. For this bed, the customer wanted a queen-sized frame that could accommodate a fu-

ton mattress or a standard box-spring and mattress set. As a result, I had to make the bed rails wide enough to accommodate an adjustable inner rail.

A dimensioned drawing comes next. Although an accurate drawing can help me visualize a piece, this two-dimensional tool has limitations. That's why I build a full-scale model of any tricky parts to work out design and construction needs and to perfect technical skills.

The model allows me to evaluate how the details relate to the rest of the design. For example, I used a model to determine the proportions of the posts and rails. I experimented with the reveal at various widths. A  $\frac{7}{8}$ -in. reveal looked chunky, and a  $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. reveal looked skinny. But when I



**A bed made in three types of wood.** The frame-work, including the posts, is made of cherry. The panels are resawn, slip-matched pear wood. Accent strips along the inside of the frames and along the bottoms of the bed rails are granadillo.

## SHAPING THE BEDPOSTS

Establish the outside curve ...



**Lay out the bedposts.** The six-sided shape is drawn on the end grain first, then the lines are carried over onto the faces.

tried a  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. reveal, it looked right. I also used the model to determine the size of the granadillo reveal as it related to the panel and posts and rails. Using the model, I was able to refine subtle details and their proportions. There's nothing scientific here, no golden rules. It's a matter of trial and error and trusting your instincts.

### Cut the joinery, then begin shaping

The bedposts are thick at the top and get skinnier near the floor. As the thickness changes, the widths of the two faces also change. But one thing stays constant: the width of the outside edge or reveal.

All of the joints that involve the bedposts are machined while the stock is still square. These joints include the tenons for the upper and lower rails of the headboard/footboard, the mortises in the bedposts, the tenons on the long rails (see the story on p. 78 to learn how to make the hidden post-to-lower-rail joints) and the grooves for the panels.

Next, lay out each post's six-sided profile on the end grain (see the left photo above). Then connect the lines from end to end along the outside of the post—use a black, thin-line pen, which is easier to see than a pencil line.

The posts have three straight, flat sides (inside edge and the two adjoining sides), two curvy sides (on each side of the outside edge) where the plane twists and a curved, tapered side (the outside edge



**Cut the outside curve first.** Bandsaw close to the line.



**Attach the template to the post.** Clean up using a router and pattern-cutting bit.

### ... and grind the facets



**Shape the facets with an angle grinder.** A 24-grit sanding disc removes material quickly. Use long, fluid motions and take light passes.

with the  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. reveal). Whenever possible, I make templates to lay out and cut curved parts (see the story on p. 77). I use the templates to trace layout marks, and then, after bandsawing parts to rough dimensions, I attach the templates to the stock and use them with a pattern-cutting bit.

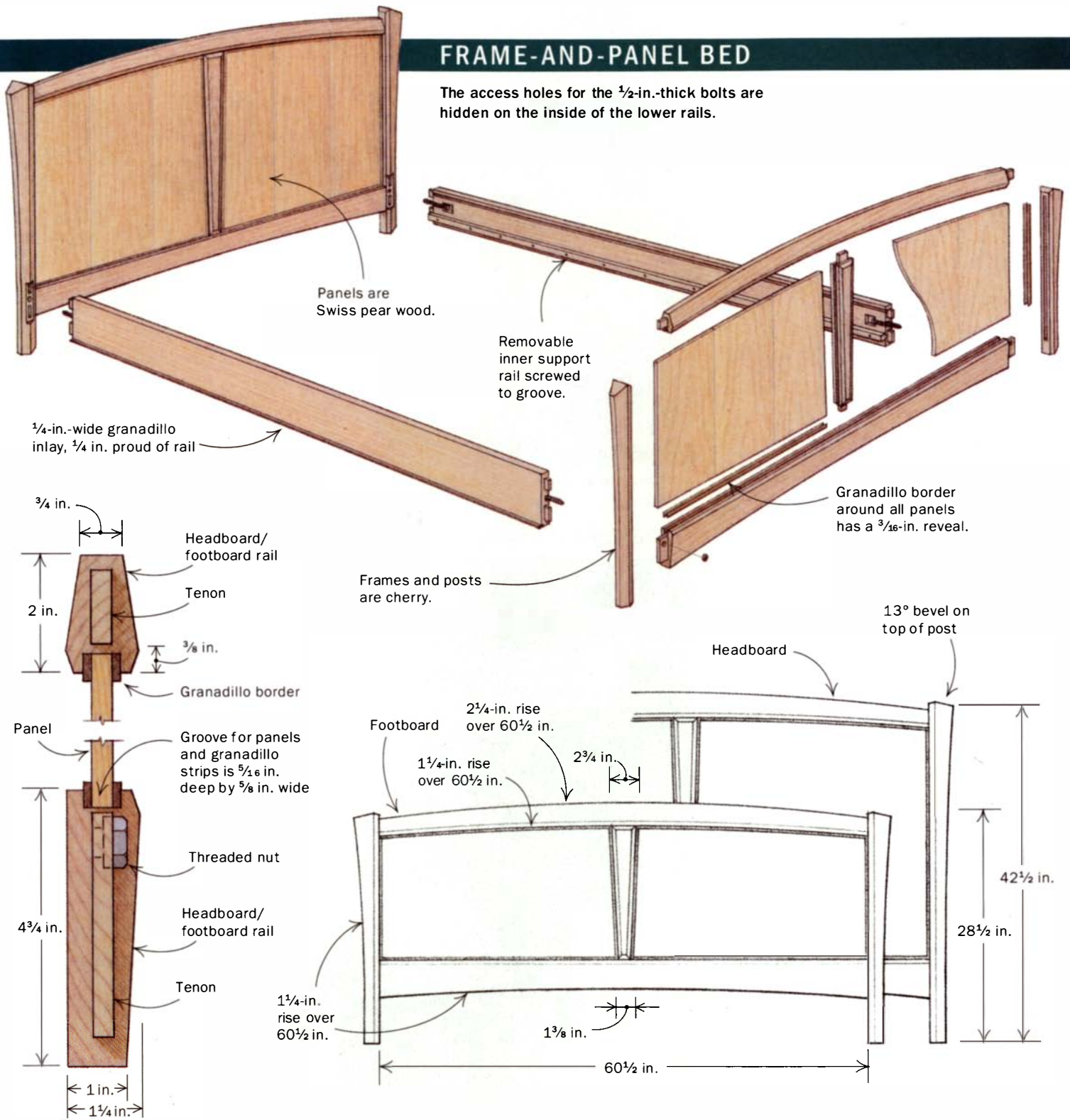
Mark the outside facet of each post using a template and bandsaw the waste (see the

middle photo above). Fair the curve by attaching the same template and trimming the post with a pattern-cutting bit, as shown in the right photo above (screw the template to the waste portions of the post). Remove the template and draw the last set of layout lines on the outside face.

Use a router with a 45° bearing-guided bit to remove as much stock as possible

# FRAME-AND-PANEL BED

The access holes for the 1/2-in.-thick bolts are hidden on the inside of the lower rails.



from the corners of the post. Next, use an angle grinder with a 24-grit sanding disc to rough in the shape (see the bottom photo on p. 75) on the two facets of each post that curve and twist. Use long, fluid motions with this tool and don't stop in midcut. Otherwise, you end up with flat spots that break up the curve. With a light touch, you can grind smoothly and get very close to the layout lines. It takes some practice to

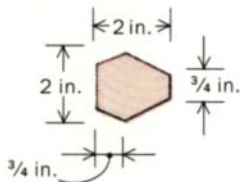
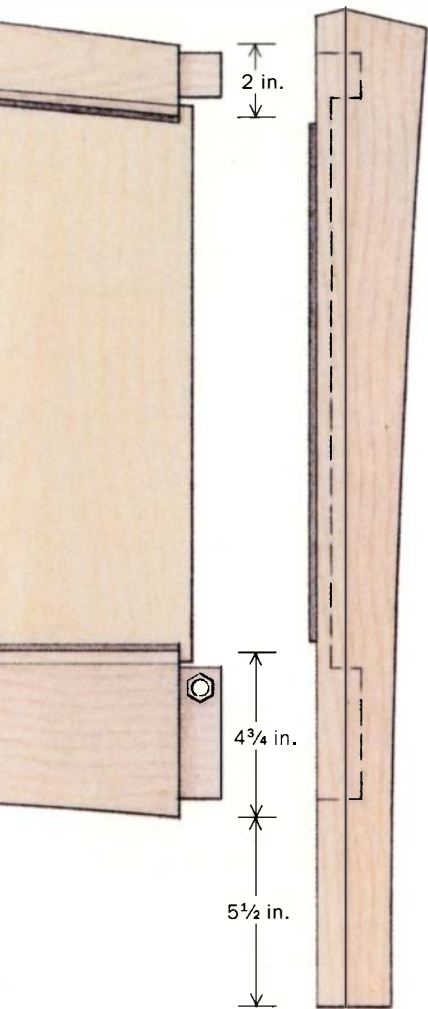
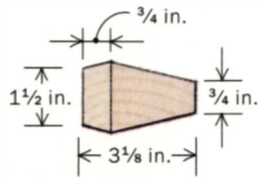
get a feel for shaping with a grinder, and I fine-tuned my skills using scrap stock.

**Clean up the post**—A No. 50 Nicholson pattern-maker's rasp is used to fine-tune the shape. A rasp is small enough that you can follow the twist on each post.

To find high and low spots left by the grinder, draw diagonal pencil lines across the faces of each post. The rasp works best

cutting in short, diagonal strokes. When the deep scratches left by the 24-grit disc are gone and the curves of the posts look fair, move on to a hand scraper, paying close attention to the layout lines. Hold the post up to a light to see how it's coming along. When you run into domed sections, remove material using long, fluid motions.

Clean up further using a small sanding block. I prefer to use a small piece of medi-



um-density fiberboard (MDF) with cork glued onto the face. It's small enough (approximately 1 in. by 1 1/2 in.) to maneuver along the changing curves of the post. A large sanding block tends to straighten the curves instead of following them.

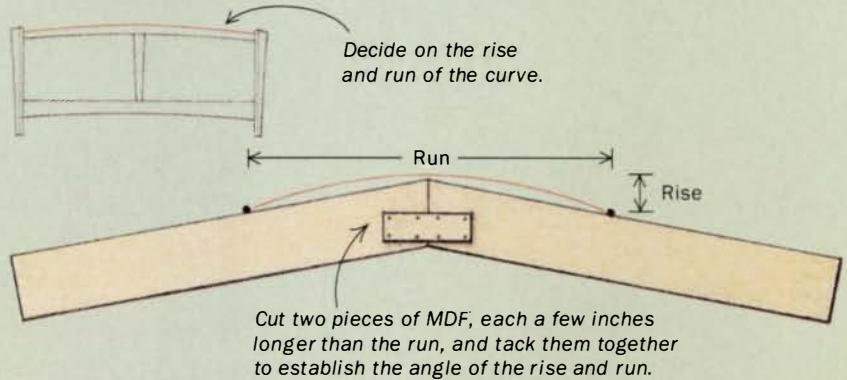
Start with 180-grit sandpaper and follow up with 220 grit. If you find rasp marks on the surface, go back to the scraper, which works faster than sandpaper. Finally, use a



## Routing curved templates

You don't have to figure out the radius of a curve as long as you know the rise and run. With this method, you can make perfect templates for curved work, especially wide-radius curves. Because the method involves a trapped cut, there is some danger that the router might want to find its own path, so be prepared to turn the tool off immediately if it starts getting away from you.—D.F.

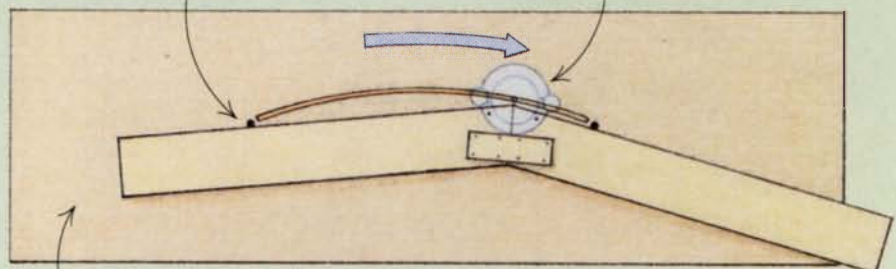
### Make the jig



### Cut the template

Place two nails or round shelf pins onto the template stock at a distance equal to the length of the template plus the diameter of the router bit.

Attach a plunge router (equipped with a 1/2-in. straight bit and 3/8-in. template guide) to the jig, orienting it so that the bit just touches the intersection.



Use 1/2-in. MDF for the template stock. Be sure it's long enough to support both wings of the jig.

Place a large sheet of scrap below the template stock to avoid cutting the workbench.

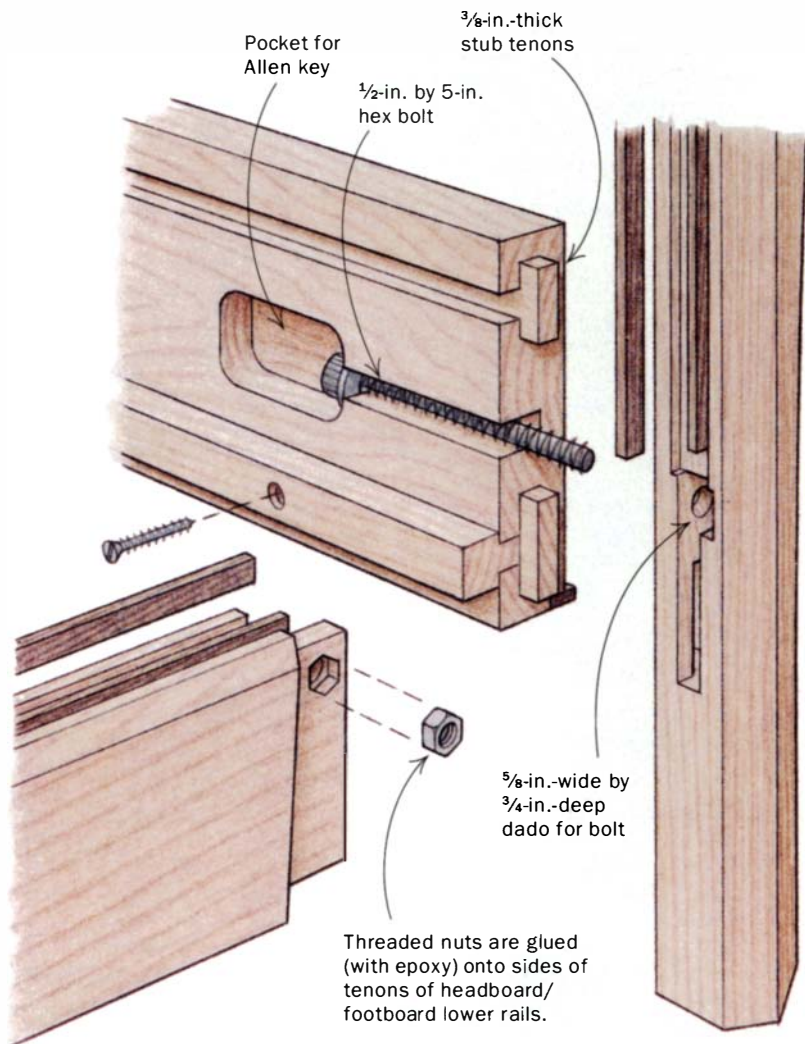
**Set the jig down and push it up against the pins. Turn the router on, plunge in about 1/8 in. and push the jig to the right, keeping it in contact with the pins. Repeat, taking deeper cuts until you cut through the template stock. Don't let the router bit contact the pins. Finish cutting out the template on a bandsaw.**



## Hidden bed-rail-to-post connection

Decorative caps made to cover bolt holes in bedposts work fine, especially when used on traditional-looking furniture. But I didn't want a cap to detract from the fluid shape of the posts of this bed. A friend, Mike Laine, showed me how to get a strong joint using mortise and tenons coupled with captured nuts and bolts. The joint is secure and leaves no trace of its mechanics once the bed has been assembled and a mattress or futon installed.

Refer to the drawing on p. 76 for the size and location of the joinery, which is cut while the stock is still square. Clamp and dry-fit the posts to the lower rails of the headboard and footboard, one at a time. Then, on the drill press, align a drill bit with the already drilled bolt hole in the post and drill through the tenon of the rail, being careful not to drill too deeply.



Remove the lower rail and thread the bolt through the hole and into the nut. Scribe the outline of the nut onto the tenon. The mortise for the nut captures only half its thickness; any more would weaken the tenon. To make room for the protruding half of the nut, enlarge the mortise in the bedpost around the nut with a small router and finish up with a chisel.

The bolt is housed in a dado cut into the lower rails, centered between the two tenons. Mortise around the head to give you enough clearance to reach in with a hex wrench and cinch everything down. Check the joints for fit, then epoxy the nuts in place, being careful not to get any glue on the threads.—D.F.

small piece of folded 220-grit paper and hand-sand the surface with the grain. Hand-sanding is important because your fingers will sense any high or low spots. Lastly, break all of the edges with a rigid sanding block and 220-grit paper, just enough to make the edges inviting to touch yet still crisp to the eye.

Cut the top of each post on the chopsaw, then sand it smooth with a rigid (no cork) sanding block, which will bring out the figure of the end grain.

## Headboard and footboard also have six-sided parts

The upper and lower rails for the headboard and footboard are curved and have six sides to match the posts (see the drawings on p. 76). The procedure for building the headboard and footboard is similar to the posts. First, cut the joints while the stock is still square. (The only exceptions are the center stiles. Take their measurements off the frames of the headboard and footboard after dry-fitting them. Cut the mortises for the center stiles by hand.) Then mark the six-sided profiles on the shoulders of all of the tenons.

As you did with the posts, make a template to help lay out and cut the curves of the headboard and footboard rails. Mark the curves using the template, then rough-cut the parts on the bandsaw. Finish up by attaching the template to the stock and use a pattern-cutting bit and router. Before shaping the facets of the rails, cut the slots for the accent strips and panels using a router with a slot-cutting bit.

The same methods and tools used on the posts are used to mark, cut and shape the rails. The center divider is cut like the rails; the tenons are cut first on the tablesaw. Then the tapered angles are cut; the bevels are shaped with a grinder.

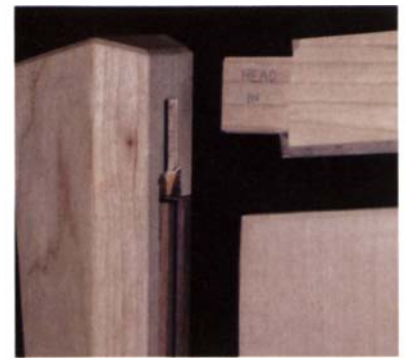
## A granadillo border separates frame from panel

The panels in this bed are made of Swiss pear wood, and the frame, posts and rails are made of cherry. Although in time the cherry will darken more than the pear wood, the contrast in color between them, after milling, is subtle. To separate the two woods visually, the frame is inlaid with strips of granadillo, a deep, rich, purple-brown wood. The strips of granadillo surround each panel. A strip of granadillo is also inlaid along the bottom edge of the bed's rails.

## INLAY ADDS CONTRAST



**Degree of separation.** Granadillo provides contrast and separation between the similarly toned cherry and pear wood.



**Before the joint is assembled.** The granadillo strips are glued into the grooves for the panels using a battery of small spring clamps.

Mill the granadillo strips wide and long. (Rip all of the granadillo straight; the strips will bend to conform to the curve of the rails.) Then clamp up the rails and stiles and take your measurements for the granadillo. Cut the strips to size, then glue them in place using lots of spring clamps. Where the strips intersect, use a butt joint.

Take measurements for the panels while

the headboard and footboard are clamped together. Then transfer these measurements onto 1/4-in.-thick particleboard or plywood and cut these out on the band-saw. Because of the number of curves, there's usually a bit of tweaking to get everything right. Once you have a good fit, use the 1/4-in.-thick panels as templates for the real thing.

The pear-wood panels are resawn and slip-matched. Leave about 1/8 in. of extra space for every 12 in. of panel to allow for expansion and contraction of the wood. When gluing up the frame, put a dab of glue in the center of each rail's groove to keep the panel centered.

This bed frame is compatible with a futon or a box-spring and mattress set. To allow for that, cut two dados—one high, one low—on each long rail. For the futon, two removable inner rails are screwed to the upper grooves. (You'll also need slats to support the futon.) For use with a traditional mattress set, the inner rails are attached to the lower groove, and the box spring rests on the inner rails.

### Finish with hand-rubbed oil

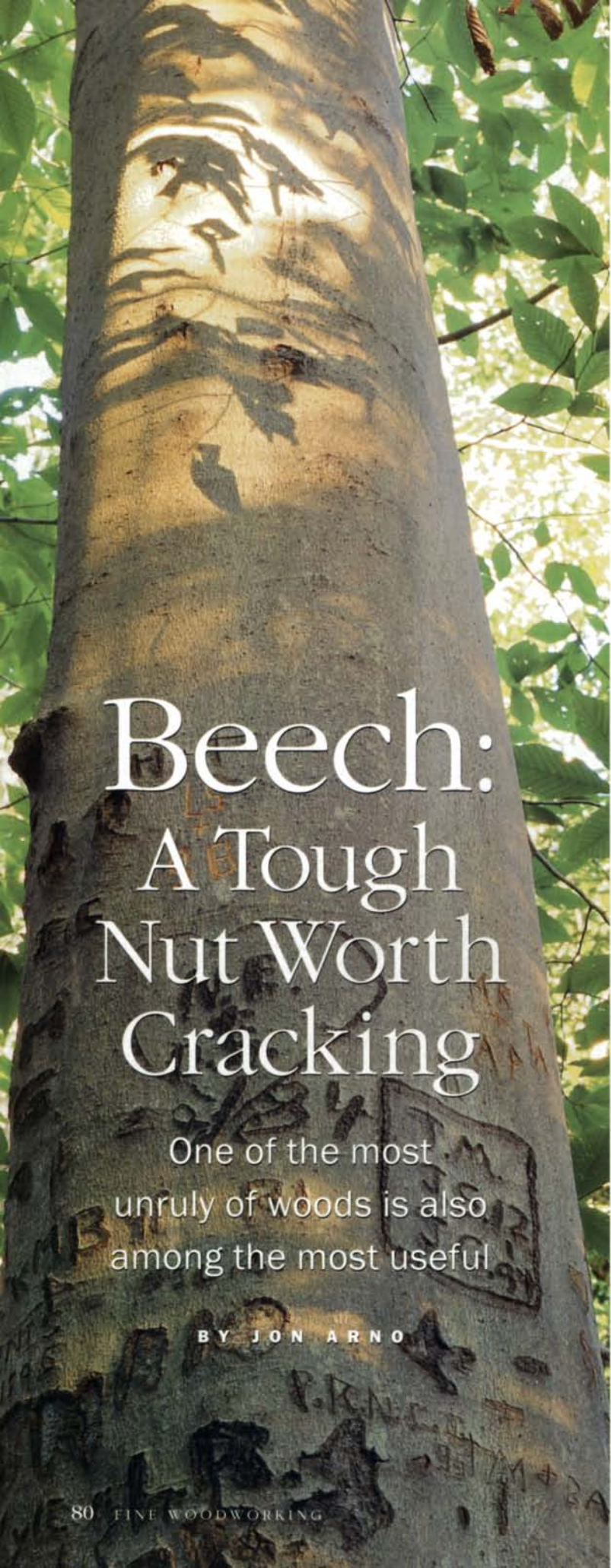
I used a low-gloss tung oil to finish the bed, applying three coats over three days. When applying the first coat, the wood will be thirsty and absorb a lot of finish. Apply a liberal amount of oil to one section at a time, such as one panel. Rub off the excess after a couple of minutes and move on to another section. After a day, go over the entire piece with a green 3M scrub pad, lightly rubbing off raised grain and built-up oil.

On the second day, apply a thin coat of oil, again working in small sections, and wipe with a clean cloth after a few minutes. For a splotch-free finish, remove the excess before it begins to dry and get gummy. On the third day, apply a final coat, the same way as the second, but use even less oil. When using oil, less is better. □



**Movable inner rail accommodates two types of mattresses.** Placed in the lower groove, the rail is positioned for a box-spring and mattress set. In the upper slot, the rail accepts a futon (using slats for support).

David Fay builds custom furniture in Oakland, Calif.



# Beech: A Tough Nut Worth Cracking

One of the most  
unruly of woods is also  
among the most useful

BY JON ARNO

The joy of working with beech lies in the game the wood presents—the tantalizing challenge of how to tap its enticing qualities while avoiding its devastating shortcomings.

Beech's assets are many. Close grained, it machines and turns well with minimal tearout, and it takes finish beautifully. Its hardness and ability to absorb shock make it the wood of choice for many workbenches, tool handles and mallets. Perhaps beech's greatest attribute is the ease with which it can be steam-bent. Beech has astonishing plasticity when exposed to heat and moisture. Once steamed, it will conform to jigs that demand surprisingly tight bends without failing, and once dry, it experiences relatively little rebound.

But then there is the evil side of beech: It is extremely unstable. An average plank of beech can shrink 17.2% on its way from green to oven dry, one of the highest rates of shrinkage among domestic hardwoods. Beech's tendency to swell and shrink with changes in humidity is nastily compounded by the enormous differential between the wood's radial and tangential shrinkage. This differential makes beech one of the most difficult woods to season without warping and to keep flat once it is dry. Most other woods with comparable shrinkage factors are rendered useless by their propensity to check and split. Fortunately, beech is spared this fate by its abundant medullary rays, which tend to hold it together. One final frailty of beech is its poor durability when exposed to the elements.

## Best uses of beech

Beech is a high-contrast species—one with a great gulf between its outstanding virtues as one of our most workable woods and its horrendous shortcomings in terms of stability and durability.

Beech's deficiencies haven't kept it from attaining a place among the most useful of

**Bark parchment.** Because beech is tight grained and good for holding detail, slabs of it were once used as writing tablets; centuries later, the same virtues led early printers to use type cut from beech. But the most prevalent link between writing and the beech tree must be the one that occurs on the bark at the point of a penknife.





**Grand foliage.** Notable for its skin-smooth gray bark and powerful trunk, American beech, *Fagus grandifolia*, attains a magnificent shape when planted in the open. Its large, spreading branches carry acres of small, lance-shaped leaves.



**Beech bends beautifully.** A Thonet chair made in the 1860s illustrates the pliability and durability of steam-bent beech. By utilizing only small-diameter parts, the chair also minimizes the effects of beech's excessive seasonal movement.



**For planes and benches, beech is best.** Beech is long wearing, dense, shock resistant and abundant, qualities that have made it the enduring wood of choice for the majority of wooden planes and workbenches.

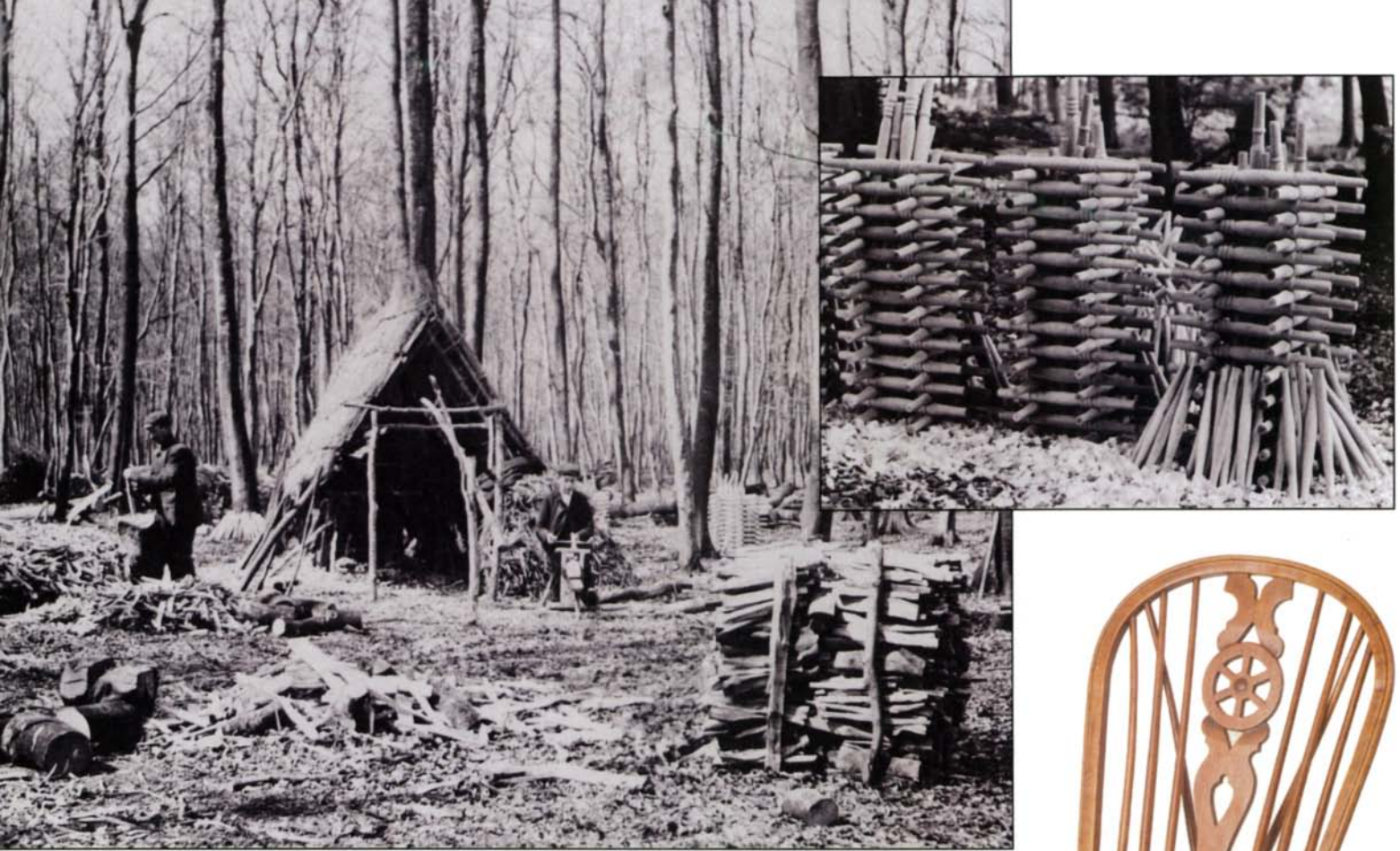
woods. And we can learn how best to employ beech by studying how it has been used by woodworkers of the past.

In period furniture, beech is seldom seen as the primary wood in tables or case goods, where its lack of stability would be devastating. And in exterior applications, either it was seldom used or has not survived. However, it is found in abundance as turning stock, as glue blocks in the framing of upholstered furniture and as bentwood parts in chairs, where it is excellent both for steam-bending and bent lamination. Thomas Chippendale, although addicted to mahogany in fashioning the rococo style of furniture for which we know him best, used beech in special applications, for fretwork panels in his Oriental styles and as core stock for primitive “plywood” slats, where resistance to splitting was a key feature.

Fortunes have been made on the bending capacity of beech. The Thonet chair company (see the photos at left) built its factories in the beech forests of Austria and Eastern Europe and then built an international bentwood chair-manufacturing empire on the strength and pliability of the wood the company harvested there.

Beech has been used extensively for turned or shaped objects, especially one-piece items—such as tool handles, wooden knobs and pulls—that are free to deform a bit without causing functional problems. Beech has also played a major role in the production of mundane yet essential things such as clothespins, kitchen utensils and scrub-brush backs. Its use in food containers and tight cooperage peaked in the late 19th century, but even today one major American brewery touts the contribution to flavor made by the beech-wood vats used to age its beer. Beech's low tannin content apparently puts a mellow finish on the brew. That low tannin content is also important to woodworkers: On the positive side, the low tannin content makes beech less likely to corrode iron fasteners and hardware; on the negative side, low tannin content contributes to beech's poor durability in the weather.

Perhaps the most ingenious exploitation of beech can be seen in early examples of Windsor chairs. Thousands of these chairs were

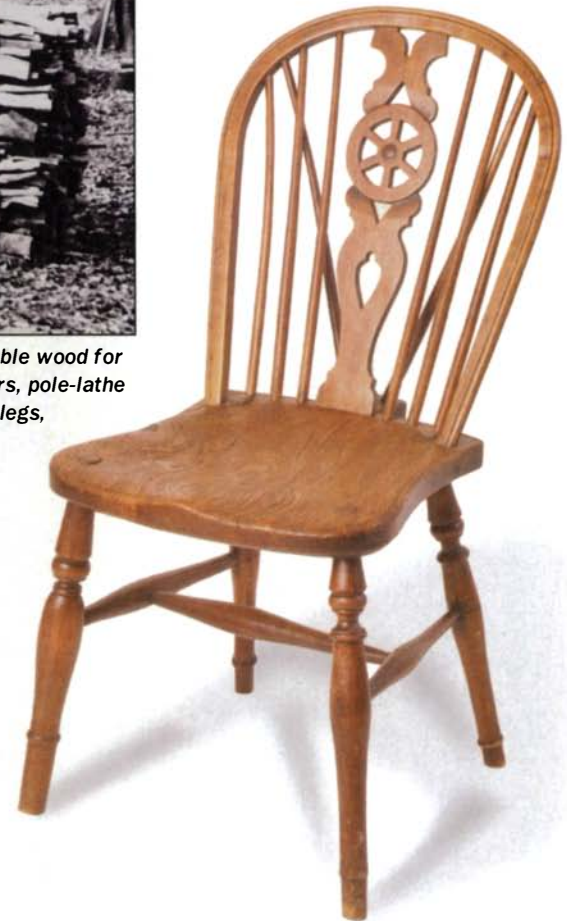


**Wisdom of the Windsor makers.** Windsor chair makers, savvy at selecting the most suitable wood for each part of a chair, chose beech for turned parts. At the height of the popularity of Windsors, pole-lathe turners in Buckinghamshire, England, bivouacked in the beech woods and turned stacks of legs, stretchers and spindles for the many chair makers in High Wycombe (inset). A wheel in the back splat and a fan tail supporting angled spindles at the back of the seat typify the High Wycombe Windsor style (right).

churned out in the 1800s by bodgers who worked literally out in the forests around High Wycombe, about 25 miles northwest of London, where beech was once plentiful. The fine texture and diffuse-porous anatomy of beech made it easy to turn into spindles on primitive lathes. In this role, even the wood's extreme tendency to shrink and swell proved to be an advantage, because the spindles could be thoroughly seasoned and then tapped into the more moist, steam-bent backs and armrests. The spindles swelled while the backs and armrests shrank, providing extremely tight joints without the need for adhesives. While many of these rugged and inexpensive chairs were sold unfinished and referred to as "white Wycombes," the wood's tight-grained, smooth surface made paint finishes easy to apply and equally popular.

One application that has me somewhat puzzled is the prevalent use of beech in making wooden plane bodies. Before the advent of the modern router, a set of molding planes was a necessity in cabinetmaking and finish carpentry. Possession of such a set was a source of pride to the accomplished 19th-century woodworker, and these pretty, little beech-bodied planes were often themselves works of art. Beech's workability and formidable resistance to wear make it a plausible candidate in this role, but one would think its notorious instability would pose a serious negative.

Using small parts is key to managing the movement in a wood like beech. A good example of this approach is seen in flooring.



The machinability and resistance to wear that make beech a superior wood for plane bodies also make it suitable for flooring. But when used as flooring, beech requires a design that minimizes the risks inherent in its high shrinkage and instability. The answer is parquet squares, small pieces where the joinery allows the wood to move in almost unnoticeable increments. To me, examples of ingenuity such as this showcase the essence of beech and its redeeming grace.

It is no coincidence that the words beech and book stem from the same Sanskrit origin. Not only does the utility of beech wind through history, but the wood is also an inseparable part of history's recording. Norse tribes used beech bark as crude writing pa-

per, and more indelible records called runes were sometimes carved in slabs of beech. And in the 15th century, Gutenberg's first bible was printed using type carved in beech blocks.

### Beech is oak's mellow cousin

Although it boasts only 10 species worldwide, beech (genus *Fagus*) lends its name to the ancient and enormous Fagaceae family, which also includes the mighty oaks (genus *Quercus*), with their more than 450 species. Beech is comparable in density to northern red oak, *Q. rubra*, and, like red oak, beech has heartwood with a warm, pinkish tan color that is especially attractive and seems to darken noticeably when varnish or even crystal-clear lacquer is applied. Beech's close relationship to the oaks is also betrayed by its abundant and clearly visible rays. Although the rays in beech are much smaller than those in white oak and even diminutive in comparison to those in red oak, they are exceptionally plentiful, dark and distinct and provide a sure way to identify the wood. While most of our oaks possess an extremely loud, ring-porous figure, beech is diffuse-porous and so mellow that it would be downright bland in appearance were it not for the rays. (In ring-porous woods, the larger, sap-carrying vessel cells are concentrated in the earlywood; in diffuse-porous woods, vessel cells are evenly distributed throughout the wood.)

Being diffuse-porous conveys to beech a number of benefits in terms of workability. Beech tends to hold details when shaped, and it turns with far less tearout than do the oaks. Also, being substantially finer textured than the oaks, beech requires no fillers to achieve a smooth finish. Although it is certainly not in a class with extremely fine-textured woods such as maple or even cherry in terms of ease of finishing, several coats of a heavy-bodied varnish will inundate its relatively modest porosity and can then be rubbed out with fine-grit abrasives to achieve a glass-smooth surface.

### Which way to the beech?

When the first Europeans arrived, America was rich with beech groves. Although there are still plenty of beech trees, most of the old, dark, gloomy groves are gone.

Only one species of beech, *F. grandifolia*, is native to North America, but it is divided into at least four relatively well-defined races—the gray beech that grows from Wisconsin to Nova Scotia; the red beech throughout most of Appalachia and the central Midwest; the white beech along the coastal plain from Louisiana to North Carolina; and the Mexican beech in the mountains north-west of Vera Cruz. Growing conditions have an impact on the working characteristics of these woods. The white beech of the

South grows faster and tends to be slightly softer and coarser textured than red or gray beech, while the latter two generally produce more attractive and darker rust-brown heartwood. All North American beech trees make slow progress in converting sapwood to heartwood, and even the best logs contain large quantities of rather drab creamy sapwood. The sapwood is often discolored by fun-

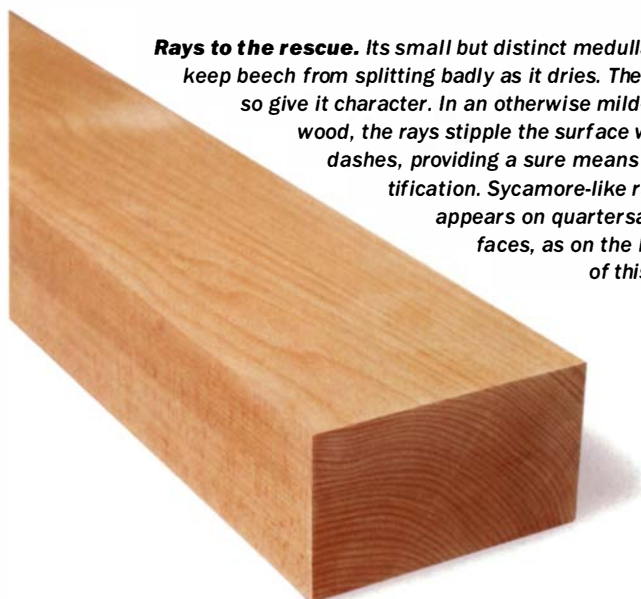


Drawing: Mark Sant'Angelo

gus, giving it a dirty gray hue. For all of these reasons, the appearance qualities of beech are highly variable, and there is no substitute for firsthand examination of the stock in selecting choice material for special projects.

If you buy a Swedish workbench or an Austrian bentwood chair, it will most likely be made of European beech, *F. sylvatica*. The European tree is a different species from our native beech, but there is hardly a lick of difference between the two. European beech also varies based on climate, with wood from Central Europe tending to be softer than that from England and Scandinavia.

Although mature stands of our American beech were virtually wiped out, beech is certainly not scarce today. The current U.S. reserve of beech sawtimber exceeds 21 billion bd. ft., making it about twice as plentiful as cherry. The problem experienced by many woodworkers in sourcing beech is that only a trickle of the overall harvest makes its way to the retail market in the form of lumber. High-grade stock tends to be absorbed by flooring manufacturers and other industrial users while the low-grade material is



**Rays to the rescue.** Its small but distinct medullary rays keep beech from splitting badly as it dries. The rays also give it character. In an otherwise mild-looking wood, the rays stipple the surface with tiny dashes, providing a sure means of identification. Sycamore-like ray fleck appears on quartersawn surfaces, as on the left side of this plank.

sponged up by crate and pallet producers. When it is available, however, beech is relatively inexpensive when compared with similar grades of other, more popular cabinetwoods.

### Don't dry this at home

Ordinarily, on other species with similar supply patterns, I'm a strong advocate of harvesting your own and air-drying it. Beech, however, is a noteworthy exception. The incredible drying stress this species experiences makes it one of the most difficult of our native woods to air-dry. If you can't find kiln-dried beech at a local hardwood retailer, perhaps the most sensible option is to visit the nearest sawmill with commercial kiln-drying capability and expertise. Although this sometimes means buying relatively large minimum quantities, it offers two important advantages. First, it allows the opportunity to examine the stock firsthand for color and figure. And second, it provides at least some assurance that in the hands of an expert kiln operator, a portion of this species' drying stress has been cooked out of the boards you buy. □

*Jon Arno is a frequent contributor to Fine Woodworking. He lives in Troy, Mich.*



# Dovetail Jig Review

Router jigs have their place, but don't expect them to duplicate hand-cut joints

BY GARY ROGOWSKI

**T**o the uninitiated, dovetail joints are intimidating. That's why dovetail jigs are so popular. Seems like every few years someone comes out with a new one. And lots of woodworkers buy them, hoping to become master joiners with the flick of a router switch. I imagine many of these jigs get tossed into a corner after a brief tussle. Most will cut snug-fitting joints. But some are difficult to set up, either because of poor design or sheer complexity. And if you run out of patience with these jigs, your joints will fit poorly.

True, making hand-cut dovetails takes skill, and unlike riding a bicycle, you do forget, or at least lose proficiency, if you don't do it regularly. Router jigs—a few of them, anyway—can simplify the task. But a router jig won't give you the flexibility and look of hand-cut dovetails. There's not a router bit out there capable of cutting the classic skinny pin hewn by a dovetail saw and chisel.

I'm no purist and realize that jigs have their place. Many jigs will allow you to cut dovetails faster than you could using hand tools. I tried eight commonly available jigs to see how they stacked up to

one another. They can be classified into three groups: Jigs that cut only half-blind dovetails; jigs that cut only through-dovetails; and combination jigs that, depending on the model, may cut half-blind, through-, sliding and variably spaced through-dovetails.

### Half-blind jigs cut both pins and tails at once

Half-blind dovetails are visible from one side (see the photo below). They're commonly used for drawer joinery when you don't want the end grain of the tails to show in the drawer front. Half-blind dovetail jigs all work in a similar fashion: A matching pair of pin and tail boards is cut simultaneously. Spacing is not variable.

Setup for each jig is the same: Mating pin and tail boards are both clamped in the jig at 90° to each other. The outside faces of the boards are placed down, or facing the jig. Locating pins, edge guides or stop bars offset the edges of each board so that the joint lines up when assembled. The jig's template is placed on the boards and secured. To cut the joint, use a router equipped with a template guide bushing and a dovetail bit. By changing the position of the edge guides, you can also cut dovetails onto drawer fronts with rabbets for overlay construction.

Getting a good fit with half-blind jigs depends on setting the bit's depth precisely through trial and error, which can be time-consuming. If you set the bit for too shallow a cut, the tails and pins will be too large. If the bit is set too deeply, the joint will be so tight that it won't fit together. To speed the setup, mark your depth settings on a scrap of wood.

**One bit cuts both pins and tails.** Half-blind jigs leave symmetrical rows of dovetails with rounded edges of pins, which won't show once the joint has been assembled. Some combination jigs also cut these joints.

**Porter-Cable 4112**—Assembling this Porter-Cable jig takes some time, but it's a fairly easy job because of the decent instructions. Each edge guide is attached with only a small screw and a lock knob (see the left photo at right). When the knob is loose, the edge guide can pivot, especially if you're prone to banging your boards into place on a jig.

The clamp bars are sheet metal, and while they hold fine when new, I imagine they'll get distorted over time. I own an old Stanley dovetail jig of similar design, and it now requires an extra clamp to hold stock securely. Because the lock knobs screw on, it takes time to lock and unlock boards, but the joints come out fine.

**Woodstock**—The Woodstock jig is easy to assemble out of the box, but after that, things go downhill. You need to do a ludicrous amount of math to set the finger, or slot, template properly, and adjusting the template is difficult. The placement of a vertical board is also difficult because the finger template isn't easily removed and stays in the way. This template can also deflect, causing the router base to bind on it when cutting, possibly the reason for the poor results I achieved using it. The jig also has too many lock knobs located too close together (see the far right photo), making

## HALF-BLIND DOVETAIL JIGS

Half-blind dovetail jigs all work the same way. A pair of adjoining boards, outside faces against the jig, are clamped at right angles to each other under the template. Both boards are cut in one pass.

The Woodstock jig is at left; the other is a Porter-Cable.



MODEL	WOODSTOCK (360-734-3482)	PORTER-CABLE (800-487-8665)
MAXIMUM WIDTH	12 in.	12 in.
EASE OF SETUP	Poor	Fair
MANUAL	Fair; fence-adjustment instructions read like a math lesson	Good; brief but clear
COST	\$70 (bit and template guide bushing included)	\$100 (bit and template guide bushing not included)
COMMENTS	Overly complicated to set up; awkward to use	Fine for occasional use



**Adjusting the Porter-Cable's edge guide.** To align joints, boards are offset to one another using edge guides. These guides are light duty; a board banged against a guide may knock it out of adjustment, requiring you to repeat the initial setup.



**Design makes it difficult to use the Woodstock jig.** Lock knobs spaced too close together make the Woodstock jig awkward to use.

it difficult to turn one without banging your fingers on another. Plus I have a little trouble trusting a jig whose instructions warn against overtightening plastic parts, lest they crack. The woodshop is not a place for the meek.

### Through-dovetail jigs cut pins and tails separately

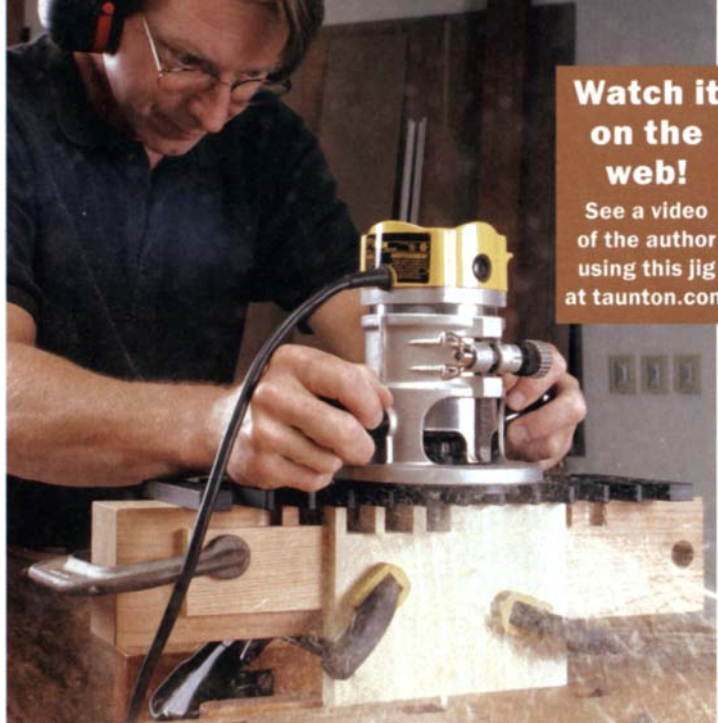
On through-dovetail jigs, stock is mounted vertically under the template, which has separate fingers and bits for cutting tails and pins. The template mounts onto a backer board whose placement determines the fit of the joint, unlike a half-blind jig whose bit depth determines the fit. On through-dovetail jigs, joints are cut using a bearing-guided bit. Because the pins are cut at an angle (using a straight bit), moving the backer board in or out will produce pins of different sizes. The bit depth determines only whether or not the joint comes out with flush ends.

**Keller Journeyman**—The Journeyman jig requires you to make a backer board, to which the phenolic-resin template is attached. Milling the backer board to the proper size and adjusting it are simple, taking about an hour. The 15-in.-wide Journeyman template has both the tail and pin fingers, so you mount only one backer board. (The large, heavy-duty jigs, made of anodized aluminum, come in three sizes: 16 in., 24 in. and 36 in. These jigs all use separate tail and pin templates, each requiring its own shop-made backer board. The aluminum jigs operate the same way as the Journeyman jig.)

The pin template has angled fingers, which are cut with a flush-trimming bit. If the backer board is set too far forward, the pins will be too small and the joint will be loose. If the board's set too far back, the pins will be too large to fit with the tails. Setting the backer board right is the key to this jig. But once set properly—and as long as you don't drop it on the shop floor—the jig is always ready to go and cuts perfect-fitting dovetails.

The Journeyman jig is easy to use (see the right photo above). First, mark the center on the tail board and center this line on one of the fingers of the tail template. Figuring out the bit depth is easy: Simply add the thickness of the template ( $\frac{1}{2}$  in.) to the thickness of the stock. It's a good idea to clamp a piece of wood to act as a stop so that the jig automatically indexes subsequent cuts. After routing the tails, place the pin board in a vise, lay the tail board on top and use the tails as a template to mark (use a knife or sharp pencil) the location for the pins. Then mate the pin board with the template, using the layout marks for registration. By using registration marks, you can also move the jig from side to side and handle stock wider than the jig. And you can also cut variably spaced through-dovetails simply by moving the jig over.

**Katie Jig**—The Katie Jig comes with two backer boards fitted to an aluminum extrusion, which serves as the track for the template's fingers (see the photo at right). The finger spacing can be adjusted.



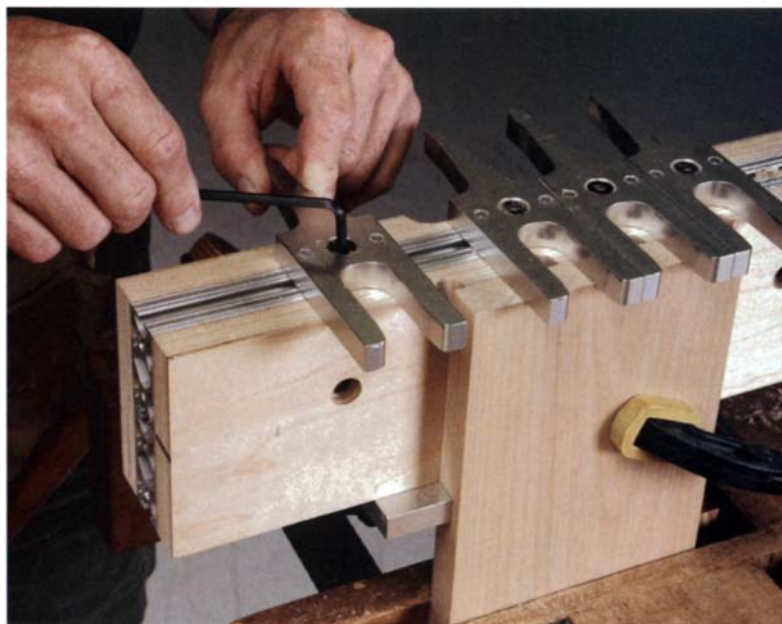
**Watch it on the web!**  
See a video of the author using this jig at [taunton.com](http://taunton.com)

**Cutting through-dovetails on the Keller Journeyman.** A stop block (left) is clamped to the backer board of the jig. Stock is clamped vertically under the template and is cut using a bearing-guided router bit.

Each finger has two sides—one for cutting pins and the other for tails. Stop blocks slide into the bottom of the jig and can be locked in place. It doesn't matter whether you cut the tails or pins first because the stop blocks put you in the right spot for both cuts.

The Katie Jig is remarkably simple to set up and use, and the results are good. There is no fudge time because the jig has been adjusted at the factory. Like the Journeyman, you can slide the jig over when cutting stock wider than the template's 12 in.

One thing about the fingers concerns me. When loosened (via set screws), the fingers have a bit of fore and aft play in the sliding



**The Katie Jig has an adjustable template.** The template's fingers are attached to a sliding aluminum extrusion, which allows you to adjust the spacing of dovetails.

## THROUGH-DOVETAIL JIGS

Pins and tails are cut separately with through jigs. Stots Dovetail Template Master (left), is just that: a template used to make a working jig (the MDF template shown); the Katie Jig comes with a backer board and stop blocks; the Keller Journeyman and Keller 1601, both of which operate on the same principle, require you to make your own backer board and stop blocks.



**Using the Stots jig is slow work. The router must come to a complete stop before moving on to the next pin or tail cut.**

rack. How the fingers are positioned can affect the tightness of the joint. I did, however, get good results with the jig.

In use, the router bit cuts into the backer board, which helps prevent tearout of the joint (same as on the Journeyman jig). Over time, repositioning the fingers will result in a worn-out backer board that

doesn't offer support against tearout. You can either buy a new backer board from the manufacturer or mill your own.

The dovetail bits that come with the Katie Jig are so tall and wide that when using stock thinner than 1 in. your tails look a bit oversized. Make drawers out of 1/2-in. stock, and the joints look very oversized. The other problem with using thin stock is that the tails and pins will be proud (up to about 1/4 in.) of the joint, and they have to be planed or sanded flush.

**Stots Dovetail Template Master**—The Stots jig isn't really a jig at all: It's a master template. You use the Stots jig to pattern-route a working template. Why? The foreword in the manual explains that the problem with through-dovetail jigs is "not if you cut your jig, but rather when." Of course, this applies equally to the Stots jig, which you make out of plywood, medium-density fiberboard

(MDF), or another material that's easily cut and also easily marred.

Working templates can be ganged together, and you can make them as long as you want. But pattern-routing each template and making a backer board take a couple of hours. Using the jig is time-consuming, too, because for each pin or tail, you have to insert the router bit into a slot, cut it, then turn it off before lifting the router up and out of the slot. Yes, it works, but I would recommend buying any other jig and spending your time more wisely.

### Combination jigs give you versatility

Combination jigs are remarkable in that they all try to do so much in such a small package. Their designers should be given awards for cleverness, and the writers of some manuals should be given a caning behind the woodshed. The KISS (keep it simple, stupid) principle should always be the guide when designing dovetail jigs.

MODEL	STOTS DOVETAIL MASTER TEMPLATE (502-329-0737)	KATIE JIG (317-881-8601)	KELLER JOURNEYMAN (800-995-2456)
MAXIMUM WIDTH	6 in.*	12 in.*	15 in.*
EASE OF SETUP	Fair	Good	Fair
MANUAL	Good but diminutive graphics	Good, clear instructions; helpful graphics	Fair; graphics are crude but adequate
COST	\$40 (template only)	\$250 (two bits and adjustable stops included)	\$140 (two bits included)
COMMENTS	Tedious to copy template; slow to use	Simplest to set up and use	Easy to use; stays in adjustment

\*Jig can cut wider stock.

Essentially, if you want to cut adjustable through-dovetails, you should learn to cut them by hand. You'll save lots of money and get a sense of satisfaction that none of these jigs can give you. On the other hand, if you have to produce a lot of joints, with practice you can learn to use these jigs efficiently and perhaps save some time.

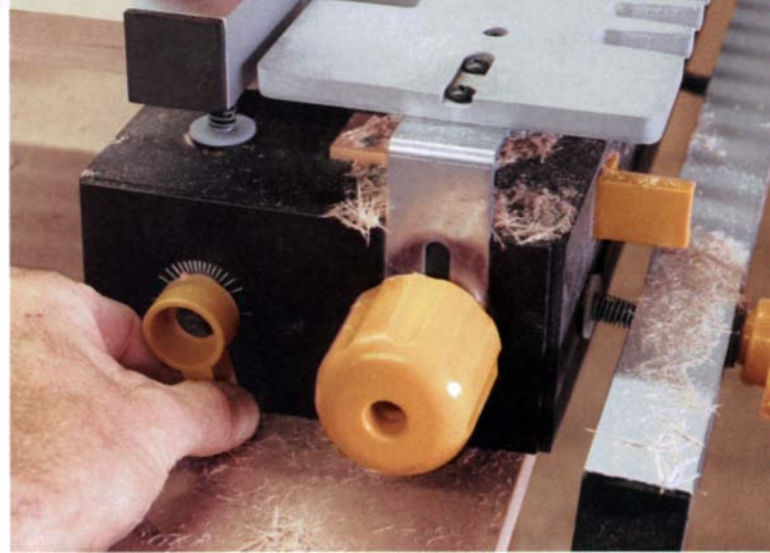
Combination jigs can cut half-blind and through-dovetails, and some do even more, including variably spaced through-dovetails, box joints and sliding dovetails. For half-blind joints, the setup usually requires only one template, a template guide and a dovetail bit. The exception is the adjustable half-blind Leigh jig, which uses both sides of its two-sided template, two setups and one bit. Through- or variably spaced dovetail joints require two templates (or a two-sided template) and two bits.



**Porter-Cable Omnijig**—The manual for the Omnijig was not written by a former Microsoft engineer. It's short and readable, and it makes sense. The Omnijig, made of thick cast aluminum and steel, is by far the heaviest of the jigs and is fit for industrial use. It's the best combination machine for cutting half-blind dovetails. The sturdy, eccentrically mounted clamping bar is a huge improvement over the flimsy clamps found on most half-blind jigs. The finger template is made of cast aluminum. Sturdy fasteners keep jig settings from being knocked out of whack (see the left photo on the facing page).

The Omnijig can also cut adjustable through-dovetails. As with the other through-dovetail jigs, the tails and pins are cut with the stock clamped vertically. A backer board of scrap wood is clamped into the jig to prevent tearout and damage to the jig's base.

The Omnijig's adjustable through-dovetail template is unusual in that the fingers for both pins and tails are on the same side. All you have to do is move the template spacers in or out to reposition the template for



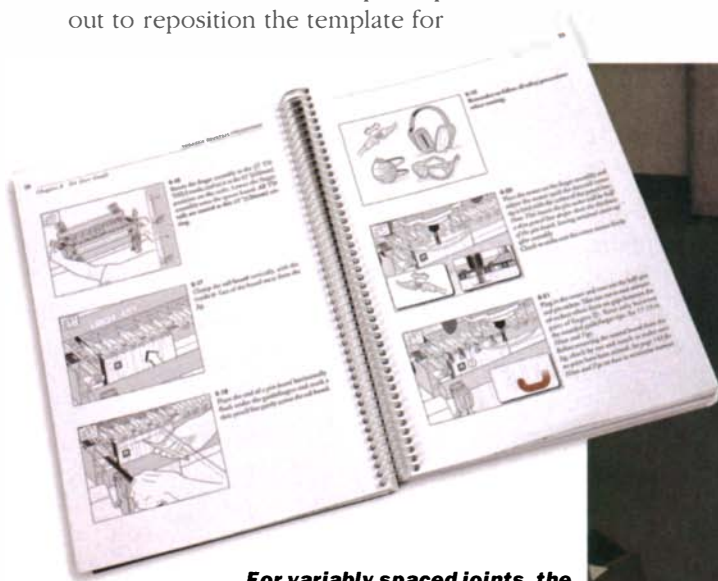
**Some clever engineering went into the Craftsman jig.** A dial on the side of the jig allows you to fine-tune the template position, which affects the fit of the joint. Many of the components are made of plastic.

cutting either tails or pins. The fingers can also be moved left or right to make variably spaced dovetails. Once set for a tail cut, the fingers will automatically make the pin cut to match. Make sure you don't space the fingers too far apart; otherwise, you may lose support for your router base.

I got good results with the Omnijig. The only thing troublesome about the through jig is the large  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. dovetail bit that comes with it. The bit narrows to about  $\frac{3}{16}$  in. at its neck right before the shaft. It looks awfully thin, although I had no problems with it.

**Sears Craftsman**—The Craftsman 16-in. jig is designed for people who love to assemble jigs. Just getting all of the pieces together is an accomplishment in itself. And the design is clever. Unfortunately, it's designed within a budget that included only plastics and pot metal (see the photo above).

To prevent deflection of the templates, each needs to be fitted with a metal stiffener. This is hardly a symbol of strength. The



**For variably spaced joints, the Leigh jig gives you the most flexibility.** But there's a steep learning curve, requiring you to do lots of reading and to have lots of patience.







**Porter-Cable's Omnijig has an optional variable-spacing template available. Adjustable fingers, which cut both pins and tails, slide along a pair of clamping bars.**

## COMBINATION DOVETAIL JIGS

Some of the most clever design innovations can be found on combination machines. The Leigh D4 (left) gives the user the most options for types of joints; the Porter-Cable Omnijig (middle) is also a versatile machine; the Craftsman combination jig (right) will not allow for variably spaced dovetails.



clamping system, however, is surprisingly strong and well designed.

The half-blind template works the same way as the Porter-Cable and Woodstock templates. The one difference is that a dial moves the template in or out to adjust the fit of the joint.

Through-dovetails are made using a single template mounted with two sets of fingers on each side, one for the tails and one for the pins—like the Journeyman jig. My router base didn't slide smoothly over the template. But the results were okay.

**Leigh D4**—I know it's heresy to complain about the very popular Leigh jig, but it's just too darn busy for my taste (see the bottom photo on the facing page). The Leigh can do so many things, but it takes so many pages of instructions to get there: 168 pages, in fact. I think you could be fairly accomplished at handwork by the time you tried all of the Leigh's permutations. But, hey, that's just my opinion.

For half-blind work, I needed at least two hours of setup time to get the fit right. It cuts boards like any half-blind jig: one board placed horizontally and one vertically and both cut with one dovetail bit.

But unlike the other half-blind jigs, each board is cut in a separate operation by flipping the finger template over and realigning it. There are no clues as to the depth of cut you need, either. So it's a cut, fit, dial in, trial-and-error kind of operation. And if you set the adjustable fingers too far apart, you need to add a spacer block to prevent accidental cuts in the wrong places.

The Leigh D4 jig cut through-dovetails with great ease. And once you understand the sign language of the jig, it's pretty simple to use. You lay out the joints with the pin side of the finger template.

MODEL	LEIGH D4 (800-663-8932)	PORTER-CABLE OMNIJIG (800-487-8665)	SEARS CRAFTSMAN (800-377-7414)
MAXIMUM WIDTH	24 in.	16 in. (24-in. model available)	16 in.
EASE OF SETUP	Poor	Good	Fair
MANUAL	Fair; good graphics but time-consuming to decipher	Good; brief but clear	Good; easy to follow with good graphics
COST	\$350 (two bits included)	\$275 (dovetail bit and template guide bushing included)	\$135 (template guide bushing included)
COMMENTS	For variable spacing, this jig can't be beat; accessories are available to make finger joints, mortise-and-tenon joints and Isoloc joints	Best jig for half-blind dovetails; extra templates are available for finger joints, variably spaced dovetails, fixed through-dovetails and sliding dovetails	Entry-level jig; works fine but spacing of joints is fixed

That's the side the lock screws are on. Then you flip the template over to make the tail cuts using a template guide and dovetail bit.

To cut the pins, you must flip the template over and dial it into position. So it's a trial-and-error fit again. In fact, the manual for the Leigh jig says to keep testing until you get it right, then note the settings for future reference. The results I got were good, eventually. I just felt that the setup time was too long. □

Gary Rogowski is a contributing editor to *Fine Woodworking*.

# Fine Woodworking

## Index to issues 128 through 133

This alphabetical index covers all the issues of *Fine Woodworking* published during 1998 (FWW #128 through #133). Starting in 1988, *Fine Woodworking* has published annual indexes in the January/February issues, starting with FWW #74. The Taunton Press also sells a cumulative index covering issues #1 through #120 for \$12.95. The format of each index reference is issue number:page numbers. A hyphen between page numbers means the discussion is continuous; commas between page numbers indicate an intermittent discussion. This index, like all previous indexes to *Fine Woodworking*, was prepared by Harriet Hodges, chair maker.

### A

**Abrasives:**  
baking soda as, 133:20  
See also Sandpaper.  
**Adzes:** source for, 130:24  
**Agrell, Ian:** on sharpening carving tools, 133:64-67  
**Allen, Ray:** vessel by, winning, 132:8, 133:32  
**Allergic reactions:** first aid for, 131:68, 69  
**Amana:** rabbeting bit, 131:36  
**American Association of Woodturners** (San Antonio, 1997): symposium of, 128:116-18  
**American Marquetarian, Inc.:** address for, 129:112  
**Amputation:** first aid for, 131:68, 69  
**Angles:** of sawblades, jig for, 131:18  
**Armoires:** post-and-beam knock-down, 132:70-75  
**Armonicas:** reproduction of, 130:26  
**Arts-and-Crafts style:**  
overmantel in, 131:70-75  
table in, maple, 130:80-85  
**Ash** (*Fraxinus* spp.): white (*F. americana*), spalted, 131:96  
**Ashinghurst, David:** on combination bits, 131:76-78

### B

**Backs:** shiplapped, 133:99  
**Banding:** and wood movement, 131:98  
**Bandmills:** operation of, 128:52-53  
**Bandsaws:**  
angles on, with miter gauge, 129:32  
blades for,  
carbide resharpenable, 130:34  
folding, 128:18  
crosscutting on, sled for, 128:66-69 (addenda, 129:10)  
guide posts of, counterbalancing, 129:61  
movable, 131:53  
tapers on, 128:60-61  
tenons with, angled, jig for, 131:110-12  
See also Fences.  
**Barefoot, Jim:** on slip seats, 133:86-88  
**Baseball bats:** maple, 133:28  
**Beals, Joseph:** on plywood cabinets, 128:42-47  
**Becksvort, Christian:**  
on doored bookcases, 128:80-85  
on Shaker details, 131:79-83  
**Beds:** headboards of, cracked, repairing, 129:18-20  
**Belsaw:** planers, parts for, 128:20  
**Benches:** garden, building, 130:52-57  
**Bicycles:** wooden racing, 129:112  
**Biesemeyer:** tablesaw fence, reviewed, 133:53-54, 56-57  
**Biesemeyer, William:** career of, 133:51-53  
**Binks Sames:** spray gun M1-G, reviewed, 133:46  
**Biscuit joiners:**  
choosing, 133:80-82  
for edgings, 133:84  
glue for, 133:84  
guide boards for, 133:82, 83  
layout for, 133:81-84  
with micro-adjusting fence, 130:36  
**Biscuit joinery:**  
biscuit removal in, 130:14  
for face frames, 128:44, 46-47

for octagonal legs, 131:42-43  
types of, 133:85  
**Bits:**  
combination, evaluated, 131:76-78  
Forstner,  
comparing, 129:46-47  
depth stops for, reviewed, 129:100  
3D hybrid, flexible-shank, quick-cutting, 129:47  
multispur, 129:45  
sawtoothed, 129:45  
traditional, 129:44-45  
hole, 129:46-47  
rabbeting, carbide, collared, 131:36  
router  
safety with, 129:70-71  
spiral, safe use of, 129:70-71  
"trapped," safe use of, 129:70  
web site on, 132:26  
spade, 129:45-46  
spur, specialty, 129:45  
storage for, 133:16  
wing-cutter, 129:47  
**Blackburn, Graham:** on frame-and-panel doors, 129:73-77  
**Black & Decker:** random-orbit palm sander R0100, reviewed, 132:60-61  
**Boggs, Brian:** on joinery jigs, 131:108-12  
**Boice-Crane:** scroll saw, parts for, 128:16  
**Bookcases:**  
with door, Shaker-style, making, 128:80-85  
mitered-box method for, 129:62-65  
one-day, 133:92-94  
two-day, with base, 133:94-96  
week-long, dovetailed, with ogee feet, 133:96-99  
**Bosch:**  
jigsaw, new, 133:44  
laminat trimmer 1608, 133:9  
reviewed, 131:63-65  
lightweight belt sander, reviewed, 130:34-36  
random-orbit palm sander 1295D11, reviewed, 132:60-61  
random-orbit pistol-grip sander 3725DVS, reviewed, 132:62-63  
random-orbit right-angle sander 1370DEV, reviewed, 132:64-65  
saw, fine-cut finishing, reviewed, 133:40  
**Bowden, Curtis:** engraving by, 132:120  
**Bowls:**  
finish for, 129:66-69  
for X-ray effect, 133:144  
See also Vessels.  
**Box elder** (*Acer negundo*): spalted, colors of, 131:96  
**Boxes:** assembly jig for, 128:28  
**Brackets:**  
for moldings, making, 129:80-81  
for overmantel, 131:72, 73, 74-75  
**Braxmeier, Jeff:** chest by, winning, 133:32  
**Broset Precision Stop Block:** reviewed, 129:100  
**Brushes:** for finish, 131:48  
**Buffing:** rpm for, producing, 128:16  
**Bureaus:**  
edges of, designing, 132:50-53  
large, construction of, 131:84-87  
**Burkin, Anatole:**  
on gluing tabletops, 132:79-83  
on miter clamps, 130:66-69

on Taiwanese factories, 128:86-89  
Butt joints: biscuit-joined, 133:85

### C

**Cabinets:**  
face-frame, for bookcase, 128:80-84  
face frames for,  
attaching, 128:45-47  
corners in, 128:47  
design of, 128:42-43  
Krenovian, 133:128-32  
mitered-box method for, 129:62-65  
Moser, 128:70  
watercolored, with flowers, 130:116  
**Carcases:**  
backs for, frame-and-panel, 128:82  
for bookcase, 128:80-83  
cut lists for, 131:85  
for drawer, 133:59-61  
drawings for, 131:85  
large,  
assembly of, 131:86-87  
construction of, 131:84-87  
mitered-box method for, 129:62-65  
one-day, cheap, 133:92-94  
plywood, spline-mitered, 131:46  
post-and-beam knockdown, 132:70-75  
two-day, with base, 133:94-96  
week-long, dovetailed, with ogee feet, 133:96-99  
**Carlson, Gus:** on backyard lumber, 128:52-55  
**Carter Products:** hold-down, new, 133:44  
**Carts:** for workshops, aluminum trolleys as, 131:54, 55  
**Carving:** Egyptian-motif, 128:124  
**Caskets:** workshop in, 131:26  
**Chairs:**  
book on, reviewed, 129:104-106  
contest for, 133:28  
infant, unrestorable, 128:122  
rocking, geometry of, 130:100-102  
seats for, slip, 133:86-88  
See also Cushions. Upholstery.  
**Charron, Andy:** on water-based finishes, 133:68-73  
**Cherry** (*Prunus* spp.):  
black (*P. serotina*),  
darkening, with sun, 133:63  
price of, tracked, 131:26  
staining, blotch prevention for, 130:46-49, 131:10  
**Chest-on-chests:**  
See Pediments.  
**Chests:**  
blanket,  
frame-and-panel, 129:38-43  
winning, 132:8, 133:32  
bottoms for,  
assembling, 129:43  
cedar, 129:43  
**China:** machinery making in, 128:89  
**Chiron:** spray unit SG-128:90, reviewed, 129:98  
**Chisels:**  
basic, 131:92  
caning, for biscuit removal, 130:14  
carving, sharpening, 133:65-66  
mortising, 130:60  
**Chopsaws:**  
See Miter saws. Saws, compound-miter.  
**Chuck-Mate:** bits, reviewed, 131:77

**Circular saws:**  
cordless, new, 133:44, 46  
framer's, 130:36  
German, reviewed, 132:38  
jointing with, 130:82  
**Clamping:**  
board to bench, for jointing, 130:14  
for edge joints, 132:81-82  
jig for, shop-made, 128:30  
of odd-shaped pieces, with rubber bands, 128:77  
of pedestal legs, 132:16-18  
surfaces for, 132:82  
**Clamps:**  
accuracy of, 132:81  
cam, shop-made, 128:30  
cam-action, 130:69  
choosing, 132:83  
clam, 130:69  
for dovetails, making, 133:16  
miter,  
band, 130:66-67, 69  
construction-grade, 130:69  
four-corner, 130:66-67  
multiangle, 130:68  
one-corner, 130:68, 69  
spring, 130:67  
types of, 130:66-69  
for miters, making, 133:20  
pads for,  
no-mar, 131:16  
sandpaper, 131:16  
picture-frame, for dovetail marking, 128:82  
**Cohen, Bruce:** on large projects, 131:84-87  
**Colors:** mixing, 128:65  
**Columns:** proportions of, 129:77  
**Compasses:** marking-gauge combination, reviewed, 129:98  
**Computers:** desks for, laptop, 133:58-60  
**Contests:**  
for chairs, 133:28  
for woodworkers (San Diego, CA), 132:8, 133:32  
**Coped joints:** technique for, 129:80  
**Corian:** in small amounts, available, 132:38  
**Cornices:** built-up, 129:78-81  
**Countertops:**  
corners of, radiusing, 131:14-16  
finish for, 129:66-69  
**Craftsman:**  
See Sears, Roebuck.  
**Craftsmanship:**  
hand tools and, 128:6  
and trickery, 128:8  
**Crozier, William:** on tool chest, 132:54-57  
**Curves:**  
fair, achieving, 130:54, 56  
joinery with, 131:108-12  
with splines, 132:20  
**Cushions:** for slip seats, 133:87-88  
**Cutoff saws:** new, 130:36  
**Cutting boards:**  
finish for, 129:66-69  
using, 129:68

### D

**Dado-and-tenon:** advantages of, 131:86  
**Dadoes:**  
enlarging, with router, 129:30-32  
for grate, 132:48, 132:49

for quick bookcases, 133:93, 133:95 sequenced, indexing jig for, 132:48 on tablesaw, safely, 132:89 tongue-and-, 131:46

Decking: screws for, break-off, reviewed, 128:98-100

Deft: aerosol, pad-applier, reviewed, 129:98

Delta:
 

- joimer, new, 133:44
- planer 22-560, reviewed, 129:96
- tablesaw fence, reviewed, 133:54-55, 56-57

Demercado, Randolph: on Chinese joint, 132:108-12

Design:
 

- around grain, 133:128-32
- and art, coincidence of, 129:8-10
- classical, formula for, 129:77
- of doors, 129:73-77
- golden mean for, 129:77
- for laptop-computer desk, 133:58-60
- of table, around drawers, 130:40-45
- of tables, process of, 128:56-59
- of workshops, 131:50-55

Desks:
 

- computer, for laptop, 133:58-63
- edges of, designing, 132:50-53
- Egyptian-motif, 128:124
- German examination, 130:24

Doors:
 

- articulated, for tool chests, 132:56
- for bookcases, making, 128:81, 84-85
- bumpers for, leather, 128:85
- cabinet, hanging, 128:85
- finishing stands for, 131:14
- frame-and-panel, designing, 129:73-77
- overhead, high-opening, 129:58, 60
- piece-by-piece in-place, 130:70-74
- rolling, glazed, 129:59, 61
- Shaker, 131:81
- spalted maple, book-matched, 133:128, 130
- of V-grooved splines, with biscuit joinery, 130:70-74
- See also Hinges.

Dovetails:
 

- for carcasses, 128:80-82
- in drawers, 130:40-45
- by hand, plumb-cut method for, 129:57
- housed, tapered, 133:96, 98
- keyed, for carcass tops, 128:81, 85
- layout for, photocopying, 130:18
- marking, with picture-frame clamp aid, 128:82
- shoulder block for, 133:16
- sliding,
  - gluing, 128:82
  - jig for, 129:53
  - for shelves, 128:82
  - for tabletops, 128:16-18
- tails for, marking method for, 128:28-30
- waste from, router removal of, 133:18

Dowels:
 

- center finder for, 131:14
- for face frames, 128:44
- for rabbit joints, 131:47
- undersized, for dry run, 131:87

Drawers:
 

- for bedside table, 131:41
- with book-matched fronts, 133:128, 130
- graduated, 132:56, 57
- plywood,
  - rabbeted, 131:47
  - tongue-and-dado, 131:45-47
- pull-holes drilling jig for, 129:100
- Shaker, 131:81
- as slide-out folding tray, 133:58-60
- in tables, design around, 130:40-45

Drawings: for large projects, 131:85

Drilling: jig for, commercial, reviewed, 129:100

Drill presses:
 

- mortises with, 130:60, 61
- threads on, in wood, 128:8
- Walker-Turner, parts for, 130:100
- for woodworking, reviewed, 128:100

Drills:
 

- with antilock control, 130:36
- cordless, right-angle, 130:36
- horizontal boring with, jig for, 130:16
- percussion, new, 130:36
- pneumatic, 130:79
- See also Bits.

Duckworth, William: on Biesemeyer's career, 133:51-53

Dust-collection systems:
 

- airflow in, and ductwork, 133:42
- cyclone, trash-can fitting, 133:44
- fine filtering,
  - bags for, 133:42-44
  - reviewed, 133:42
- fumes in, 131:96-98
- metal chips in, 131:96-98
- pipe brackets for, 131:16
- placement of, 129:59, 60-61
- specialists in, source for, 131:98

Dyes:
 

- alcohol-soluble, using, 128:64-65
- potassium permanganate as, 132:49
- preparation for, 129:16

Dynabrade: random-orbit palm sander, reviewed, 132:60-61

**E**

Ebony (*Diospyros* spp.): from ocean floor, 128:116

Edge joints:
 

- biscuit-joined, 133:85
- method for, 132:80-81

Edges:
 

- designing, 132:50-53
- easing, with laminate trimmer, 131:65
- profiles of, 132:52-53

Emerson Tool Co.: tablesaw, with lifetime warranty, 132:34

Engler, Nick: on hide glue, 129:48-50

Erpelding, Curtis:
 

- on garage shop, 131:50-55
- workbench by, 131:114

Eyes: first aid for, 131:68, 69

**F**

Featherboards: making, 132:85

Feet: ogee bracket, for bookcases, 133:97-99

Fein:
 

- random-orbit palm sander, reviewed, 132:60-61
- random-orbit right-angle sander, reviewed, 132:64-65

Felt: applying, 129:28-30

Fences:
 

- auxiliary, for wide miters, 129:63
- Biesemeyer clones, 133:52
- double-guided, 129:32
- gauge block for, 133:18-20
- setting, rule for, 129:30
- stop blocks for, commercial, 129:100
- tablesaw,
  - aftermarket, reviewed, 133:50-57
  - mechanics of, 133:50-53

Festo:
 

- circular saw, reviewed, 132:38
- random-orbit right-angle sander, reviewed, 132:64-65

Files: smoothing tool from, 133:16

Finishes:
 

- aerosol, pad-applier, reviewed, 129:98
- aging, 130:48-49, 131:75
- applicators for, disposable swab, 131:16-18
- applying, on small objects, 131:48-49
- before assembly, 131:72
- crackle, attaining, 131:96
- driers in, danger from, 129:67
- lacquer, water-based, tested, 133:68, 69, 70-71
- linseed, beeswax, tung, 130:85
- linseed-oil, applying, 129:68, 69
- mineral-oil,
  - applying, 129:68, 69
  - and beeswax, 129:69
- nontoxic, 128:59
- odorless, 129:43
- oil,
  - aerosol storage-protector for, 129:96
  - nontoxic, 129:66-69
  - penetrating, safety of, 129:67
  - penetrating, soak method for, 133:144
- restoring, 128:64-65
- room for, interior fold-away, 129:58
- for Shaker-style table, 128:59
- shellac, water-based, tested, 133:69, 70-71
- supplies for, sources of, 128:65
- tung, applying, 129:68, 69
- ultraviolet-resistant, 132:106
- urethane, UV-screening, 132:49
- urethane waterborne, reviewed, 129:96-98
- varnish,
  - French polish with, 132:40-44
  - old, restoring, 130:100
  - water-based, tested, 133:68, 69, 70-71
- walnut, applying, 129:68, 69
- and water, effects on, 129:68-69
- water-based,
  - color of, improving, 133:73
  - tested, 133:68-73
  - tests for, 133:70-73
- wax,
  - bees-, with mineral oil, 129:69
  - carnauba, 129:69

First aid: instructions for, 131:66-69

Flooring: workshop, in foot-modules, 129:58, 61

Forms: bending, glued-up, making, 129:28

Fortune, George T.: violins by, 130:26

Frame and panel:
 

- for carcass backs, 128:82
- for chests, 129:38-43
- designs for, 129:73-77
- for slide-out tray, 133:62

Frame joints: biscuit-joined, 133:85

Franklin, Ben: armonica of, reproduced, 130:26

French polish: process of, updated, 132:40-44

Fretwork: making, 128:74, 128:76-77

Freud: dado head, adjustable, 131:34-36

Fumes: toxic, first aid for, 131:68, 69

Furniture: modular, Moser, 128:72-73

Furniture Society: discussed, 132:8

**G**

Gaulkin, Zachary:
 

- on backsaws, 129:54-57
- on Thomas Moser, 128:70-73

General: sharpening guide 809, reviewed, 132:77

Gilpin, Hank: on tool storage, 130:64-65

Glass:
 

- for mirrors, 128:77
- rabbets for, 128:75, 76

Glues:
 

- aliphatic resin (yellow), extended-working-time, 129:43
- applicators for, 130:55
- book on, cited, 132:104
- cyanoacrylate, for wooden threads, 128:8
- effect of, and stress, 130:59
- epoxy,
  - for lamination, 128:20
  - West system for, 130:54-55
- freeze protection for, 132:16
- hide,
  - stability of, 129:49
  - using, 129:49-50
- for lamination, 128:20
- plastic resin, for lamination, 128:20
- polyurethane, using, 132:104
- polyvinyl acetate (PVA), for lamination, 128:20
- raised areas from, cause of, 128:20
- resorcinol, for lamination, 128:20
- surfaces for, 130:59
- urea formaldehyde, for lamination, 128:20

Gluing up:
 

- of carcasses, 128:82
- of large carcass, 131:87
- table for, assembly, 131:52
- of tabletops, 132:79-83

Gochneur, Chris: on armoires, 132:70-75

Goddard-Townsend: secretary after, 129:116

Gouges:
 

- carving, sharpening, 133:65-66
- as repair tools, 129:28

Grain:
 

- discussed, 130:88
- and joining, 130:90
- matching, with wrap-around miters, 129:62-65
- for strength, 130:90

Greene, Jeffrey: wins award, 131:24

Greene, Jeffrey P.: on pediment molding, 130:110-14

Grinders:
 

- dies, pneumatic, 130:77
- metal, new, 130:36
- misters for, 129:61
- pull-out adjustable, 131:55

Grinding: rpm for, producing, 128:16

Grivas, Charles: on bedside table, 131:40-44

Grizzly Industrial: dust-collection system, 133:42

Grooves: on tablesaw, safely, 132:89

Guidance, Anthony: on laminate trimmers, 131:62-65

Guild of Master Craftsman Publications, Ltd.:
 

- Making Chairs and Tables*, reviewed, 129:104-106

**H**

Hack, Garrett:
 

- Handplane Book, The*, reviewed, 128:110
- on rabbit planes, 128:48-51

Hanson, Sven:
 

- on belt sanders, 128:78-79
- on laminate trimmers, 131:63-65

Heating systems:
 

- kerosene, 133:89
- propane, 133:91
- radiant, 133:90-91
- wood, 133:90

Herzog-Elmiger Veneers: Italian veneer, 133:42

Highboys:
 

- See Pediments.

Hinges:
 

- cabinet, brass, 128:85
- mortises for, with laminate trimmer, 131:63-64
- premortising for, in door stiles, 130:73, 74

Hitachi: circular saw, cordless, new, 133:46

Hold-downs: new, 133:44

Holes:
 

- big, bits for, 129:44-47
- for locksets, drilling, 129:46-47
- in round stock, jig for, 130:16
- tapered, drilling, 129:46

Hollow-chisel mortisers: shelf notches with, 132:72, 74

Honing: angle-setting jig for, 132:78

Honing guides: evaluated, by brand, 132:77-78

**I**

Independence Tool: dovetail saw, reviewed, 130:34 (errata, 131:10)

Ingersoll, Ian: on bathroom vanity, 132:45-49

Injuries: first aid for, 131:66-69

Inlay: and wood movement, 131:98

Insty-Bits: reviewed, 131:77-78

Instruction:
 

- in casketmaking, 131:26
- at PA high school, 132:24

IronWood Designs: aerosol storage protector, reviewed, 129:96

**J**

Jacobs Chuck Manufacturing Company:
 

- router collet, wrenchless, 131:32

Jet: products of, new, 133:46

Jewitt, Jeff: on finishing small objects, 131:48-49

Jigsaws:
 

- new, 133:44
- Porter-Cable 6-amp, reviewed, 132:38

Johnson, Roland: on pneumatic tools, 130:75-79

Joinery:
 

- Chinese, 132:108-12
- with router, book on, reviewed, 129:104

Jointer-planers: wheels for, 131:53

Joiners:
 

- new, 133:44
- tapers on, finishing, 128:63

Jointing:
 

- with hand plane, 130:83
- clamping for, 130:14
- of high spots, 131:58-59
- on tablesaw, 129:82-85
- without jointer, 130:82-83

**K**

Kestrel Tool Company: discussed, 130:24

Knives:
 

- crooked, source for, 130:24
- marking, from X-actos, 133:18

Knobs:
 

- See Pulls.

Krenov, James: cabinet by, 133:128-32

**L**

Lacquer: padding, for restoration, 128:64-65

Laguna Tools: bandsaw blades, reviewed, 130:34

Laminate trimmers:
 

- high-powered, 131:63-65
- uses of, 131:63

Lamination:
 

- for bench legs, 130:53, 54-55
- bicycle of, 129:112
- glues for, 128:20
- production runs of, 128:71
- strip width for, determining, 128:18-20

Lang, Robert W.: on biscuit joinery, 133:80-85

Lathes:
 

- ways of, valve-grinding compound for, 128:28
- See also Turning.

Lathe tools: identifying, with color, 129:32

Latta, Steve: on taped miters, 129:62-65

Lauziere, Stephen: on computer desk, 133:58-63

Layout:
 

- for armoire, sequence for, 132:72
- color-coded, 132:72
- tools for, 131:32-34

Legs:
 

- biscuit joinery for, 131:41-42
- curved tapered, 133:61
- flared, making, 132:106
- glue blocks for, 128:84
- laminated, for garden bench, 130:53, 54-55
- mortised-and-tenoned, as frame, 129:39-42
- mortises for, 128:58, 59
- pedestal,
  - clamping, 132:16-18
  - design of, 129:16, 131:10
- Shaker, 131:83
- Shaker-style, designing, 128:56-58
- tapered,
  - on bandsaw, 128:60-61

with planer, 128:61-62  
 on tablesaw, 128:62  
 tapered octagonal, 131:40-43  
 turning, 128:58

Lie-Nielsen: plane, low-angle block, source for, 131:34

Lighting: for workbench, movable, 133:20

Lively, John: on doors, 130:70-74

Locksets:  
 holes for, drilling, 129:46-47  
 preboring, in door stiles, 130:73-74

Locust, black (*Robinia pseudoacacia*):  
 for drawer slides, 133:63  
 properties of, 130:102

Locust, honey (*Gleditsia triacanthos*): as furniture wood, 130:102

Lowboys: edges of, designing, 132:50-53

Lowe, Philip C.: on bookcases, 133:92-99

Lubricants: wax as, 128:28

Lumber:  
 bowed,  
   correcting, 131:58  
   uses of, 131:57-58  
 buying, by log, 130:81  
 checks in, dealing with, 131:57, 59  
 crooks in, removing, 131:61  
 cupped, correcting, 131:59  
 defects in, 131:56-61  
 home-milled, cost of, 128:54-55  
 production of, full-cycle, 133:32  
 storage for, workshop, 129:58  
 twisted, correcting, 131:60-61  
 workshop storage for, 130:50-51  
*See also* Bandmills. Grain. Wood drying.

## M

Machinery:  
 bases for, mobile, 132:18-20  
 foreign-made, buying tips for, 128:87  
 placement of, in shop, 129:59, 60  
 sticking, valve-grinding compound for, 128:28  
 Taiwanese, discussed, 128:86-89  
 unplugging,  
   before blade changes, aid for, 128:32  
   visual aid for, 128:30  
 wheels for, 131:53  
*See also* Motors. Switches.

Makita:  
 batteries of, new, 133:46  
 random-orbit palm sander BO5010, reviewed, 132:60-61

Mantels:  
 brackets for, 131:72, 73, 74-75  
 built-up, from plywood, 131:71-72, 73  
 moldings for, stock, 131:72  
 over-, Arts-and-Crafts style, 131:70-75

Maple (*Acer* spp.):  
 figured,  
   buying, by log, 130:81  
   drying, 130:81-84  
 fungal damage in, 131:96  
 spalted, 131:96  
 worm damage in, 131:96

Marco, Alan Dr.: on first aid, 131:66-69

Marking: with stick-on paper, 128:10

Marking gauges: compass combination, reviewed, 129:98

Marquetry:  
 association for, 129:112  
 early, exhibition of, 133:30

McAlevy, John: on blanket chest, 129:38-43

Measuring:  
 by flooring modules, 129:58  
 guides for, 131:92  
 with story sticks, 130:72-73  
 tools for, 131:32-34

Measuring tapes:  
 cloth, uses of, 130:18  
 increments on, tiny, system for, 129:32

Mehler, Kelly: on storage, 130:50

Metabo: random-orbit pistol-grip sander SXE450, reviewed, 132:62-63

Metal: cryogenic treatment for, 132:26

Miller, Jeff: wins award, 133:30

Milwaukee:  
 random-orbit pistol-grip sander 6020-02, reviewed, 132:62-63  
 random-orbit right-angle sander 6126, reviewed, 132:64-65

Miniatures: stock preparation for, 130:14-16

Mirrors:  
 fretwork, making, 128:74-77  
 glass for, 128:77

Miter gauges: double-guided, 129:32

Miter guides: easy-reading, accurate, 132:34-36

Miters:  
 biscuit-joined, 133:85  
 burnishing, 129:65  
 for carcass base assembly, 128:81, 83-84  
 glued vs. splined, 129:65  
 measuring, in place, 133:78  
 for moldings, 128:81  
 with saw accessory, reviewed, 133:40-42  
 splined, 128:75-76

on tablesaw, sled for, 128:66-69 (addenda, 129:10)

tablesaw jig for, 133:16  
 vise for, making, 133:20

wide, tablesaw method for, 129:62-65  
 in woods of different lengths, 128:83

Miter saws:  
 cutoffs on, precise, 130:16-18  
 sliding, push vs. pull, 133:116

Miter slots: runners for, wood, 128:67, 68

Models: for workshops, 129:59

Moldings:  
 for carcass top, 128:81, 85  
 coping, 129:80  
 for edges, designing, 132:50-53  
 joining, 129:81  
 large, built-up, 129:78-81  
 making, 128:75  
 mitered, jig for, 133:16  
 quick, for bookcases, 133:95-96  
 Shaker, 131:80  
 for window trim, 133:77

Mooberry, D. Douglas: on mirror frames, 128:74-77

Mortise-and-tenon:  
 adjusting, after assembly, 129:18-20  
 Chinese double-mitered dovetailed, 132:108-12  
 in drawers, 130:40-45  
 for face frames, 128:43-45  
 for frames, 128:81, 84  
 pegged,  
   boring for, 132:72, 73, 74, 75  
   for knock-down, 132:71  
 pinning, 129:42  
 for tables, 128:58, 59  
 through, for chest frame, 129:39-42  
*See also* Dado-and-tenon.

Mortise gauges: need for, 131:92

Mortisers:  
 hollow-chisel, 130:62  
 slot, 129:41, 130:62-63

Mortises:  
 angled, jig for, 131:108  
 bits for, Forstner, 129:45  
 dados as, 131:86  
 design of, 130:59  
 drill presses for, 130:60, 61  
 fitting, 130:59  
 glue for, 130:59  
 by hand, 130:60-61  
 for hinges, with laminate trimmer, 131:63-64  
 with hollow-chisel mortisers, 130:62  
 with plunge routers, 130:61-62  
 with slot mortisers, 130:62-63

Moser, Thomas: furniture production by, 128:70-73

Motors:  
 and power interruptions, protection from, 129:16-18  
 speed of, reducing, 128:16  
 switches for,  
   interrupt, 129:18  
   magnetic, 129:16-18  
*See also* Switches.

Motor tools:  
 bases for,  
   fixed, 132:36  
   plunge, 132:36

Mule: tablesaw fence Accusquare, reviewed, 133:54-55, 56-57

Museums: virtual, 133:28

Musical instruments: glue for, hide, 129:49

Mylar: as protective surface, 128:28

## N

Nailers:  
 brad, pneumatic, 130:76  
 cordless gas-fired, 130:36  
 finish, pneumatic, 130:75  
 pneumatic, 130:36

Nails:  
 box for, 129:32  
 nomenclature of, 131:98  
 for rabbet joints, 131:47  
 setting, tape finish guard for, 130:18  
*See also* Rivets.

Neptune, Will:  
 on edges, 132:50-53  
 on tables with drawers, 130:40-45

Newman, Bige: walking stick by, 131:24

Notches: beveled, jig for, 129:30

## O

Oak (*Quercus* spp.):  
 bog, discussed, 133:116-18  
 white (*Q. alba*), Russian 1930s, 133:30

O'Berry Enterprises: break-off screws, reviewed, 128:98-100

Octagons: tapered, making, 131:40-42

Oil finishes: linseed, darkening, 130:48-49

## P

Paint: odorless, 129:43

Panels:  
 holder for, pivoting, 128:30  
 raised,  
   prefinishing, 129:43  
   router bit for, 133:40  
   on router table, 129:42-43

Paralok: tablesaw fence 2, reviewed, 133:55, 56-57

Patterns: transfer of, 128:10

Pediments: broken, making, 130:110-14

Pegs:  
 inserting, 132:71, 74-75  
 making, 132:75

Pencils: mechanical, precise, 131:32, 34  
 Phyle, Duncan: tool chest of, 132:55, 57

Picture frames:  
*See* Mirrors.

Pine (*Pinus* spp.):  
 southern yellow,  
   association for, 132:69  
   history of, 132:66-68  
   old vs. new, 132:68  
   qualities of, 132:68-69  
   species of, 132:66-69

Planers:  
 Belsaw, parts for, 128:20  
 benchtop, reviewed, 129:96  
 jointing with, 130:83  
 power, flattening with, 130:83  
 tapers on, jig for, 128:61-62  
 thickness, stock preparation for, 130:83

Planes:  
 book on, reviewed, 128:110  
 on convex surfaces, 132:16  
 engraved, 132:120  
 low-angle block, 131:34  
 making, from castings, 132:26  
 rabbet,  
   bench, 128:50  
   block, 128:50  
   choosing, 128:48-50  
   side, 128:50-51  
   tuning, 128:51  
   uses of, 128:48  
 shoulder, 128:51  
 smooth, uses of, 131:90-92  
 Stanley No. 1, of wood, 131:26  
 tapers with, finishing, 128:63

Plans: Shaker, book of, 129:51

Plywood:  
 edgebanding for, 131:44  
 edgebanding, trimmer for, 131:44  
 for jigs, 128:67  
 pivoting holder for, 128:30  
 storage for, 130:51

Pneumatic tools:  
 compressors for, 130:76-77  
 couplers for, 130:78, 79  
 hoses for, 130:77-79  
 range of, 130:75-76

Pollaro, Frank: *Business Manual*, *The*, reviewed, 128:110

Porter-Cable:  
 biscuit joiner, 130:36  
 jigsaw, reviewed, 132:38  
 laminate trimmer 7310, reviewed, 131:63-65  
 nailers, cordless, 130:36  
 random-orbit palm sander 333VS, reviewed, 132:60-61  
 random-orbit right-angle sander 7336, reviewed, 132:64-65  
 sander, random-orbit palm, 130:36  
 stapler, cordless, 130:36

Potassium permanganate: as dye, 132:49

Production runs: at Moser facilities, 128:70-73

Protractors: precision, 131:32, 34

Pulls:  
 graduated, 132:56, 57  
 iron, custom-made, 133:128, 132  
 recessed, 133:58, 59, 62, 63  
 Shaker, 131:82

Push blocks:  
 from handrail, 132:18  
 making, 132:85

Puzzles: book on, reviewed, 129:106

## R

Rabbits:  
 bits for, 131:36  
 for glass, 128:75, 76  
 joints with, 131:46, 47  
 pinning, with dowels, 131:47  
 for quick bookcases, 133:93, 94-95  
 with routers, 129:72  
 on tablesaw, 128:10  
 safety, 132:89

Radial-arm saw: tenons on, round, 130:84

Reciprocating saws: new, 130:36

ReiTech: knee-operated switch, reviewed, 128:98

Repairs:  
 with laminate trimmer, 131:64-65

surface, with gouge patch, 129:28  
*See also* Restoration.

Respirators: cartridges of, protecting, 129:8

Restoration: glue for, hide, 129:49

Rivets: copper, using, 130:54, 57

Rodriguez, Mario:  
 on honing guides, 132:76-78  
 on mantels, 131:70-75  
 on window trim, 133:74-79

Rogowski, Gary:  
 on drawers, 131:45-47  
*Router Joinery*, reviewed, 129:104  
 on stock preparation, 131:56-61  
 on tapering legs, 128:60-53

Routers:  
 bases for, eccentric, as gauge, 129:30-32  
 bench for, 129:72  
 book on, reviewed, 129:104  
 climb cuts with, 129:71-72  
 collets of, wrenchless, 131:32  
 curves with, matched, 129:28  
 with dovetails, waste removal with, 133:18  
 jigs with, designing, 129:71, 72  
 milling jigs for, 130:62-63  
 mortises with, 130:61-62  
 mortising jigs for, 130:62-63  
 pediments with, curved, 130:110-14  
 plunge, in router tables, 130:16  
 pneumatic, 130:76  
 radiusing with, 131:14-16  
 safety with, 129:70-72  
 tapers with, finishing, 128:63  
*See also* Bits: router.

Router tables:  
 dovetails on, sliding, jig for, 129:53  
 insert plate for, new, 133:46  
 jointing on, 130:83  
 moldings on, 128:75-76  
 plunge-router spring removal for, 130:16  
 portable bench-clampable, 129:60  
 shop-made tablesaw-attached, 131:52  
 tenons on,  
   angled, jig for, 131:112  
   in-line, jig for, 131:112

Rules:  
 centering, 131:32  
 pocket, 131:34  
 precision, 131:32-34

Russia: white oak from, 133:30

Rust:  
 preventing, 133:118  
 sealants against, 133:118

Ryobi:  
 drill presses, for woodworking, reviewed, 128:100  
 random-orbit palm sander RS240, reviewed, 132:60-61  
 router-table insert plate, new, 133:46

## S

Safety: first-aid kit for, 131:67

Sanders:  
 belt,  
   Bosch lightweight, reviewed, 130:34-36  
   mounting, 128:30-32  
   pads for, replacement, 128:79  
   platen of, checking, 128:79  
   sharpening with, 133:20  
   tuning up, 128:78-79  
 cleaners for, rubber, 132:38  
 disc and belt, wheels for, 131:53  
 dual-action, pneumatic, 130:78  
 inflatable drum, pneumatic, 130:79  
 orbital-palm, pneumatic, 130:78  
 placement of, 129:60-61  
 random-orbit,  
   air-powered, 132:61  
   discussed, 132:58-65  
   evaluated, by brand, 132:58-65  
   random-orbit palm, 130:36  
   straight-line, pneumatic, 130:77

San Diego Fine Woodworkers Association: discussed, 132:8

Sanding:  
 by chuted grain, 129:114  
 after grain raising, 129:16  
 improper, and stain blotches, 130:47  
 sequence for, 132:116-18  
*See also* Sandpaper.

Sanding blocks: compressible, for sander belts, 131:36

Sandpaper: belts of, compressible pads for, 131:36

Sawblades:  
 cleaning, methods for, 128:32  
 triple-chip, for jointing, 129:84

Sawhorses:  
 folding, source for, 133:46  
 with metal folding legs, 133:18

Sawmills:  
*See* Bandmills.

Saws:  
 back,  
   advantages of, 129:54-57

- Japanese, 129:55, 56-57  
for ripping, 129:57  
sharpening, 129:56  
compound-miter, stop block for, reviewed, 129:100  
dovetail,  
Independence Tool, reviewed, 130:34  
uses of, 131:92  
flush-cutting, making, 129:30  
nibs of, discussed, 129:20, 130:10, 131:8  
power, flush-cutting,  
miter box for, 133:40-42  
reviewed, 133:40  
rip vs. crosscut, 129:54-55  
*See also various types.*
- Scar joints: in moldings, 129:81
- Schleining, Lon:  
crosscutting sled by, 128:66-79  
on random-orbit sanders, 132:58-65  
on storage, 130:51  
on tablesaw jointing, 129:82-85
- Scrapers: for tabletops, 130:83, 85
- Screwdrivers: for eyescrews, 131:16
- Screws:  
bits for, combination, 131:76-78  
break-off, reviewed, 128:98-100  
eye, driver for, 131:16  
masonry, Tap-Con, 131:74, 75  
pilot holes for, precise, 128:67-68  
pocket, for face frames, 128:44, 46-47  
threads for, in wood, 128:8
- Scroll saws: Boice-Crane old, parts for, 128:16
- Sealers: sanding, water-based, tested, 133:69, 70-71
- Sears, Roebuck:  
random-orbit pistol-grip sander, reviewed, 132:62-63  
tablesaw 29951, reviewed, 130:32  
tablesaw fence Exact-I-Rip, reviewed, 133:53-54, 56-57
- Secretaries:  
after Goddard-Townsend, 129:116  
*See also Pediments.*
- Senco: pneumatic nailers, 130:36
- Settees: Windsor, Moser, 128:72
- Shaker:  
bookcase after, making, 128:80-85  
design stance of, 131:79-82  
doors, 131:81  
drawers, 131:81  
information on, 128:58-59  
legs, 131:83  
moldings, 131:80  
pulls, 131:82  
table after, making, 128:56-59  
tabletops, 131:83
- Shapers: wheels for, 131:53
- Sharpening:  
with belt sander, jig for, 133:20  
of carving tools, 133:64-67  
station for, 131:50-52, 55  
*See also Honing.*
- Shellac:  
as nontoxic water-resistant finish, 129:69  
oil under, 130:48-49  
for restoration, 128:65
- Shelves:  
with biscuit joinery, 133:82-84  
"floating," 132:48  
grates as, 132:44-49  
half-round notches for, double boring, 132:72  
lining, with felt, 129:28-30  
Shaker wall, making, 129:51-53  
sliding-dovetail, 128:82  
in tables, rabbeted, 131:40, 41, 43-44  
*See also Bookcases.*
- Shop Fox: tablesaw fence, reviewed, 133:55-56, 57
- Shop vacuums:  
dead, as trash cans, 131:55  
new, 133:44
- Showrooms: locating, 129:59
- Signatures: with dry-transfer letters, 133:16-18
- Skil:  
random-orbit pistol-grip sander 7435, reviewed, 132:62-63
- Snap-lock: bits, reviewed, 131:78
- Snediker, David: on garden bench, 130:52-57
- Soldering: with screws, disadvised, 128:8-10
- Solid-surface board:  
for bathroom vanity, 132:46, 49  
in small amounts, available, 132:38
- Sommerville Design:  
tablesaw blade guard, new, 133:44-46  
tablesaw fence, reviewed, 133:56-57
- Spanish cedar (*Cedrela* spp.): for exterior, 130:52
- Splines: grooves for, on tablesaw, 128:74
- Spray equipment:  
cheap,  
discussed, 133:140-42  
finishes for, 133:142  
for small objects, 131:49  
viscosity for, 133:142  
compressors for, 130:76-77
- high-volume low-pressure (HVLP), reviewed, 133:46  
low-cost, reviewed, 129:98  
small-shop, reviewed, 128:100
- Stains (blemishes): and water-based finishes, 133:72
- Stains (finishes):  
blotch prevention for, 130:46-49, 131:10  
gel, applying, 130:48-49  
mixing, 130:49  
oil-based, under water-based finishes, 133:72
- Stands: plant, mitered-box method for, 129:62-65
- Stanley: awards, winners of, 133:30
- Staplers:  
cordless gas-fired, 130:36  
crown, pneumatic, 130:76
- Steam bending:  
*See also Forms.*
- Stickley, Gustav:  
*See Arts-and-Crafts style.*
- Stock preparation:  
generosity in, 129:40  
for large projects, 131:85-86  
from rough lumber, 131:56-61  
of small pieces, 130:14-16  
of warped wood, by scribing, 130:82  
without jointer, 130:82-83
- Stop blocks: for compound-miter saws, reviewed, 129:100
- Storage:  
*See also Rust.*
- Story sticks: for doors, 130:72-73
- Surface preparation:  
for dyes, 129:16  
for finish, 130:85  
for glues, 130:59  
scrapers vs. sandpaper for, 132:104-106  
sequence for, 129:16
- Surform: files as, 133:16
- Switches:  
contact cleaner for, 128:8  
large knee-operated, reviewed, 128:98
- T**
- Tables:  
apron of, drawer cutouts in, 132:46, 47, 48-49  
assembly, locating, 131:51, 52  
bedside, mahogany, 131:40-44  
book on, reviewed, 129:104-106  
coffee, Shaker-style, making, 128:56-59  
with drawers, strategy for, 130:40-45  
edges of, designing, 132:50-53  
extension, as drawers, 133:58-60  
pedestal, design of, 129:16  
*See also Vanities.*
- Tablesaws:  
angles on, with miter gauge, 129:32  
basic, 131:92  
beveling with, safely, 132:88-89  
blade guards for, 132:84  
blades of, angle jig for, 131:18  
corner-spline slots on, V-jig for, 128:74, 76  
crosscutting on,  
safely, 132:86  
sled for, 128:66-69 (addenda, 129:10)  
dadoes on, 128:10  
dadoes with, safely, 132:89  
dado head for, adjustable, 131:34-36  
danger of, 131:8  
extension tables for, huge, 129:114  
and fences, out-of-true, 133:52-53  
grooves with, safely, 132:89  
guards for, new, 133:44-46  
indexing jig for, 132:48  
jointing on, 129:82-85  
with lifetime warranty, 132:34  
locating, 131:51, 52  
miter guides for, easy-reading, 132:34  
miters on,  
jig for, 133:16  
wide, 129:62-65  
notches on, beveled, jig for, 129:30  
portable DW744, reviewed, 130:32-34  
rabbits with, safely, 132:89  
ripping on, safely, 132:87  
rules for, 132:84  
safety with, 129:112, 132:84-89  
Sears 29951, reviewed, 130:32  
small stock on, 130:14-16  
splitters with, 132:84  
table inserts for, zero-clearance, 132:85  
tapers on, jig for, 128:62, 132:16  
tenons on, jig for, 129:41-42  
tuning up, 129:84-85  
wedges on, jig for, 128:32  
*See also Fences. Motors. Sawblades.*
- Tabletops:  
attachment methods for, 128:16-18, 130:84-85  
corners of, radiusing, 131:14-16  
gluing up, 132:79-83  
scraping, 130:83
- Shaker, 131:83  
subtop for, 130:84, 131:41, 43, 44
- Taiwan: machinery making in, 128:86-89
- Tapers:  
jig for, 132:104  
for legs, production methods for, 128:60-63  
mortises in, 132:106  
on small parts, 132:104  
stretchers for, fitting to, 132:18  
on tablesaw, jig for, 132:16  
turning, tip for, 130:14
- Taylor Design Group: measuring tools, 131:32-34
- Teak (*Tectona grandis*):  
cost of, 130:52  
substitute for, 130:52
- Templates: fiberboard, for legs, 130:53
- Tenons:  
angled, jig for, 131:110  
cutting, 131:86  
in dadoes, 131:86  
offset, 128:81, 84  
round, with radial-arm saws, 130:84  
on tablesaw,  
jig for, 129:41-42  
sled for, 128:66-69 (addenda, 129:10)
- Textor, Ken: on shop heating, 133:89-91
- Threads: wooden, with metal taps, 128:8
- Tool chests: Duncan Phyfe's, design after, 132:54-57
- Tools:  
basic, 131:90-92  
batteries for, new, 133:46  
web site on, 131:24
- Toys: finish for, 129:66-69
- Tracy, Joe: on shop design, 129:58-61
- Trash cans: from dead shop vacuum, 131:55
- Trays:  
disguised, as drawers, 133:58-60  
finish for, 129:69
- Trees: web site on, 131:24
- Trim:  
Arts-and-Crafts style, 133:74, 77  
Federal, 133:75, 78  
Victorian, 133:75, 79  
window, purpose of, 133:76
- Turner, Peter:  
on coffee tables, 128:56-59  
on wall shelf, 129:51-53
- Turning:  
of pommels, 128:58  
symposium of 1997, 128:116-18  
tapers, tip for, 130:14
- U**
- Upholstery:  
for slip seats, 133:86-88  
supply source for, 133:88
- V**
- Vacuum presses: wall fold-away, 129:58, 59, 61
- Van Technologies: waterborne urethane, reviewed, 129:96-98
- Vanities:  
bathroom, 132:45-49  
faucets for, 132:46
- Varnish: for crackle finish, mixing, 131:96
- Vaughan, Robert M.: on boring, 129:44-47
- Vega: tablesaw fence Professional, reviewed, 133:56-57
- Veneer:  
cutting, 128:10  
glue for, hide, 129:49, 50  
with hammer, 129:50  
kaleidoscopic, from Italy, 133:42  
rolled, flattening, 133:116  
vacuum pump for, housing, 131:55
- Veritas:  
compass-marking gauge, reviewed, 129:98  
sharpening guide, reviewed, 132:78
- Vessels: laminated, winning, 132:8, 133:32
- Viols: handmade, 130:26
- Vises:  
carriage-makers', 133:106, 108  
patternmakers', 133:108  
side, 133:106-108  
tail, 133:106  
using, 133:108
- V-parting tools: carving, sharpening, 133:66
- W**
- Wainscoting: Victorian, 133:79
- Walking sticks: silver-handled, for Clinton, 131:24
- Walnut: dying, 132:46
- Warner, Pat: on safe routing, 129:70-72
- Wasserman, Pinchas: on finish repair, 128:64-65
- Wearing, Robert: *Essential Woodworker. The*, reviewed, 128:110
- Web sites:  
of individual makers, 132:26  
for questions, 133:28  
on router bits, 132:26  
on tools, 131:24  
on trees, 131:24  
woodworking museum, 133:28  
your own, planning, 132:26
- Wedges: on tablesaw, jig for, 128:32
- Wen: random-orbit pistol-grip sander 18, reviewed, 132:62-63
- West, John:  
on large moldings, 129:78-81  
on storage, 130:51
- Winding sticks:  
making, 133:10  
using, 131:60
- Windows:  
trim for, period, 133:74-79  
for workshops, 129:60
- Wiring: plugs for, safe-start, 129:18
- Wisshack, Thomas E.: on French polish, 132:40-44
- Wood:  
decay resistance of, 131:10, 132:10  
heartside up vs. down, 132:80
- Wood drying: method for, 128:54-55
- Wood moisture:  
and glue lines, 128:20  
variance in, gauge for, 129:28
- Wood movement:  
and doors, designing for, 129:73-77  
and inlay, 131:98
- Woodworkers: doctors as, 132:24
- Woodworker's Supply: SlipStops, reviewed, 129:100
- Woodworking:  
business of, book on, reviewed, 128:110  
clubs for, 132:8  
learning,  
book on, reviewed, 128:110  
in Germany, 130:24  
museum of, website for, 133:28  
questions concerning, web site for, 133:28
- Workbenches:  
adjustable up-and-down, 131:114  
placement of, 129:59  
protective films for, Mylar, 128:28  
sizing, 132:92-93  
tops for, disposable, 132:20  
*See also Tables: assembly.*
- Workshops:  
designing, 129:58-61  
design of, around work pattern, 131:50  
doors for, 129:58, 59  
eaves of, storage under, 129:60  
heating, 133:89-91  
insulation for, 133:90  
magnetic retriever for, 128:32  
nail storage for, 129:32  
radiant-floor heating for, 129:61  
rented, system of, 129:112  
safety bumpers for, 130:18  
show rooms off, 129:59  
storage for,  
from file cabinets, 131:53-54  
lumber, 130:50-51  
tool storage for, wall, 130:64-65  
in two-car garage, 131:50-55  
walls in, movable, 129:61  
*See also Lighting. Rust.*
- Wyatt, E.M.: *Wonders in Wood*, reviewed, 129:106

## Sharpness is next to godliness ... at least for a woodworker

Working wood is a process of making smaller pieces from larger ones. Smoothing and shaping, peeling away thin shavings, trimming very fine amounts, fitting pieces together—every stage of the process requires cutting wood. To make the cutting job easy and to achieve the best results, you need to use sharp tools.

Few woodworkers would think of running their tablesaw with a dull blade or firing up their router with a bit they knew was as dull as a hoe. As a matter of fact, if their bits and blades weren't sharp, they probably wouldn't even use the tool. They'd put it down because it didn't work right. And this is what happens with a lot of woodworkers, beginners and advanced alike, concerning hand tools. If they don't know how to sharpen the iron of a dull plane, they set the plane back on a shelf, convinced that hand tools just don't work.

Sharpening is a gateway skill. Once you pass through the gateway, unlimited avenues open up to you. But until you pass through the gateway, you are fated to frequently perform some of woodworking's varied tasks in ways that are awkward, difficult and inefficient. Woodworking requires a great deal of precision and control of tools. And without truly sharp tools, precision and control are difficult.

In my chair-making school's literature, students are advised to come to class with their tools tuned and sharpened, as this saves time for their woodworking. One of two things is said to me by almost every one of these students as they begin their work. The first is, "I didn't sharpen my tools because I don't know how and hoped you would be able to show me." Or they

say, "I always thought I knew how to sharpen until I used one of your shop tools."

I hear these comments so frequently that I think the vast majority of woodworkers are struggling with tools that are not sharp, and for that reason they are not taking advantage of tools that would be better suited for the job than the ones they are forced to use. As a result, they sacrifice much of the precision they should have while working wood as well as much of the pleasure they should obtain from it.

Sharpening is a skill that's hard to teach yourself. It is best acquired by working with and learning from someone else, for until you have used a truly sharp tool, you do not know what standard you need to achieve. I can tell you that your tools should cut effortlessly, slicing through end grain as a hot knife would cut through butter. The finished surface should glisten and appear waxy, like a bar of soap shaved with a pocketknife. However, it is all meaningless until you hold and use a sharp tool. Only then do you understand your objective.

A sharp edge actually slices wood, leaving the wood's microscopic structure mostly intact, which is why the freshly cut surface glistens. A dull edge—either on a new tool that has only been surface-ground or on an old tool that is nicked and pitted—tears and crushes wood rather than slicing it. Much more effort is required to push (or pull) the tool. The chip breaks into pieces, and these pieces choke the tool. The resulting surface is scarred and rough.

Sharpening is not hard. Avoid anyone who says that it is. You will discover that the process is also rather fast. When



**Sharpening is a skill that's hard to teach yourself. It is best acquired by working with and learning from someone else, for until you have used a truly sharp tool, you do not know what standard you need to achieve.**



**There are as many ways to sharpen as there are to skin a cat. Sharpening devices are made of many different materials, from man-made ceramic stones to diamond-impregnated steel bars to finely machined natural stones.**

## THE BEST & EASIEST WAY TO VENEER & LAMINATE



- Industrial Vacuum Bags
- Vacuum Pumps & Generators
- Hot & Cold Membrane Presses

Call for Free Catalog and Video

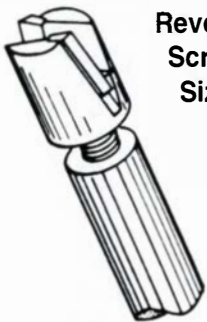


MERCURY VACUUM PRESSES, INC.  
P.O. 2232 • Fort Bragg, CA 95437 USA  
1-800-995-4506 • www.mcn.org/c/mvp  
707-964-7557 • Fax 707-964-7606

READER SERVICE NO. 65

## Her-Saf Router Bits

Made in the USA



Reverse Helix Carbide Cutters  
Screw-on for Quick Change  
Sizes Available from 1/8" to 1-1/2"+

For a **FREE** Catalog  
Call 1-800-553-9344

Manufactured By:  
Safranek Enterprises, Inc.  
Atascadero, California

READER SERVICE NO. 200

# Dust Collection

The only choice for woodworkers!

Eliminate Fine Dust Problems!

1.5 hp\* with Integral Fan/Blower and Filter Cartridge \$695.00

\*Patented:  
U.S. Patent NO. 5,746,795.

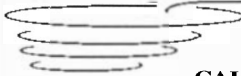


2 hp & 3 hp with Integral Fan/Blower

- Free Engineering & Tech. Help.
- Free Duct Design & Price Quote.

- 15 Years of Experience.
- No Dust Problem Too Small.
- Economical Ductwork Packages.

**ONEIDA AIR SYSTEMS, INC.™**



(315) 476-5151 FAX (315) 476-5044  
1005 W. Fayette St. Syracuse, NY 13204  
CALL or WRITE for a **FREE BROCHURE**

Visit us at [www.oneida-air.com](http://www.oneida-air.com) Email: [info@oneida-air.com](mailto:info@oneida-air.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 183

**It's the Ultimate Workbench!**  
**It's a downdraft table!**  
**It's a complete air filtration system!**



Deluxe 30"x69"



Original 30"x54"  
Only \$1099 + S&H

**Design Breakthrough!**



Ultra Grand 33"x95"

- Generous Maple Worktops
- Powerful 930, 1600, or
- **NEW 2100** or 2850 CFM
- GFI Convenience Outlet
- All Benches Shown with Optional Accessories

# WOODMARK

P.O. Box 211434 • Bedford, TX 76095

1-800-845-4400 Free Catalog!

Visa  
Mastercard  
Amex

READER SERVICE NO. 182

**Wide Belt Performance**  
**...At About 1/3 The Cost!**



5-Year Warranty  
30-Day Free Trial!  
Made in U.S.A.

FREE FACT KIT!

Cabinet shop owners across the U.S. call Woodmaster's 26" and 38" drum sanders "the best kept secret in woodworking." These commercial-duty sanders fill the niche between slow hand methods and expensive wide belt sanders. And there's no sacrifice in quality. But don't take our word for it . . . call today for free information and the names of Woodmaster owners nearest you. This way, you can find out first-hand how a Woodmaster sander might be just the machine you have been looking for.

**1-800-821-6651 ext. DS63**

Woodmaster Tools, Inc. 1431 N. Topping Ave. Dept. DS63  
Kansas City, Missouri 64120  
[www.woodmastertools.com](http://www.woodmastertools.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 170

# Rules of Thumb (continued)

**There are many sharpening systems. Which system you use is not important. What is critical is creating a truly keen cutting edge: one that has two polished surfaces.**



**The author uses sandpaper and a piece of glass to sharpen his tools. It's imperative that both sides of a cutting edge get sharpened. Here, the author sharpens the back of a chisel.**

someone claims to have spent a half hour honing a tool, I know that the person does not know how to sharpen.

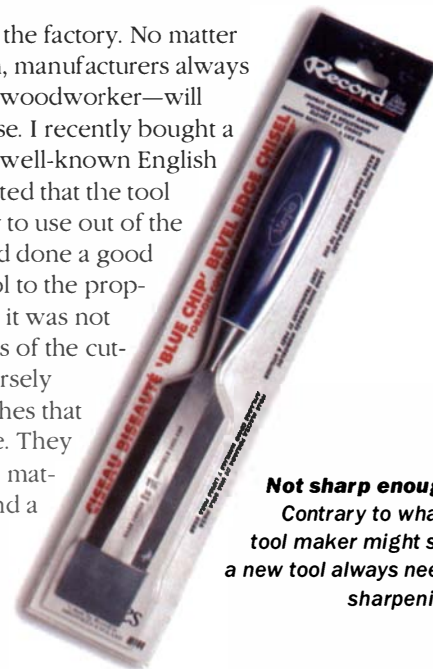
There are many manual sharpening systems: water stones, oil stones, diamond plates, ceramics, sandpaper on glass. (The latter is used in my shop.) And there are almost an equal number of motorized sharpening systems: electrically powered stones that rotate through a water bath and slow-speed sanding belts. There are almost as many ways to sharpen as there are to skin a cat.

Which system you use is not important. What is critical is creating a truly keen cutting edge: one that has two polished surfaces. You can work one side of a tool for days, and you will not have sharpened it until you also work the intersecting surface. Think of an ax; no one would sharpen only one edge. Polishing replaces scratches in the metal with increasingly finer scratches until the steel has a mirror finish. The scratches on a polished surface are so small they can be seen only through magnification. And the resulting cutting edge is invisible. You can see a dull edge, but a sharp one disappears. While sharpening, look at the cutting edge. If it is visible, more work is required.

Students frequently expect brand-new tools to be sharp and ready to use. They are not. New tools have never been

made truly sharp at the factory. No matter what they may claim, manufacturers always expect that you—the woodworker—will prepare the tool for use. I recently bought a 2-in. chisel made by a well-known English firm. The package stated that the tool was sharp and ready to use out of the box. The factory had done a good job grinding the tool to the proper shape. However, it was not sharp. Both surfaces of the cutting edge were coarsely ground with scratches that were clearly visible. They did not even have a matte surface, never mind a mirror polish.

Most of my students who are sur-



**Not sharp enough.**  
Contrary to what a tool maker might say, a new tool always needs sharpening.



**WHITECHAPEL LTD**



Call or write for our **new** comprehensive 174 page catalog of the world's finest furniture and cabinet hardware in brass and iron. \$5.00 refundable.  
 PO BOX 136, WILSON, WY 83014 1-307-739-9478




READER SERVICE NO. 81

**HEARNE HARDWOODS, INC.**  
 Specializing in  
**Pennsylvania Cherry**

Plain & Figured Cherry from 4/4 to 16/4  
 Also: Premium Walnut, Figured Maple, wide planks & a large variety of exceptionally fine domestic & imported woods including free form slabs, turning blanks, burls, & instrument lumber.

*National & International Shipping*

200 Whiteside Dr., Oxford, PA 19363

 ph 610-932-7400 fax 610-932-3130   
 email hearnehardwoods@chesco.com  
**Toll Free 1-888-814-0007** 

READER SERVICE NO. 15

**SQUARE DRIVE SCREWS**



*Simply the Best*  
 Square Drive Beats Driver Slippage  
 Deep Thread for Super Grip  
 Hardened Steel for Superior Strength  
 Made in the US or Canada!

**McFEELY'S** PO Box 11169, Dept. FWW  
 SQUARE DRIVE SCREWS Lynchburg • VA • 24506-1169  
 Call Toll Free: 1-800-443-7937

**Enjoy the benefits of HVLP with a SUPER System!**



Our SUPER model offers you the most powerful 3-stage turbine motor made by Ametek-Lamb (Ohio).

"Quality of atomization rated 9.8 out of 10... This system includes an excellent three-stage turbine... the gun atomizes beautifully and has a full range of features."

— American Woodworker Magazine



- High transfer efficiency
- Soft, easy to control spray
- Compact and portable

65 Martin Ross Ave. #5, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M3J 2L6 1-800-650-0930 Fax: (416) 663-6238

READER SERVICE NO. 82

**Wood Finishing/ Refinishing Programs**  
 25 Years Providing Industry Training

**One Year Accelerated Diploma Program** August 23rd, 1999 to May 26th, 2000

Furniture Service Technician Certificate Program

**One Week Customized Hands-On Training Program**

\* The one year accelerated program includes all of the information listed below and much more. \*

Finishing New Wood	July 12 - 16, 1999
Furniture Refinishing, Restoration and Conservation	July 19 - 23, 1999
Color Matching	July 26 - 30, 1999
Spot Repairing	August 2 - 6, 1999

**Dakota County Technical College** Rosemount, MN (St. Paul area)

1-800-548-5502 • www.dctc.mnscu.edu

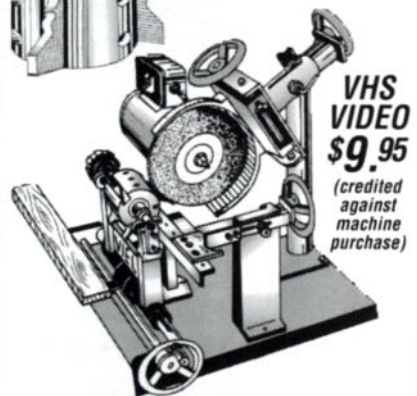
For more information, call Mitch Kohanek 651-423-8362

A member of the Minnesota State College and Universities Equal Opportunity Employer/Educator

READER SERVICE NO. 66

**Make your SHAPER and MOULDER KNIVES**

WITH THE NEW **VIEL** PROFILE COPYING GRINDING MACHINE



VHS VIDEO \$9.95 (credited against machine purchase)

- Grinds knives directly in the toolholder
- Makes distortion-free profiles
- Diamond dresser forms and dresses the grinding wheel
- NEW BALDOR 1/3 H.P. motor
- 2 years warranty. (1 year on motor)

 **\$649.00** only   
 Call 1-800-915-2601

**VIEL TOOLS INC.**  
 P.O. BOX 660, MADAWASKA, ME. 04756-0660

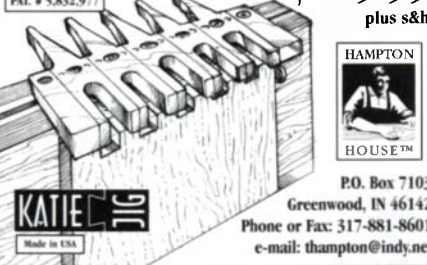
READER SERVICE NO. 5

**How to make faster, better dovetails.**

- Easy to use • Accurate • Adjustable spacing

**WORKS RIGHT OUT OF THE BOX!**

INTRODUCTORY OFFER! **\$249.99** plus s&h



PAT. # 5,832,977  
 HAMPTON HOUSE™  
 P.O. Box 7103  
 Greenwood, IN 46142  
 Phone or Fax: 317-881-8601  
 e-mail: thampton@indy.net

READER SERVICE NO. 96



**POWERMATIC III**  
**HOT SHEET SPECIAL!**

from New York State's Largest **POWERMATIC** dealer.

**CALL FOR SPECIAL PRICING!**

Over 50 machines in stock.

**Syracuse Industrial Sales**

1-800-536-4962

713 E. Fayette St. 315-478-5751  
 Syracuse, NY 13210 FAX 315-472-0855

READER SERVICE NO. 164

**The Lion Miter Trimmer...**

"The best tool for your mitering needs."



Cuts any angle: 45° to 90°—perfectly!  
 Cuts any wood: hard or soft.

—USED BY CRAFTSMEN SINCE 1900—

CALL or WRITE

**POOTATUCK CORP.**

P.O. Box 24, Windsor, VT 05089  
 (802) 674-5984

READER SERVICE NO. 162

**To PIN... or NOT to PIN?**

WE HAVE THE ANSWER!



TWO-WAY MOISTURE METER  
 ... PIN-TYPE OR PINLESS  
 INSTANT PUSHBUTTON SELECTION  
 WIDE RANGE 0% - 99% DIGITAL  
 WOOD SPECIES COMPENSATION  
 NEW DUAL-MODE MODEL CMT-908  
 ... ASK FOR FREE CATALOG OF ALL OUR MOISTURE METERS

END WOOD WARPING NIGHTMARES  
 PIN-TYPE & PINLESS MOISTURE METERS FROM \$69  
 www.odyssey.on.ca/~electrophysics

**Electrophysics** Box 1143, Station B  
 1-800-244-9908 London, Ontario  
 Canada N6A 5K2

# Rules of Thumb (continued)

prised to discover that their tools are not really sharp own nothing finer than an India stone or a 1,000-grit water stone. These types of stones will produce only a matte finish. They are incapable of polishing steel and creating a truly keen edge. In other words, you have to own the equipment necessary to create the required level of polish, be it an 8,000-grit water stone, a black Arkansas, a fine diamond plate or 2,000-grit wet-and-dry paper (paper uses a different measure of grit than water stones).

A lot of equipment is sold to aid sharpening, but you will be surprised at how little other equipment is needed to produce the necessary polished edge. Be slow to buy such sharpening aids and devices. Wait until you have learned to sharpen, and you will be better able to distinguish what you really need from the widgets and gewgaws.

You'll know when you have a truly keen edge on your tools. You'll feel it in the control you'll have: A chisel will feel like an extension of your hand, and it won't jump across the wood, digging in when you don't want it to. Your spokeshave will slice wisps of wood. And your planes will glide almost without effort, as thin curls slide out of the plane's throat, thin and translucent.



Michael Pekovich

**Polished to a mirror surface.** Polishing both surfaces of a cutting edge eliminates minute scratches that will impair the edge's ability to sever wood fibers. Cutting end grain on old, dry cherry is a test for any edge.

## WOODWORKER'S DREAM

German Made Superior Quality  
Woodworking Clamps  
& Accessories



**GROSS STABIL**

ISO 9001 CERTIFIED COMPANY

For Cabinet Makers,  
Furniture, Carpentry,  
Framing, Clamping,  
Laminating & Gluing

Call (800) 671-0838 for dealers near you

READER SERVICE NO. 166



### No Matter How You Cut It Tenryu Gold Medal Is The Winning Combination

Now, make exceptionally clean and accurate cross, rip and miter cuts in all woods with the TENRYU Gold Medal 10" x 40t blade.

- Splinter-free cuts in all woods—even chip-free cuts in melamine
- Unbelievably quiet—even when cutting thick hardwoods
- Less than .002" run out for smooth and accurate cuts
- Extra hard, carbide teeth remain sharp longer than the best competing brand—even when cutting abrasive materials

Ask for the Gold Medal at your favorite dealer or call 800-951-SAWS

**TENRYU** TENRYU AMERICA, INC.  
One Air Cargo Place, Unit 1, Melbourne, FL 32901  
Making quality sawblades since 1910 Fax: (407) 951-2250 • www.tenryu.com

READER SERVICE NO. 107

Operate 3-phase woodworking machines from a 1-phase source!

A Phasemaster® converter can run your entire shop on 1-phase at a fraction of the cost.



**Phasemaster® Rotary Converter**  
1-500 HP, 230/460V for all motor loads, heaters and CNC machines

**Engineered and Tested for Reliable Performance**

- ✓ Whisper Quiet Operation
- ✓ Two Year Warranty
- ✓ All Ratings in Stock for Immediate Shipment
- ✓ Money-Back Performance Guarantee



**KAY INDUSTRIES, INC.**  
604 N. Hill St., South Bend, IN 46617  
(219)289-5932 (fax) (800)348-5257

READER SERVICE NO. 102

## VACUUM PRESSING

Instructional Video

100% money back guarantee.  
On special for \$19.95, regularly \$34

Professional Systems w/ a 4' x 8' Bag start at \$525!!



6" High Top Frame Press

**1-800-547-5484**

Quality VAKuum Products, Inc.  
43 Bradford St. — Concord, MA 01742  
Tel. 978-369-2949 — Fax: 978-369-2928  
WWW.QUALITYVAK.COM

**f**or 50 Years, Tool Crib  
has provided the widest selection of  
top quality tools.

Call us for a price quote at  
**1-800-358-3096**



• **Guaranteed lowest prices**



- **Other Benefits**
- **Free Shipping over \$500.**
- **Huge stock levels and selections**
- **New products**
- **48 Hour Shipping**



**TOOL CRIB**  
OF THE NORTH

Box 14930 • Grand Forks, ND • 58208-4930

Catalog Request Line

**1-800-582-6704**

Visit our Web Site at <http://www.toolcribofthenorth.com>

\*Any comparable National Ad in this Issue. We reserve the right to verify competitors price and stock. Limited to stock on hand.

READER SERVICE NO. 207

Conceal, Reveal,  
Swivel with the  
touch of a finger.



## AUTON POP UP TV LIFTS

YOU BUILD THE FURNITURE  
WE'LL PROVIDE THE AUTOMATION

Since 1955, the Auton Company has served the design community with quality motorized systems that utilize remote controls and powerful motors. Motorized platform glides smoothly on four racks and pinions, even swivel at the touch of a button

### AUTON MOTORIZED SYSTEMS

P.O. Box 802320 • Valencia, CA 91380-2320  
(661) 257-9282 • Fax (661) 295-5638  
Beverly Hills (310) 659-1718 • Honolulu (808) 734-1260  
e-mail: TVLIFT@auton.com • Internet: <http://www.auton.com>  
US & Foreign Pat. Pend. • Made in USA • Auton does not make furniture



FOOT/BED POP-UP TV COMPUTER LIFT POP-DOWN SPEAKER

READER SERVICE NO. 193

## GENERAL

PRECISION  
WOODWORKING  
TOOLS



### GENERAL MACHINERY

The only High Quality, Heavy Duty Line of Woodworking Equipment  
Tableaws, Jointers, Mortisers, Lathes, Drill Presses and accessories including Modulus\* Scoring Saw Attachment



**EXCEPTIONAL PRICING SERVICE & VALUE**

Made In Canada

### ASHMAN TECHNICAL LTD.

351 Nash Rd, N. Hamilton, Ontario, CANADA L8H 7P4  
Phone 905-560-2400 • FAX: 905-560-2404

**1-800-668-5721**

READER SERVICE NO. 206



## WAGNER SAFE-T-PLANER™

For Drill Press or Radial Arm Saw

For Professional or Hobby Use!

Surface Planes, Tenons, Rabbits, Moulding, Rosettes, Raised Panels, Concave Cuts and Tapered Legs

**MAKES:**

**ABSOLUTELY SAFE**  
Impossible to grab or kick back!

Drill Press Kit \$42.00 Radial Saw Kit \$45.00

\$5.00 S & H - Add State Tax where applicable.

For Radial Saw state the make, model and shaft size.

**KIT INCLUDES:** Illustrated Instruction guide

Safe-T-Planer™ grinding wheel, arbor and wrench.

Order direct, or through established and recognized quality wood working catalogs and stores. Money back guarantee. Free literature available.

**G & W TOOL CO., INC.**

P.O. Box 691464 • Tulsa, OK 74169 • (918) 486-2761

MADE IN THE USA

READER SERVICE NO. 173

## OWN THE ULTIMATE HOME SHOP

Complete tool systems for woodworking and metalworking

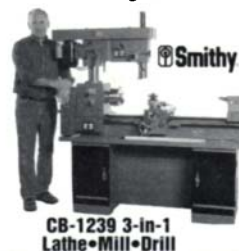


Model 720  
10-in-1 tool

### For woodworking

#### SuperShop Model 720

- 10 tools in 1 compact machine
- Built to last
- Easy and fun to use



CB-1239 3-in-1  
Lathe-Mill-Drill

### For metalworking

#### 7 models starting at \$995

- Easy to use—FREE training
- Versatile—Make almost anything out of metal, wood, or plastic

**FREE catalog 1-800-345-6342**

or write: **Smithy** PO Box 1517 Dept. FWW  
Ann Arbor, MI 48106-1517

Visit us at [www.smithy.com](http://www.smithy.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 61



Great ideas...

Great talk...

**GREAT SITE!**

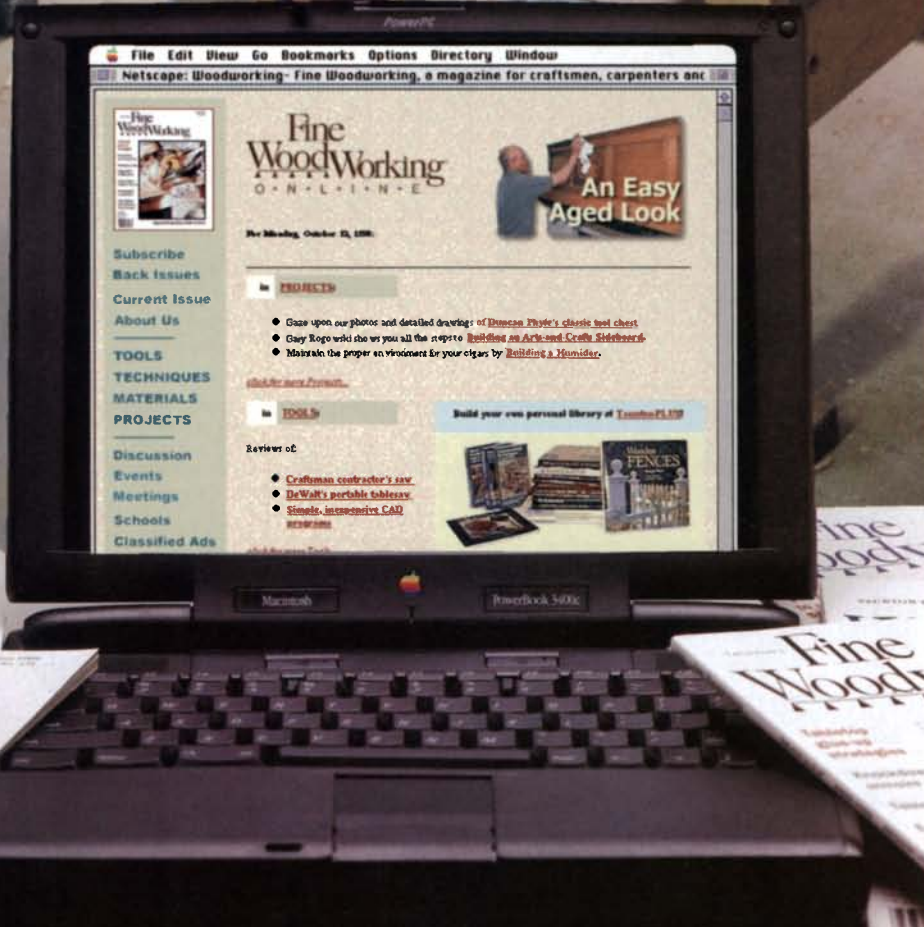
Taunton's building an online community of active woodworkers. Come join us and...

- Find information from recent issues on tools, techniques, materials and projects.
- Swap ideas, information, questions and opinions with fellow woodworkers.
- Browse our book and video collection.
- Join TauntonPlus FREE and save 20% off every book and video, everyday!
- Check out back issues of *Fine Woodworking*.

And, back at the home page, you can take a look at *Fine Homebuilding*, *Fine Cooking*, *Kitchen Garden*, *Threads* and *Fine Gardening*.

Log on and join in!

**www.taunton.com**



# WANTED

**REWARD**

Wanted for sawing, planing, drilling, molding and jointing in all 50 states. JET's band of woodworking tools was last seen in the company of the legendary contractor's style tablesaw. Anyone with information leading to the

purchase of these tools is advised to follow the stampede to your local JET dealer to round up the tools you've always wanted. JET is offering rewards of up to \$100 for the purchase of these notorious tools.

**REBATES**  
up to **\$100**

October 1, 1998 through February 28, 1999

**JET**  
EQUIPMENT & TOOLS



JWTS-10  
Contractor's  
Style Tablesaw  
\$549 MSRP

**-\$50** mfr. rebate

**\$499**  
after mfr. rebate



JSL-12BS  
SHOPLINE™  
Bandsaw  
**\$20**  
REBATE



JWP-15HO  
Planer  
**\$100**  
REBATE



JWBS-14 Bandsaw  
Open or Closed Stand  
**\$25**  
REBATE



JJ-6CSX  
Closed Stand Jointer  
**\$20**  
REBATE



JPM-13  
Planer/Molder  
**\$50**  
REBATE



DC-650 Dust Collector  
**\$15**  
REBATE



JTAS-10  
Left or Right  
XACTA SAW™  
**\$100**  
REBATE



JSL-10TS  
SHOPLINE™  
Tablesaw  
**\$20**  
REBATE



JDP-17MF  
Drill Press  
**\$20**  
REBATE

DC-1200 Dust Collector  
**\$20**  
REBATE

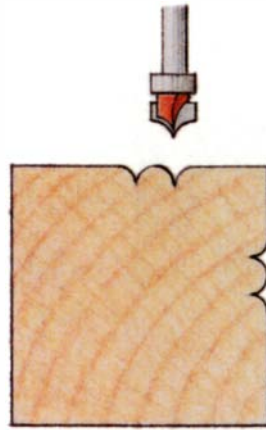
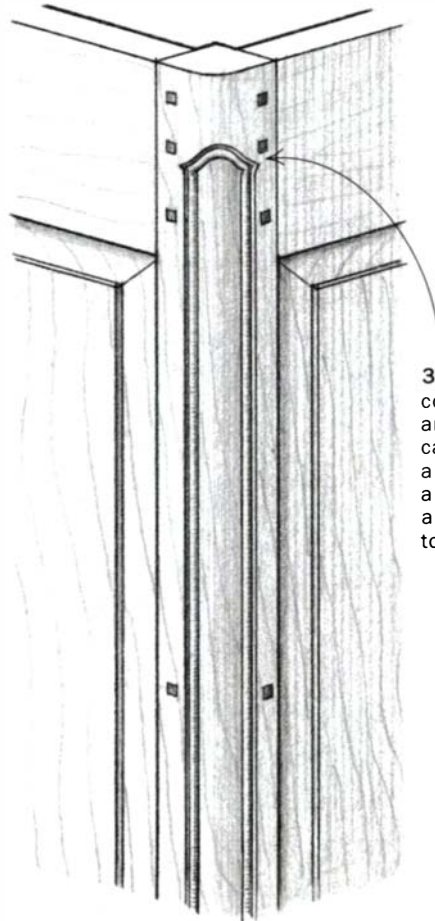
For the name of your local JET dealer, call (800) 274-6848 or go to [www.jettools.com](http://www.jettools.com).

Amounts shown are manufacturer's rebates. Rebates also apply to 40th Anniversary Limited Edition tools.

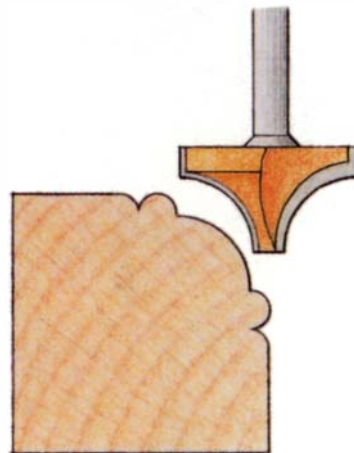
READER SERVICE NO. 60

## ROUNDED EDGE DETAIL ON POST LIGHTENS ARMOIRE'S APPEARANCE

Stopped router cuts form the beads and the rounded corner. The smaller end section is cut by hand.



1. Four passes with beading bit establish straight portion of bead.



2. An ovolo bit eases corner between the two beads.

3. Rounded corner beads are hand-carved with a chisel, a gouge and a V-cutting tool.

## Edge detail on a French armoire

*How does Chris Gochnour cut the edge detail on the corner of his French post-and-beam armoire (FWW #132, pp.70-75)?* —John Testerman, Menifee, Calif.

**Chris Gochnour replies:** The post on my French armoire was designed with a rounded corner lined on each side with a small bead. This detail keeps the case from appearing too boxy and lends a light look to the hefty armoire. I used a series of stopped router cuts, then carved out the top and bottom details by hand.

I first drew out the design with a pencil, making sure to mark the top and bottom portions where the design starts to curve and where the router cuts stop and the handwork begins.

For each of the two small beads, I loaded the router with a beading bit

(Eagle #1390602) and used a fence to guide two parallel cuts on each face of the posts. I stopped the bit just short of the rounded sections on the top and bottom.

I used a 7/8-in. ovolo bit to relieve the sharp corner between the two beads. Again, I guided my cut with a fence and watched my marks to make sure I stopped short of the top and bottom.

For the curved details on the top and bottom, I used a V-cutting tool to define the bead. A straight chisel and a slightly contoured gouge were used to finish the rounding on the corner.

This detail took some patience to get just right, but after the piece went together, it proved to be a small touch that made all the difference. [Chris Gochnour designs and builds furniture in Salt Lake City.]

## Bringing out maple's depth with Danish oil

*I read your article on finishing cherry (FWW #130, pp. 46-49). I am finishing maple and want to bring out the depth of the wood before adding gel stain. Do you recommend using Danish oil on maple prior to staining, as you do with cherry?*

—Derek Sedillo, Torrance, Calif.

**Jeff Jewitt replies:** Your approach will certainly work better than going straight to a gel stain, which will not bring out the depth or accentuate any curl figure in the maple. But the best approach is to use a water-soluble dye stain first, which will even out tonal disparities and establish the undertone of color that you want. Sealing the wood afterward with a Danish oil will “kick out” any figure and enhance surface luster and shimmer. You can then use the topcoat of your choice, though I’d advise a barrier coat of shellac if you’re using a water-based finish.

For more color, you can add a gel stain any time after the wood has been sealed with Danish oil—this is technically called glazing. You can manipulate the amount and the way you wipe the excess off to achieve specific effects. For example, by leaving more in crevices and corners, you can simulate age and patina.

[Jeff Jewitt repairs and restores furniture in North Royalton, Ohio.]

## Breadboard ends on a folding table leaf?

*I am designing a large three-quarter leaf cherry gateleg table for my dining room. For the continuity of design, I'm planning to use breadboard ends on the top as well as on the leaves. Will there be any problem with seasonal expansion of the wood, and do you feel a rule joint would be best for this application?*

—Watson Lohmann, Pitman, N.J.

**Garrett Hack replies:** Using breadboard ends is a good way to keep a tabletop flat. They work equally well for unsupported flat parts like desk fall fronts, writing slides and cutting boards. But I’ve never seen them on a drop-leaf table as you describe, for the simple reason that they can bind up the movement of the leaves.

The binding is caused by wood movement and the changing alignment of the

# PORTER+CABLE

BN125	18 ga. bradnailer kit 5/8" - 1 1/4"	88
BN200	18 ga. brad nailer kit 3/4" - 2"	134
CDA250	bammer cdls 15 ga 2 1/2" fin nailer	277
CF1400	1 hp pancake compressor	194
CF15401	1/2 hp side stack compressor	292
CF24002	hp side stack compressor	318
CFN250	bammer cdls 16 ga 1-2 1/2" fin nailer	277
DA250	15 ga. angle fin nailer kit 1 1/4" - 2 1/2"	199
DA250A	15 ga. ang fin nailer kit 1 1/4" - 2 1/2"	234
FN250A	16 ga. finish nailer kit 3/4" - 2 1/2"	282
FR350	framing nailer w/case 3 1/2" capacity	287
NS150	narrow crown stapler kit 1/2" - 1 1/2"	154
NSS150	18 ga 1/4" narrow crown stapler kit	178
330	speed block finishing sander	57
332	Quiksand 5" mdm orb w/stikit pad	68
333	Quiksand w/hook & loop, dustls	64
333VS	5" var. speed Quiksand ros, dstls	84
352VS	3" x 21" belt sander dstls w/var sp	174
360	3" x 24" belt sander w/dust bag	213
360VS	3" x 24" belt sander, vs with bag	228
362	4" x 24" belt sander w/dust bag	222
362VS	4" x 24" vs dustless belt sander	236
505	1/2 sht fin sander	138
556	bisc joiner w/case & tilt fence	134
557	deluxe plate joiner kit	197
690	1 1/2 hp router	138
691	1 1/2 hp "d" handle router	159
693PK	1 1/2 hp plunge router, fixed base, cs	194
693PKD	693PK w/D, fixed & plunge bases	242
697	router table with 1 1/2 hp motor	232
698	router table only	134
6931	plunge router base	82
7116	new 24" omnijig	308
7336	6" random orbit var. speed sander	142
7518	3 1/4 hp fixed base router-5 sp	288
7539	3 1/4 hp plunge router-5 speed	289
9444	profile sander kit w/acccys & cs	99
9444VS	Var. speed profile sander kit	111
9543	Quik-Change bayonet saw kit	159
9862	12v cordless kit w/2 batteries, case	152
9862F	12v kit w/2 batt, charger & flashlight	159
9872	14.4v crdls drill kit w/2 batt. & case	186
9874	14.4v 1/2" t handle cdls drill kit	199

# Panasonic

EYC003	combo 15.6v drill & 12v wood saw w/4 batteries	398
EY6100EQKW	12V cdls drill w/kit 2 batteries, chrg & case	174
EY6230FQKW	15.6v cordless kit complete w/free job radio, 1/2" chuck	206

# PERFORMAX PRODUCTS, INC.

16-32 Plus	16"-32" bench drum sander	899
22-44 Pro	22" pro drum sander	1799

# SKIL

HD77	7 1/4" worm drive circular saw	159
HD77M	7 1/4" magnesium worm drive saw	169
HD1605-02	biscuit joiner	134
3400	10" table saw w/carb blade & stand	198

# JET EQUIPMENT & TOOLS

DC-1200W	2 hp white dust collector	399
JJ-6CSXW	5" enclosed stand white joiner	499
JWP-15CSW	15" white enc. stand planer	1199
JWBS-14CSW	14" white enc. bandsaw	569
JTAS-10X650-WI	3 hp white cabinet saw/acccys	1399
JWTS-10CWPFK	1 1/2 hp contractors saw w/acccys	795
JPM-13	13" planer moulder	795
JWS18H0	1 1/2" hpshaper 1/2" & 3/4" spindls	524
JML-1014	mini lathe	324

VISIT OUR WEB SITE AT [HTTP://WWW.INTERNATIONALTOOL.COM](http://WWW.INTERNATIONALTOOL.COM)

# INTERNATIONAL CORPORATION

"THE POWER TOOL SPECIALISTS"

WE ACCEPT VISA, MASTERCARD, DISCOVER, & AMERICAN EXPRESS

2590 Davie Rd., Davie Florida 33317

BUSINESS HOURS: MON-FRI 8-5 PM SATURDAY: 9-12 EST

ALL CHECKS WILL BE HELD 10 BUSINESS DAYS

# BOSCH

Take an additional \$5.00 off of any Bosch tool featured in this ad! Hurry...limited to the 1st 200 Bosch tools purchased!

12740VS	3" x 21" belt sander	169
12750VS	3" x 24" vs dustless belt sander	213
12760VS	4" x 24" vs dustless belt sander	224
1278VSK	compact belt sander kit	128
1295DH	5" random orbit sander	82
1584AVSK	clic barrel handle jig saw, vs w/case	149
1587AVSK-50	50th anniv. jig saw kit	156
1587AVSK	top handle jig saw, var sp w/case	149
1608	laminat trimmer	99
1613EVS	2 hp var sp plunge router	199
1615EVS	3 1/4 hp plunge router	298
1617	1 3/4 hp router	158
1617EVS	2 hp electronic var. speed router	179
1618	1 3/4 hp D-handle router	169
3107DVSK	5" random orbit sander with case	114
3294EVS	in line grip jig saw	122
3315K	12v crdls t handle w/2 bat, cs & chrg.	158
3615K	14.4v cdls drill kit w/2 batteries	174
37250VS	5" dustless vs random orbit sander	144
37270VS	6" dustless vs random orbit sander	148
3915	10" slide compound miter saw	498

# POWERMATIC

13	6" x 89" edge sander	649
14	oscillating spindle sander	295
15	15" planer w/enclosed stand	1189
24	2 hp shaper w/1/2" & 3/4" spindle	1049
44	14" band saw, 1 hp, enclosed stand	645
54	6" jointer w/encsd stand	495
60	8" long bed jointer	1775
64A	1 1/2 hp tbl saw w/acccu fence	745
66	3 hp, 1 ph 10" t.a. saw w/50" fence	1995
66	5 hp, 1 ph 10" t.a. saw w/50" fence	2095
73	1 1/2 hp dust collector	389
75	3 hp dust collector	675
84	combo belt & disc sander	445
412	12 1/2" portable planer	395
471	1 hp dust collector	219

# AIRY

E22	18 gauge nail/staple kit	109
0249NK	18 gauge brad nailer 3/4"-2" w/case & 5000 nails	108
0232NK	18 ga brad kit 3/8"-1 1/4" with case	68
0566T	angle finish nailer 1"-2 1/2"	202
0626NK	18 gauge narrow crown stapler 3/8"-1" with case	103
0638S	narrow cr stapler 3/4"-1 1/2" w/cs	179
ITM/ART	0241 & 0626 in one case	119

Purchase any tool & you may add this Porter Cable 8 1/4" circular saw with carbide blade Model 368-1 for only \$79.00. Let's see our so-called competitors top this one! HURRY...WHILE QUANTITIES LAST!

# Vein

MSXE-636-2	Multimaster triangular sander includes case, paper asst. & 2 blades	172
99-55-13	Fein turbo vac II	248
MSFE636-1	Random orbit sander	489

# RYOBI

AP12	12" port. planer	345
DBJ50	detail biscuit joiner	68
DC500K	detail carver kit	62
HT20VSK	multi rotary tool w/cs & accys	48
ML618	18" wood mini lathe	199
OSS450	oscillating spindle sander	149
RE185	2 1/4 hp fixed base vs router	109
SC165VS	16" vs scroll saw	164

# HITACHI

C7SBK	7 1/4" circ. saw w/case	109
C8FB2	8 1/2" slide compound miter saw	438
C10FC	10" compound miter saw	198
C10FS	10" slide compound miter saw	558
DN10DYK	9.6V cdls right angle kit	168
DS14DV-G	14.4v kit w/2 bat & free Gerber tool	209
M12V	3 hp var speed plunge router	189
NR83A	full head strip nailer, 2 - 3 1/2 cap	369
NV83A	coil nailer, 2" to 3 1/4" capacity	369
P20SB	3 1/4" planer	89

# freud

TR215	8 1/2" compound saw	238
JS100	biscuit joiner	94
JS102	biscuit joiner w/var. angle fence	118
FT2000E	3 hp plunge router	184
F410	10" x 40t quiet blade	48
F810	10" x 80t quiet blade	73
LM72M010	10" x 24t flat top rip blade	36
LU82M010	10" x 60t crosscut/rip blade	44
LU84R010	10" x 50T red combo blade	42
LU85R010	10" x 80T red crosscut blade	58
LU92M010	10" x 60 teeth TCH laminate	59
LU98M010	10" x 80 teeth TCH lam & wood67	67
SD308	8" safety dado with case	116
SD508	new 8" super dado set	167
SD608	8" dial-a-width dado	198
TK406	10" x 60 teeth thin kerf blade	36
TK806	10" x 80 teeth thin kerf blade	47
TK906	10" x 50 teeth thin kerf blade	34

# Jorgensen

STYLE	3/2 1/2" THROAT 1/4" x 3/4"	OUR PRICE EACH	BOX OF 6
3706	5"	6.00	34.50
3712	12"	6.70	38.95
3718	18"	7.50	42.75
3724	24"	8.25	46.50
3730	30"	8.95	50.75
3736	36"	9.95	56.95
PONY CLAMPS #50, 3/4" 8.20 BOX OF 12 \$94.95			
#52, 1/2" 6.95 BOX OF 12 \$79.95			
PONY SPRING CLAMPS 3201HT 1" 1.35			
3202HT 2"	1.89	3203HT 3"	3.99

# Makita

5007NBK	7 1/4" circ saw w/cs & blade	128
6095DWE	9.6v cdls drill kit w/2 batt	128
6095DWE2	same as above w/flashlight	139
6213DWAE	12v cordless kit w/ 2 batteries	169
6233DWAE	14.4v cordless kit w/2 batteries	199
6333DWAE	14.4v 1/2" cordless kit	209
B05001	5" random orbit sander	67
LS1013	10" slide dual comp miter saw	558
LS1211	12" slide dual comp miter saw	756
N1900B	3 1/4" planer	146

# Milwaukee

6490-6	10" miter saw	274
6496-6	new 10" slide compound miter saw	545
6497-6	10" slide compound saw w/accs	619
6537-22	10 amp recip saw w/case	178

# SENCO

SKS	narrow crown stapler	247
SLP20	brad nailer w/case 5/8"-1 5/8" cap	198
SFN40	finish nailer 1 1/4"-2 1/2" cap	338

# DELTA

11-990	12" drill press	188
14-650	hollow chisel mortiser	238
22-560	new 12" portable planer	378
23-710	new sharpening center	149
28-185	bench top band saw	167
28-270	14" bandsaw, 1 hp white, enc stand	849
31-780W	osc. sander w/spindles	216
36-865	versa feeder stock feeder	248
36-920	Grand Edition 3 hp unisaw after rebate	1599
37-190	6" jointer w/stand after rebate	369
40-540	16" vs scroll saw	162
40-650	Q-3 scroll saw	429
43-505	router/shaper	299
50-840	1 hp dust collector, 650 cfm	219
50-850	1 1/2 hp dust collector, 1200cfm	289
50-860	room air cleaner, 850 cfm	234

# DEWALT

DW4PAK	18v kit circ sa, recip saw, hammr drill and light	559
DW309K	recip saw, var sp, w/blades & cs	168
DW321K	top handle jig saw kit	158
DW359K	7 1/4" circular saw w/case	128
DW378K	7 1/4" framers saw	168
DW420	5" random orbit sander, psa	62
DW421	5" dstls mdm orb sander, velcro	67
DW423	5" vs dustls random orbit sander	79
DW431	3" x 21" dstls belt sander var sp	185
DW610	1 1/2 hp router, 9 amp	144
DW621	2 hp vs dstls plunge router	198
DW677K	3 1/4 hp planer kit	149
DW682K	biscuit joiner kit	159
DW705	12" miter saw w/carb blade	358
DW708	new sliding comp. miter saw	644
DW733	new 12 1/2" portable planer	435
DW744	10" portable table saw	499
DW788	new 20" var. speed scrollsaw	448
DW965K	12v right angle drill kit	189
DW972K2	12v crdls kit w/battery & cs	179
DW972KS2	12v combo drill & saw kit	274
DW991K2	DW991K with two batteries	206
DW991KC2	14.4v drill & recip saw combo kit	372
DW991KL2	14.4v drill, circ saw, flashlight kit	349
DW991KS2	14.4v cdls drill & circ saw kit	338
DW995K	18V 1/2" drill w/batt, chrg & cs	228
DW995KC2	18v drill & recip saw combo kit	395
DW995KS2	18V drill & saw combo kit	377
DW997K	18V hammer drill kit, 1/2" chuck	239
DW997KC2	18V hammer drill & recip saw kit	415

FedEx Federal Express Most tools under 70 lbs. shipped Fed Ex Express Service for \$9.00 call for details!

# 1-800-338-3384

FREE FREIGHT & SAME DAY SHIPPING on most UPS orders over \$50 minimum purchase with the contiguous U.S.A. FAX US YOUR ORDER AT 1-954-792-3560

READER SERVICE NO. 154

breadboard ends and table edges where the leaves are hinged. When the top swells, the breadboard ends don't extend all the way to the table's edges. When the top shrinks, the ends project beyond the table's edges. In this position it is likely that the breadboard ends will constrict the movement of the leaves. With breadboards on the drop leaves too, at some point in the year it is likely that both breadboard ends will bind against each other and could split the hinges out of the top or leaves. With only one leaf, you could restrict the wood movement away from the hinged side on the leaf and top and not cause any problems.

A rule joint is the neatest and strongest joint between a leaf and top. But when cutting it in a table edge with a breadboard end, wood movement is going to be a problem. Because the tolerance in a rule joint is small, any variation between the top and breadboard ends will surely bind the joint. For your table, I would keep the meeting edges square and plane down the ends of the breadboards when they are proud of the table edge. [Garrett Hack is a writer and woodworker living in Thetford Center, Vt.]

## Sanding tight spots

*I'm working on a piecrust table, and getting a smooth surface in the top's tight recesses seems impossible. Is there an easy way to sand these areas?*

—Thomas M. Wheeler, Montgomery, Ala.

**David Lamb replies:** The tight areas on ornate pieces like the piecrust tabletop you describe can be a challenge, even in experienced hands. After doing any mechanical shaping with a router, the edges still have to be cleaned up. If the project is large, I often make custom scrapers or use a gooseneck scraper refilled to fit the profile of the trouble spot.

Another easy option is to make sanding sticks from scraps around the shop. With the sticks cut to fit the particular sanding area, you can move from one grit to another easily. But to make sure the area doesn't lose its shape, don't start sanding with anything coarser than 180 grit.

The easiest route is to use rifler files, which come in a variety of sizes and shapes. With some hunting and a little

luck, you might find one that seems ready-made for your work.

[David Lamb designs and builds furniture in Canterbury, N.H.]

## Mending a broken Windsor

*I have a Windsor chair with a seat that is split down the middle. When I align the seat halves together, there is a gap in the middle approximately 1/8 in. wide. If I were to plane each side to eliminate the gap, it obviously would make the seat narrower and interfere with one of the back spindles. What is the best way to repair the seat?*

—Warren Maas, Missouri City, Texas

**Michael Dunbar replies:** You first need to determine whether your chair is an antique, made between 1730 and 1830, when chair makers still worked by hand. If the chair is an antique, I strongly advise against trying to repair it yourself.

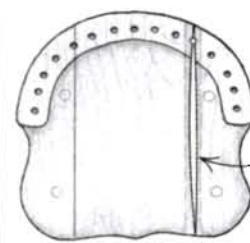
It is possible that the chair is very valuable, and your efforts could make it nearly worthless. While many Windsors from this period sell for around \$2,000, depending on condition, style and maker, it could be worth much more. The record price for an individual antique Windsor is in excess of \$50,000! If you have an antique Windsor, let only a trained conservator work on it.

If your chair is factory made (post 1830), repairing the problem you describe is straightforward. Take the chair apart to the extent possible. The two surfaces no longer pull together because the wood on each side of the split has moved independently and changed the shape given it at the time of manufacture. First joint both surfaces and determine what species of wood was used in the original seat. Using the same species of wood, prepare a strip thick enough to replace the wood removed during jointing and to return the seat to its original width. The piece of wood should also be wider than the seat's thickness and longer than the seat's length so that it will overhang the original surface everywhere.

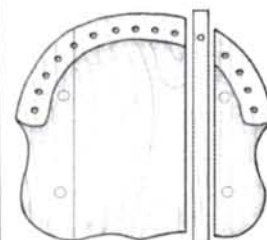
Glue the new piece of wood between the jointed surfaces of the two seat halves. Make sure both sides of the seat are in the same plane and clamp them under even pressure. When the glue has dried, shave the new piece of wood flush with the

## REPAIRING A CRACKED SEAT

With this Windsor disassembled, the cracked seat is easily repaired.



Remove damaged portion of seat and enough of surrounding material to get two parallel faces. Then joint the two faces.



Replace damaged area with matching wood strip, being careful to match grains. Clamp up assembly and let dry. Shape strip to fit seat, drill new hole, if necessary, and apply matching finish.

seat's original surfaces. The strip is thin and should be easy to trim.

If the split occurred in line with a hole, you will have to run a drill bit of the same size into the hole to clean out the new wood. Stain the new wood to match the original and apply the same type of finish used on the rest of the chair. Finally, reassemble the chair.

[Michael Dunbar teaches Windsor chair making and is a contributing editor to *Fine Woodworking*.]

## Is tree curl and figure genetic or environmental?

*Every year I plant a few trees so those who follow me will have materials to*





# NEW CATALOG!

Call today for a **FREE** catalog! **1-800-403-9736**.  
Our name has changed but our great service and quality remain the same. Plus we've added over 1,100 hard-to-find products.



The **NEW** name for... **Since 1954** "Our commitment to hardware is **NOW** in our name."

Dept. 98102

Rockler Companies Inc. 4365 Willow Drive, Medina, MN 55340 [www.rockler.com](http://www.rockler.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 56

Traditional Japanese Tansu & Cabinet Hardware  
Fine selection of handmade Japanese paper — for Shoji Screens and Lamp Shades



In addition we offer the absolute finest, custom-made Japanese tools for the sophisticated woodworker.  
For information, call or FAX Kayoko!

For **FREE** brochure, write to:  
**MISUGI DESIGNS**

2233 5th St., Berkeley, CA 94710 - [www.misugidesigns.com](http://www.misugidesigns.com)  
Tel: (510) 549-0805 Fax: (510) 549-0828

READER SERVICE NO. 30

## LAUNSTEIN HARDWOODS

Manufacturer & Distributor of  
3/8" SOLID HARDWOOD FLOORING

Pre-sanded and ready to finish. Available in  
RED OAK, WHITE OAK, ASH, HICKORY, HARD  
MAPLE, CHERRY, WALNUT

Choice of 4 widths and 3 grades

Unlimited choice of mouldings  
Most orders shipped within 24 hrs

### LAUNSTEIN HARDWOODS

384 S. Every Road,  
Mason, Michigan 48854

PHONE 517-676-1133 FAX 517-676-6379  
<http://www.vmall.net/launstein/>

READER SERVICE NO. 7

## BRAD NAILER & STAPLER COMBINATION KIT

**2 Tools for  
Price of One**

**Kit  
Includes both**

MODEL O241S (Brad Nailer)  
Rated 10" by Wood Magazine

MODEL O626S (Stapler)  
Rated "Excellent" by Wood Magazine

- Use standard 18 ga brads 3/8" to 1 9/16"
- Use standard 18 ga staples 3/8" to 1"
- Exclusive no mar safety system
- Easy depth adjustment
- Lightweight and powerful

<http://www.airytools.com>



**AIRY**  
NAIL and STAPLE TOOLS

AIRY SALES CORP  
1425 S. Allec Street  
Anaheim, CA 92805

FOR NEAREST DEALER CALL  
800-999-9195

READER SERVICE NO. 185

Perfect Line of Quality Woodworking Machines with A Small Investment.  
Not Only Reduce the investment but Also The Production Cost.

Call For More Details!

THE QUALITY AND SERVICE ARE MORE THAN WHAT YOU HAVE PAID FOR

### WIDE BELT SANDER

15" X 54" CA-1554 \$ 3,290.00  
25" X 60" WS-A925 \$ 6,290.00  
37" X 60" WS-A937 \$ 8,990.00  
6" x 132" Edge Sander \$ 1,190.00  
9" Oscillating Edge Sander \$ 3,990.00



### JOINTER

6" JT-2206 \$ 349.00  
8" JT-1008 \$ 629.00  
12" JT-0012 \$ 1,990.00  
16" JT-0016 \$ 2,990.00



### RIP SAW

Sliding Rip #TRS-0012 \$ 9,800.00  
Multi Rip #TRS-10 14 \$ 23,900.00



### AUTO COPY SHAPER

28" Basic #CS0028 \$ 9,900.00  
28" Auto Feeding #CS28DS \$ 21,900.00  
40" 2Head #CS4002 \$ 19,900.00  
100" 2 head #CS10002 \$ 31,900.00



### PLANER

15" WP-0015 \$ 899.00  
20" WP-0020 \$ 1,299.00  
20" IND. WP-1120 \$ 2,390.00  
24" IND. WP-1124 \$ 2,990.00



### SHAPER

3/4" SP-3400 \$ 469.00  
1" SP-30 \$ 899.00  
1-1/4" SP-101 \$ 1,990.00  
1-1/4" TLT. SP-201T \$ 2,490.00  
3 SIDE 1" SP-6003 \$ 3,390.00



### TABLE SAW

12" HTS-0012 \$ 799.00  
10" IND. TS-1010 \$ 1,099.00  
12" IND. TS-1212 \$ 1,699.00  
14" IND. TS-1414 \$ 2,490.00



### BAND SAW

18" BS-0181 \$ 869.00  
20" BS-0202 \$ 1,399.00  
24" BS-0242 \$ 1,690.00  
32" BS-800 \$ 4,490.00



### 9" x 6" FOUR SIDE MOULDER

SM-423E 4 Spindle \$ 25,990.00  
SM-523E 5 Spindle \$ 29,990.00  
SM-623E 6 Spindle \$ 36,990.00



### PANEL, BEAM SAW

12" Auto Hor. #TS-P12S \$ 23,900.00  
10" Hor. Sliding #TP-P3200S \$ 9,900.00  
10" Ver. Scoring #TS-P32 16 \$ 18,900.00

### MORE MACHINES AVAILABLE

20" Band Saw \$ 1399.00	2 HP Dust Collect \$ 379.00	Round Pole Milling \$ 3490.00	18" Cut Off Saw \$ 2990.00
32" Band Saw \$ 4490.00	3 HP Dust Collect \$ 519.00	20" Router \$ 2390.00	12" Flow Coater \$ 13900.00
3-Side Shaper \$ 3390.00	Chisel Motiser \$ 1690.00	10" Uni. Table Saw \$ 1099.00	14" Radial Arm Saw \$ 2090.00
1-1/4" Ind. Shaper \$ 2990.00	1 HP Power Feeder \$ 669.00	14" Uni. Table Saw \$ 2490.00	

LOBO MACHINE CORP. 9034 Bermudez St. Pico Rivera, CA 90660 Tel 562-949-3747 Fax 562-948-4171  
On-Line <http://www.lobomachine.com> E-Mail [info@lobomachine.com](mailto:info@lobomachine.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 204

*work with. Could you please tell me whether curl and figure in wood is genetic or environmental? If genetic, could material from a figured tree be grafted to a compatible rootstock to produce another figured tree?*

—Howard Parks, Hughesville, Pa.

**Jon Arno replies:** Unfortunately, there doesn't appear to be a single answer for what causes figure in wood. It's a good bet, though, that genetics play a major role. It is suspected that some forms of figure such as burl and bird's eye may be triggered by pathogens or some sort of stress in the form of nutrient deprivation and/or climatic conditions. But how certain species react to these stresses to produce unique figures must involve their genetic programming. Otherwise, burl, bird's eye, fiddleback and other figures would be equally common regardless of species, and they are not.

To the extent that genetic programming contributes to a given type of figure, a scion grafted onto a compatible rootstock

should continue to produce the desired figure. But there are some practical limitations in carrying out your strategy. Often, unusual figure does not become apparent in a sapling until it attains considerable size, and by then, it becomes very difficult to perform a successful graft. Also, if the figure requires a pathogen or stress trigger, nutrients and/or immunities provided by the rootstock could turn it off. Personally, I think it's worth a try, and on behalf of woodworkers yet to be born, I certainly applaud your social conscience. [Jon Arno is a woodworker and wood consultant in Troy, Mich.]

### Resawing on a bandsaw

*For resawing, I use a 14-in. bandsaw with a 1/2-in. blade that has 4 tpi. Recently, I was resawing a cherry board that is 3/4 in. thick and 4 in. wide into 1/4-in.-thick boards. While doing this, I heard a dull screeching sound. Also, the blade wandered back and forth in a wavy pattern about 1/8 in. wide. And when*

*feeding the board into the saw, it lurched forward about 1/8 in. or so, then stopped and then lurched forward again. Can any of these conditions be corrected? If they are normal, I'll get used to it.*

—Don Fast, Houston

**Gary Rogowski replies:** Don't get used to poor performance from your tools. This kind of behavior from a bandsaw is not normal. I take that back. It's a normal cut for a bandsaw that's cutting poorly. You should expect a great deal more from a properly made resaw cut.

Ask yourself how you're cutting here. You're ripping when you resaw. It just happens to be through much thicker material. Ripping is hard enough, as you know if you've ever tried ripping by hand. But resawing through 4 in. of hardwood like cherry takes some force. Although I believe most of your problem is blade related, check your saw to see that it's running properly. The drive belt should be transmitting power smoothly with no belt slippage and with the motor

HOT NEWS

We'll Make You A PRO for Under \$2000

- Abrasive plane knotty, rough-sawn hardwoods without chip-out or planer ripple.
- Dimension uneven glue-ups to within .010" uniform thickness.
- Power sand wide surfaces to a flawless finish - no more hand-held belt sanding.

Plus, production sand multiple parts and pieces as short as 2 1/4" without jigs or carrier boards. Infinitely-variable feed rate 0-10' per minute lets you control the finish.

Produce professional-looking results. Call today to select the PRO that's right for you— a 22-44 PRO or the new SHOPPRO 25.

1-800-334-4910  
1-612-895-9922




PERFORMAX PRODUCTS, INC. X

PROUDLY MADE IN THE U.S.A.

12257 Nicollet Ave. So., Burnsville, MN 55337

READER SERVICE NO. 150




Blum. The power is in the design.

The idea behind some designs may forever remain a mystery. Fortunately, cabinet and furniture makers today can make their own ideas come to life with Blum concealed hinges.

From the economical MODUL slide-on series to the quick-mount CLIP series to the new tool-free INSERTA series, Blum hinges are sure to suit your application.

There's no mystery behind Blum concealed hinges. The power is in the design.

Julius Blum, Inc. • Stanley, NC 28164 • 800-438-6788



The ultimate hardware system **blum**

READER SERVICE NO. 184



# Okay, Maybe We Don't Supply *Everything* You'll Need In Your Shop.

But with over 7,000 of the finest woodworking tools and supplies from around the world,  
no one can cover more of your woodworking needs than Woodcraft.

- Stores nationwide.
- A FREE 168 page catalog.
- A website with on-line catalog - [www.woodcraft.com](http://www.woodcraft.com)

For the store nearest you or for a free catalog call: 1-800-542-9115



**WOODCRAFT®**  
Helping You Make Wood Work™



Proud sponsor of "The American Woodshop" hosted by Scott Phillips on PBS.

For maximum safety and comfort Woodcraft recommends that you always wear pants and shoes in your shop.

READER SERVICE NO. 1

Dept. 99WW01CP

and wheel pulleys properly aligned. With the blade off the wheels, spin them to check their balance and listen for any crunchy sounds, which would indicate a bad wheel bearing.

Next, throw away your blade or use it only for cutting firewood. Part of your problem stems from the fact that there are simply too many teeth in the cut you're trying to make. The teeth are pulling so much sawdust with their ripping cut that the blade can't clear it away fast enough. The blade screeches as it heats up and starts to track badly as sawdust fills the teeth and the kerf they're making. Then it lurches forward as the teeth finally clear a path again, only to have sawdust fill up everything once more, and you do this dance all over again. This is not normal for a good resaw cut.

A good resaw cut is a slow, controlled, *straight* cut. I use a 1/2-in. blade as you do, but I always run a 3-tpi hook-tooth blade to minimize the number of teeth in the cut at any one time. The hook-tooth form also has deeper gullets than the skip tooth

and a rake angle of about 10° for a more aggressive, shearing type of cut. Recently, I have also started using a blade from Highland Hardware called the Wood Slicer, which cuts very aggressively but with little feed pressure and good results.

Make sure your blade is tensioned properly with no flutter in it as it's running, and check your blade guides and thrust bearings to see they're set within a few thousandths of an inch. Use a new blade for important resawing, and figure that after a few dozen feet of resawing your blade is going to get tired. Slow down your feed rate, make sure that the blade is still tensioned and tracking properly and that it keeps cutting straight. If you really start to bog down again in the cut, replace the blade or have it resharpened.

[Gary Rogowski is a contributing editor to *Fine Woodworking*.]

## Shaker box supplies

*I would like to learn how to make Shaker boxes. Are there any plans on how to*

*make the mold you use to bend the box bands? Also, is there a good book or video on making them?*

*—Bertin LeBlanc, Dieppe, N.B., Canada*

**Matthew Teague replies:** From his shop in Charlotte, Mich., John Wilson has been making beautiful Shaker boxes for 18 years. You can look up his article on the craft in *FWW* #102 (pp. 54-57), or try to catch one of his many seminars across the country.

Wilson's own catalog offers an abundance of information—be it books or videos—and supplies. For a copy of his latest supply list, give him a call at (513) 535-5325. As a primer, you might try one of his Shaker box kits, available from Woodcraft (800-225-1153).

[Matthew Teague is an assistant editor at *Fine Woodworking*.]

*Do you have a question you'd like us to consider for the column? Send it to Q&A, Fine Woodworking, P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506.*

## POWERMATIC®

**Dust Collector**  
Model 73

1-1/2HP, 1200 CFM, steel impeller, safety switch, two outlets, floor sweep.

\$361<sup>00</sup>

**17" Drill Press**  
Model 1170

1HP, 0-5/8" capacity chuck, table raising mechanism, 3-1/4" spindle travel, cast iron tilting woodworking table.

\$365<sup>00</sup>

**6" Jointer**  
Model 54

3/4HP, safety switch, cast iron center-mounted fence with 45 degree tilt, push blocks, "controlled chip" cutterhead, 45" table, 13,500 cuts per minute.

\$482<sup>00</sup>

**THE ARTISAN LINE**

**10" Table Saw**  
Model 64A

1-1/2HP, carbide-tipped blade, left tilt, 30" Accu-Fence, solid cast iron extensions, dust collection shroud, table and dado inserts, blade guard and splitter, miter gauge.

\$749<sup>00</sup>

**15" Planer**  
Model 15

3HP, double sided knives, enclosed stand, casters, extended roller supports, dust hood, one-piece cast iron table, 3,385 SFM, takes up to 6" thick stock.

\$1199<sup>00</sup>

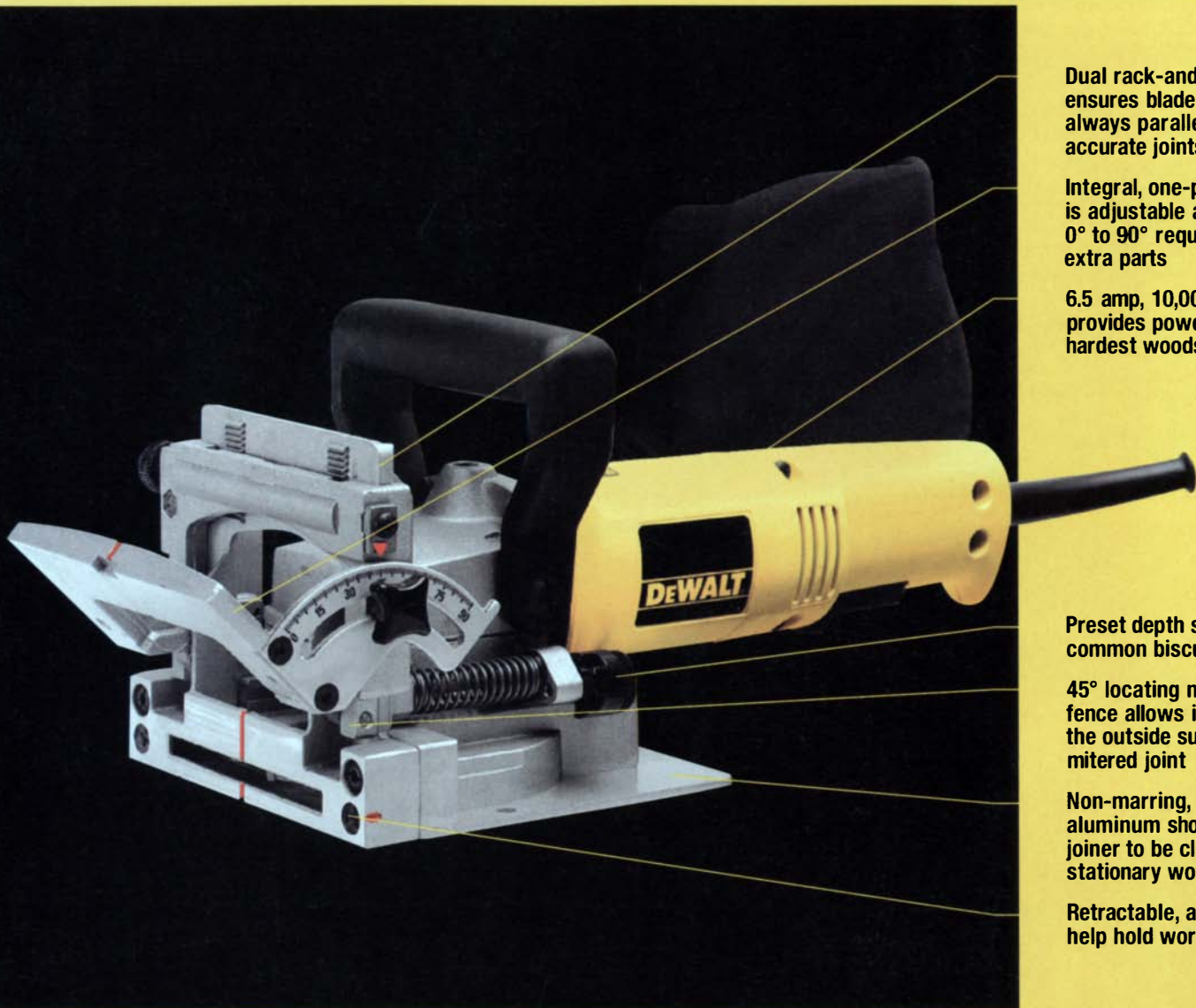
Go for the gold and take home one (or more) of these Artisan machines from Powermatic. But don't delay, this offer is at participating dealers for a limited time only.

1-800-248-0144

Ask for your nearest Powermatic dealer

E-mail: [powermatic@worldnet.att.net](mailto:powermatic@worldnet.att.net)    Web site: <http://www.powermatic.com>

# THE BEST TOOL IN THE JOINT.



Dual rack-and-pinion fence ensures blade and fence are always parallel, for accurate joints every time

Integral, one-piece fence is adjustable and tilts from 0° to 90° requiring no extra parts

6.5 amp, 10,000 rpm motor provides power for the hardest woods

Preset depth stops for all common biscuit sizes

45° locating notch in fence allows indexing off the outside surface of a mitered joint

Non-marring, heavy-duty aluminum shoe allows joiner to be clamped for stationary work

Retractable, anti-slip pins help hold work in place

Only the **DEWALT DW682K HEAVY-DUTY PLATE JOINER** makes it easy to construct a variety of accurate joints. The dual rack-and-pinion fence control guarantees precise vertical adjustments and precise fence alignments. And, for making cuts at any angle, the integral, adjustable fence tilts from 0° to 90°, then locks in place for unparalleled accuracy. Flush cuts can be made at 0° without removing the fence. Together, these advances ensure accurate joints every time. The DEWALT plate joiner also is easy to use and control, thanks in part to the ergonomically designed barrel grip and the extra-wide paddle switch. Because it's so versatile, it can be positioned on the inside or the outside face of a mitered joint. For precision that can't be beat, choose DEWALT. It's built into every one of our plate joiners. Guaranteed Tough.™

For more information, call 1-800-4 DEWALT or visit our web site at [www.dewalt.com](http://www.dewalt.com).

READER SERVICE NO. 210

**DEWALT**  
High Performance Industrial Tools

Makes an EXCELLENT GIFT



### AIRMATE 3

- 8 HR Rechargeable battery
- Continuous flow of filtered air
- Accommodates glasses/beards with pivoting impact resistant visor.
- Battery charger included with each unit.

Ernie Conover recommends the Airmate for safe comfortable wood-turning. As seen in *Fine Woodworking* Dec. 97, p66

Excellent for all woodworking jobs which create dust. Visit our web site! [www.mid-web.com/airware](http://www.mid-web.com/airware)

Call for FREE Info 1-800-328-1792

Includes 20 years experience RACAL HEALTH & SAFETY  
Free shipping selling only →

**AIRWARE AMERICA**

Box 975, Elbow Lake, MN 56531

READER SERVICE NO. 148

### Measure Once, Cut Thousands!

ShopBot's New Personal Robotic Systems



The WorkShop RoBot

PR96 System: 4'x8'x7" **\$2995.00**

PR32 System: 32"x32"x7" **\$3995.00**

Make furniture, cabinets, boats, signs, 3D carvings, crafts, and much more!

A New Generation of Computer Controlled Tools  
ShopBot Tools, Inc. ■ Durham NC  
**888-680-4466**

Check our website at [www.ShopBotTools.com](http://www.ShopBotTools.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 125

### Groff & Groff Lumber

formerly Groff & Hearne Lumber, Inc.  
Exceptionally Fine Furniture & Instrument Grade Woods

PREMIUM WALNUT, CHERRY, CURLY CHERRY, BIRDSEYE AND TIGER MAPLE  
Sawmill Direct • Slabs to 40" Wide  
75+ Unusual Native & Imported Species  
Matching Flitches • Burls & Turning Blocks  
Order 75 Domestic and Imported Species 4/4-16/4  
No Order Too Large or Too Small

858 Scotland Road, Quarryville, PA 17566  
**1-800-342-0001**  
(717) 284-0001 • Fax (717) 284-2400

National & International Shipping

READER SERVICE NO. 106

### Finest Quality Reproduction Brass and Iron Hardware

Since 1932, BALL AND BALL has been manufacturing the finest quality antique reproduction furniture hardware, builders hardware, lighting fixtures, and fireplace accessories available. Call for our 108-page catalog, available for \$7.00 (catalog cost refunded on first order).



Ball and Ball  
463 W. Lincoln Highway  
Exton, PA 19341  
Phone: 610-363-7330 • Fax: 610-363-7639  
Orders: 1-800-257-3711  
Visit our website - [www.ballandball-us.com](http://www.ballandball-us.com)

READER SERVICE NO. 71

### Fine Woodworking Attention Retailers

Make Money Selling Magazines, Books & Videos

To carry *Fine Woodworking* magazine, books and videos in your store, just write or call 1-800-283-7252 and ask for trade customer service. Find out how easy it is to set up an account directly with us — no risk, no hassles, attractive terms.

The Taunton Press, 63 South Main Street,  
P.O. Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506


### THE SATISFACTION OF A JOB WELL DONE BEGINS WITH THE RIGHT TOOLS.

#### DELMHORST.

The world's finest wood moisture meters.

Before you pick up a drill, saw, or even a tape measure, consider this: Moisture content is the single most important factor affecting the quality of the wood you're using. Delmhorst wood moisture meters are your most effective tool for controlling moisture and attaining the quality level that you demand. Our meters have been used with confidence for over 50 years, by thousands of woodworkers like yourself. They're easy to use, affordable and, more importantly, they're reliable.

Trust the quality of your next project to Delmhorst.



**DELMHORST**  
Pinpointing moisture problems for over 50 years.  
Phone: 1-800-746-7342  
Fax: 1-973-334-2657  
Web site: [www.delmhorst.com](http://www.delmhorst.com)


READER SERVICE NO. 205

### FREE TOOL CATALOG!

Your Best Work Starts With Us...

With over 7,000 of the finest woodworking tools in the world, Woodcraft can help you work more efficiently and skillfully than ever. Call for your Free copy today.

**1-800-542-9115**  
[www.woodcraft.com](http://www.woodcraft.com)



**WOODCRAFT**  
Helping You Make Wood Work®

Visit one of our stores located nationwide! Call us for the store nearest you.

Proud sponsor of "The American Woodshop" hosted by Scott Phillips on PBS.

210 Wood County Ind. Park,  
Dept. 99WW01Q,  
PO Box 1686,  
Parkersburg, WV  
26102-1686

READER SERVICE NO. 33

DELTA TOOLS		
Model	Description	List Sale
31-750	New Bench Random Orbit Sander	199
28-150	NEW 9" Bench Band Saw	155
50-860	NEW 850 CFM Air Cleaner	239
31-695	6" Belt/9" Disc Sander	441
23-710	Sharpening Center	217
31-460	4" Belt/Disc Sander	198
40-560	16" var/spd Scroll Saw	230
40-540	16" var/spd Scroll Saw	249
11-990	12" Bench Drill Press	255
11-090	32" Radial Bench Drill Press	405
43-505	1/2" Bench Router/Shaper	398
22-540	12" Band Saw	259
28-195	10" Band Saw	390
22-560	12-1/2" Planer w/extra knives	329
36-865	Versa Feeder Stock Feeder	249
36-220	10" Compound Miter Saw	294
28-185	Bench Band Saw	213
36-240	10" Sliding Miter Saw	569
37-070	6" v/spd Bench Jointer	351
14-650	Hollow Chisel Mortiser	380
17-900	16-1/2" Floor Drill Press	490
17-920	NEW Mortise Chisel Kit	59
36-285	8-1/4" Builders Saw w/stand	268
34-555	Sliding Table	487
36-250	10" Slide Compound Saw	825
31-780	Oscillating Spindle Sander	253
31-780K31-780 w/31-781 spindle set		209
46-700	12" Wood Lathe	575
40-650	Q3 18" Scroll Saw	389
36-905	30" Unifence	346
36-906	50" Unifence	444
36-444	10" Contractors Table Saw	579

The following tools have a \$50.00 rebate!  
 Price shown is before rebate.  
 Rebates valid thru 3/31/99.

36-455	10" Contractors Table Saw w/30" unifence, cast iron wing, 34-914 table board, & carbide blade	849
22-675	DC380 15" Planer	1175
28-275	14" Band Saw 3/4 HP	595
28-280	14" Band Saw 1 HP motor with enclosed stand	739
28-270	14" Band Saw 1 HP w/50-274 mobile base, 28-855 rip fence, & 28-266 block blocks	839
31-280	Sanding Center w/stand	789
37-190	6" Deluxe Jointer	603

**NEW Single Stage Dust Collectors**

50-850	1-1/2 HP, 1500 CFM	285
50-851	2 HP, 1500 CFM	489

MILWAUKEE TOOLS		
Model	Description	List Sale
6527	NEW Sawsall with case	343
6537-226527	w/quick lock blade change	224
0407-22127	Drill w/kylis chuck&2 batt380	175
0224-1	3/8" Drill 4.5 amp magnum	236
0234-6	1/2" Drill 4.5A mag 0-850 rpm255	134
0235-1	1/2" Drill w/keyless chuck	255
0244-1	1/2" Drill 4.5A mag 0-600 rpm255	134
0222-1	3/8" Drill 3.5 amp 0-1000 rpm213	119
0228-6	3/8" Drill 3.5 amp 0-1000 rpm207	109
0375-1	3/8" close quarter Drill	255
0379-1	1/2" close quarter Drill	288
6546-6	Screwdriver 200 & 400 rpm.150	89
6547-6	6546-6 w/bits, 1/4" chuck & cs185	108
5999-1	1/2" D-hdle Hammer Drill Kit356	219
5997-1	3/8" v/spd Hammer Drill Kit 275	145
5371-6	1/2" v/spd Hammer Drill Kit 360	194
3107-6	1/2" v/spd right angle Drill Kit411	234
6142	4-1/2" Grinder w/cse & acc.	224
6490-6	10" Miter Saw	496
6491-6	6490 w/ carbide blade & bag594	345
6494-6	10" Compound Miter Saw	585
6266-6	Top Handle Jig Saw	315
6496-6	10" Slide Compound Saw	1050

FREUD CARBIDE TIPPED SAW BLADES		
Item	Description	Teeth List Sale
LU72M010	Gen Pur. A.T.B.10"	60 49
LU82M010	Cut-off 10"	60 39
LU84M011	Comb 10"	50 78
LU85R010	Super Cut-off10"	80 115
LM72M010	Ripping 10"	24 69
LU73M010	Cut off 10"	60 84
LU87M010	Thin Kerf 10"	24 72
LU88M010	Thin Kerf 10"	60 88
LU98M010	Ultimate 10"	80 128
LU91M010	Compnd Mitr 10"	60 84
F410	Quiet Blade 10"	40 95
SD308	8" Dado - Carbide	230 119
SD508	8" carbide w/case & shims	344 172
FB100	16 piece Forstner Bit Set	338 194
94-100	5 pc. Router Bit Door System	320 169
FT200E	Plunge Router	380 189

HITACHI TOOLS		
Model	Description	List Sale
CF8F2	8-1/2" Slide Compound Saw	1169
C10F5	10" Slide Compound Saw	1627
C15FB	15" Miter Saw	1346
NV45AB	Coil Roofing Nailer	935
NT32AE	New Finer 5/8" - 1-1/4"	875
NT50AE	New Finer 3/4" - 2"	129
CI09A	NEW 10" Table Saw	632

MAKITA TOOLS		
Model	Description	List Sale
5090DW	3-3/8" Saw Kit 9.6 volt	280 155
DA391D	3/8 angle Drill 9.6V	166 114
DA391DW	1/2 angle Drill Kit 9.6V	341 175
ML902	Incandescent Flashlight 9.6V, 14.95	

NEW 18 VOLT MAKITA TOOLS		
Model	Description	List Sale
6095DW	9.6 volt Drill Kit w/2 batt.	125
6095DWLEZ	6095DWE w/flashlight.	139
632007-4	9.6 volt Battery	47
632002-4	7.2 volt Battery	39

CORDLESS DRILLS		
Model	Description	List Sale
W213	2.0 AMP HIGH CAPACITY BATTERIES WITH 20 AMP 12V 3/8" Drill Kit	325 169
6233DWAE	14.4V 3/8" Drill Kit	358 205

CORDLESS DRILLS		
Model	Description	List Sale
9900B	3"x21" Belt Sander w/bag	347 165
9924DB	3"x24" Belt Sander w/bag	360 169
N1900B	3-1/4" Planer with case	263 142
1912B	4-3/8" Planer	352 205
N9514B	4" Disc Grinder 4.6 amp	118 65
DA3000R3/8"	Angle Drill	355 185
2708W	8-1/4" Table Saw	637 295
6405	3/8" Drill Rev. 0-2100 rpm.	115 59
6013BR	1/2" Drill Rev. 6 amp	270 158
9401	4" x 24" Belt Sander w/bag	458 219
5007NBK7-1/4"	Circ Saw w/ case	250 125
LS1011	10" Slide Compound Saw	995 429
LS1211	12" Slide Compound Saw	1620 695
3901	Plate Joiner Kit	376 159
3612C	3 HP Plunge Router	492 249
LS1040	10" Compound Miter Saw	460 259
LS1013	10" Dual Compound Slide Miter Saw	1088 599
BO5010	5" Random Orbit Sander	142 72
LS1220	NEW 12" Compound Miter Saw	379
9227C	NEW 7 1/2" Polisher	350 195
SJ401	NEW 16" Bench Scroll Saw	300 175
2702	NEW 8-1/4" Table Saw	299
2703	NEW 10" Table Saw	319

SENCO AIR NAILERS		
Model	Description	List Sale
FN1	Finishing Nailer 1 - 2" w/ cs448	225
SN325	Nailer 1-7/8 - 3-1/4"	665 365
SLP20	Pinner w/cs 5/8 - 1-5/8"	422 185
SKS	Stapler 5/8 - 1-1/2"	390 245
SN70	Framing -Clip Hd 2 - 3-1/2"	725 449
SN65	Framing -Full Hd 2 - 3-1/2"	709 379
SN600	NEW Framing 2 - 3-1/2"	699 369
SNF40	Finish Nailer 1-1/4 - 2-1/2"	569 319

NEW Accushot Nailers by SENCO		
Model	Description	List Sale
A100LS	Finish Stapler 1/2" - 1"	180 119
A150LS	Finish Stapler 1/2" - 1-1/2"	220 149
A125BN	Brad Nailer 5/8" - 1-1/4"	160 99
A200BN	Brad Nailer 5/8" - 2"	215 139

BOSTITCH AIR NAILERS		
Model	Description	List Sale
N805-1	Stick Nailer	325
RN45	Coil Roof Nailer 3/4 - 1-3/4"	359
N60FN-2K	Finishing Nailer w/ case	557 269
BT35-2K	Brad Tacker 5/8" - 1-3/8"	279 125
MIIF5	Flooring Stapler 15 gauge	902 529
S32SX-1K	Finish Stapler 1/2" - 1-3/8" with case & oil	269 145

JORGENSEN ADJUSTABLE HANDSCREWS		
Item#	Length	Capacity List Sale of 6
#0	4-1/2"	20.35 12.50 66.95
#1	6"	23.30 12.90 71.95
#2	8-1/2"	26.75 14.90 83.95
#3	14"	33.95 18.55 105.75

PONY CLAMP FIXTURES		
Model	Description	List Sale of 12
50	3/4" Black Pipe	15.45 8.50 92.50
52	1/2" Black Pipe	12.65 6.95 74.95

PANASONIC CORDLESS		
Model	Description	List Sale
EY6100FQKW	12V 3/8" Drill kit w/ 2 Ironman batteries, 15 min. charger, & case	379 179
EY6230FQKW	NEW 15.6V Drill Kit with 2 Ironman batteries, 30 minute charger & case	425 209
EY3503FQKW	5-3/8" 12V Wood Cutting Circular Saw Kit	500 259
EYC001	EY6100FQKW drill, EY3503FQW saw, 2 batteries, 15 minute charger, and case	585 315

BIESEMEYER FENCES		
Model	Description	List Sale
B-50	50' Commer. Saw	443 325
T-SQUARE 52	52' Homeshop	360 275
T-SQUARE 40	40' Homeshop	335 255
T-SQUARE 28	28' Homeshop	325 245

AIRY AIR NAILERS		
Model	Description	List Sale
0241SK	Brad Nailer 3/8" - 1-9/16"	180 98
0626SK	1/4" Crown Stapler 3/8" - 1" 194	98

STABILA LEVELS		
Model	Description	List Sale
25010	10" die cast Torpedo Level	43 19
24640	24" Level w/ hand holes	62.20 43
24670	48" Level w/ hand holes	79.70 58

0241/0626		
Model	Description	List Sale
0241	Brad Nailer, 0626 Stapler, case, fasteners, oil, & wrenches	129.95

**1999 TOOL CATALOG AVAILABLE**  
 Call Toll-Free 1-800-328-0457 in Minn. call (651)224-4859  
 FAX: (651)224-8263 • www.7cornershdw.com  
 CHECK • MONEY ORDER • VISA • MASTERCARD • DISCOVER  
**SEVEN CORNERS ACE HDW, Inc.**  
 216 West 7th St. • St. Paul, MN 55102 • Est. 1933

\*\*\*\*\*  
**We are one of the last mail order companies to provide FREE FREIGHT!**

**Order with confidence from Tools On Sale™.**

**There are no hidden charges.**

\*\*\*\*\*

**TOOLS ON SALE**  
 AMERICA'S LOWEST PRICED TOOLS  
 FREE FREIGHT TO THE 48 CONTINENTAL STATES ON EVERY ITEM  
 PRICES SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE

DEWALT TOOLS		
Model	Description	List Sale
DW309K	Recipro Saw 10 amp	318 175
DW378K	7-1/4" Framers Saw	210 169
DW222	3/8" Drill, 0-1200rpm	184 99
DW231	1/2" Drill, 0-850 rpm, 7.0 amp	240 129

DW236	1/2" Drill, 0-850 rpm, 7.8 amp with keyless chuck	264 149
DW124K	1/2" right angle Drill	590 329
DW321K	Top Handle Jigsaw Kit	300 164
DW364	7-1/4" Circ. Saw w/brake	294 162
DW610	1-1/2 HP 2 handle Router	266 149
DW411K	1/4 sheet Palm Sander w/cse&8	58
DW682K	Biscuit Joiner with case	448 189
DW705	12" Compound Miter Saw	734 359
DW621	2" HP Plunge Router	400 218

DW621 cases with Free DW6956 line height adjuster!		
Model	Description	List Sale
DW675K	3-1/8" Planer with case	292 164
DW677K	3-1/4" Planer w/ case	268 155
DW431	3 x 21 v/spd Belt Sander	338 188
DW421	5" Palm Xtr. Rand. Sander	144 74
DW423	Palmgrip Random Orbit Sander - variable speed	170 94

DW421 & DW423 come with Free DW4317 case!

DW673K	Laminated Trimmer Kit	364 188
DW272	Drywall Gun, 0-4000, 6.3 amp	160 95
DW276	Drywall Gun, 0-2500, 6.5 amp	160 95
DW935K	14.4V 5-3/8" Trim Saw Kit	444 237

DEWALT CORDLESS DRILLS		
Model	Description	List Sale
DW952K	2 3/8" v/spd w/ two 9.6V XR batteries	284 129
DW972K	2 3/8" variable speed w/ two 12V XR batteries	362 184
DW972KQ	2 Above drill kit with 15 minute charger	229
DW991K	2 3/8" variable speed w/ two 14.4V XR batteries	415 209
DW991KQ	2 Above drill kit with 15 minute charger	245
DW994K	1 1/2" variable speed w/ one 14.4V XR batteries	458 239

Above drill kits come w/ charger & steel case!

DW991KS-2	DW991K drill, DW935 trim saw, 2 XR batteries & case	345
-----------	---	-----

DEWALT 18 VOLT CORDLESS TOOLS		
Model	Description	List Sale
DW938K	Recipro Saw Kit	520 269
DW995K	1/2" Drill Kit w/ 1 battery	428 229
DW995K-2	1/2" Drill Kit w/ 2 batt.	546 249
DW997K	1/2" Drill/Hammer Drill Kit	454 249
DW936K	5-3/8" Saw Kit	458 249
DW995KS-2	DW995K Drill, DW936 Saw and case	385
DW991KC-2	DW991K 14.4V drill kit, DW937 14.4V reciproc saw, & case	375
DW995KC-2	DW995K 18V drill kit, DW938 18V reciproc saw, & case	395
DW997KC-2	DW997K 18V drill kit, DW938 18V reciproc saw, & case	419

**RAZOR SAW**  
It cuts FASTER! EASIER! MORE ACCURATELY!

Order now, only \$24.95 post paid!

Craftsmen around the world have discovered the secret of better quality work. The Razor Saw cuts by pulling, and will give a cleaner, more accurate cut in half the time.

Purchase a RAZOR SAW now and we will include our 72 page catalog of the world's finest woodworking tools. Or send \$3.00 for a two year subscription to our Catalog.

**The Best handsaw for ALL woodworkers!**  
Dealer Inquiries Invited. Dept D2


**THE JAPAN WOODWORKER**  
1731 Clement Ave. • Alameda, CA 94501 • 1-800-537-7820

**Englo**  
Products Corporation

**MAX**  
NAILERS

**MATS**

EQUIPMENT CO., INC.  
1-888-426-4242  
51 Pierce Avenue  
West Carrollton, Ohio 45449



READER SERVICE NO. 100

**Dunham Hardwoods, Inc.**  
*Specializing in Red Oak*

Kiln Dried Exotics & Domestic;  
44 Species in various thicknesses & grades.

- All lumber is clear & selected for color. Surfaced & straight lined one edge.
- We supply only the best! We won't send you 2" or 3" widths or remanufactured lumber.
- Finishes, wood pegs, buttons, hardwood dowels, etc.
- Ship UPS or common carrier.

www.dunham-hardwoods.com  
**Call or Write For Free Information**  
Phone: 712-643-5320 3385 130th St.  
FAX: 712-643-2142 Dunlap, IA 51529

READER SERVICE NO. 189

**We Manufacture & Service**  
**SHAPER KNIVES**  
**MOULDER KNIVES**

Williams & Hussey Profile Knives

We now distribute **FREEBORN** Cutters

FOLEY BELSAW • MOULDER HEADS  
RBI & WOODMASTER KNIVES  
LOCK EDGE COLLARS  
ROSETTE CUTTERS  
CUSTOM ROUTERS & CUSTOM CUTTERS

Quick Turnaround Time  
Top Quality Products  
at Competitive Prices

**W. Moore Profiles LTD.**  
1 Commercial Drive,  
P.O. Box 752, Florida, NY 10921 **1-800-228-8151**

Serving the Industry for over 10 Years - Fax (914) 651-1097

READER SERVICE NO. 75

**SAND PRO**  
Affordable Downdraft Sanding Stations - *that really work!*

- Efficient dust removal at the source.
- Unique peg top allows use of jigs for sanding and assembly.
- Optional-add 1/8" thick PSA backed felt strips to top for superior performance.
- Breathing sanding dust is neither fun nor healthy, and no longer necessary.
- **Low Introductory Price...795.00** plus S&H

Give your lungs a break-call...

**SAND-MAN Products**  
800-265-2008  
(219) 674-5737 • Fax (219) 674-5758  
58335 Beehler Rd. • Osceola, IN 46561



READER SERVICE NO. 91

**The Kreg Jig**

"Cuts project time in half, eliminates the need for an expensive arsenal of clamps and is simple to use. The Kreg Jig outperformed its competition by a wide margin. It's worth the investment." Wood Magazine, Jan. 1995

**DISCOVER THE POCKET HOLE ADVANTAGE**

**THE POCKET HOLE PROFESSIONAL**  
Discover the pocket hole secret for yourself. 30 day trial. Order today! Free catalog!  
**800-447-8638**




READER SERVICE NO. 69

**FREE TOOL CATALOG**  
Helping You Become a Better Woodworker

**highland hardware**  
Our giant tool catalog gives more than just manufacturer's specs. We provide detailed tool descriptions, useful techniques, as well as a schedule of educational seminars.

Call Toll Free for Free Catalog  
**1-888-500-4466**

Visit us on the Internet at <http://www.highland-hardware.com>






READER SERVICE NO. 153

**You Need Tree City USA**

City trees add the soft touch of nature to our busy lives. Support Tree City USA where you live. For your free booklet, write: Tree City USA, The National Arbor Day Foundation, Nebraska City, NE 68410.

**The National Arbor Day Foundation**



# THE FASTEST FINEST FINISH.



## DW411

Heavy-Duty 1/4 Sheet  
Palm Grip Sander



## DW423

Heavy-Duty 5" Random Orbit Sander  
With Electronic Variable Speed



## DW431

Heavy-Duty 3" X 21" Electronic  
Variable Speed Belt Sander



## DW421

Heavy-Duty 5" Random Orbit Sander

Dust-sealed switch  
provides increased  
durability

2.0 amp motor operates at  
12,000 opm, providing  
maximum sanding speed  
for smooth finishes

Sealed, 100% ball-bearing  
construction delivers  
longer life

Dual-plane, counter-  
balanced fan reduces  
vibration and user fatigue

3/32 orbit diameter  
provides a tight  
orbital pattern for  
smooth finishes

The Controlled Finishing  
System™ maintains a  
controllable pad speed  
and minimizes gouging  
during startup

The family of **DEWALT HEAVY-DUTY SANDERS** was designed to produce the fastest, finest finishes possible, on all kinds of materials. Take the DW421 Heavy-Duty 5" Random Orbit Sander, which features the DEWALT-exclusive Controlled Finishing System™ to maintain pad speed and virtually eliminate gouging. Its 2 amp motor provides maximum sanding speed while being extremely comfortable to use. And, features like the dust-sealed switch contribute to longer tool life. If greater control is needed, there's the DW423 electronic, variable-speed sander. It has many of the same features, along with speeds that can be varied from 7,000 to 12,000 opm. For fine finishes, the DW411 orbital sander has a 2 amp motor and moves at 13,500 opm. And, for fast material removal, there's the DW431 belt sander. Its compact, light-weight design permits use in tight spaces or on vertical surfaces. So choose the best sander for the job. Choose DEWALT. Guaranteed Tough.™

For more information, call 1-800-4 DEWALT or visit our web site at [www.dewalt.com](http://www.dewalt.com).

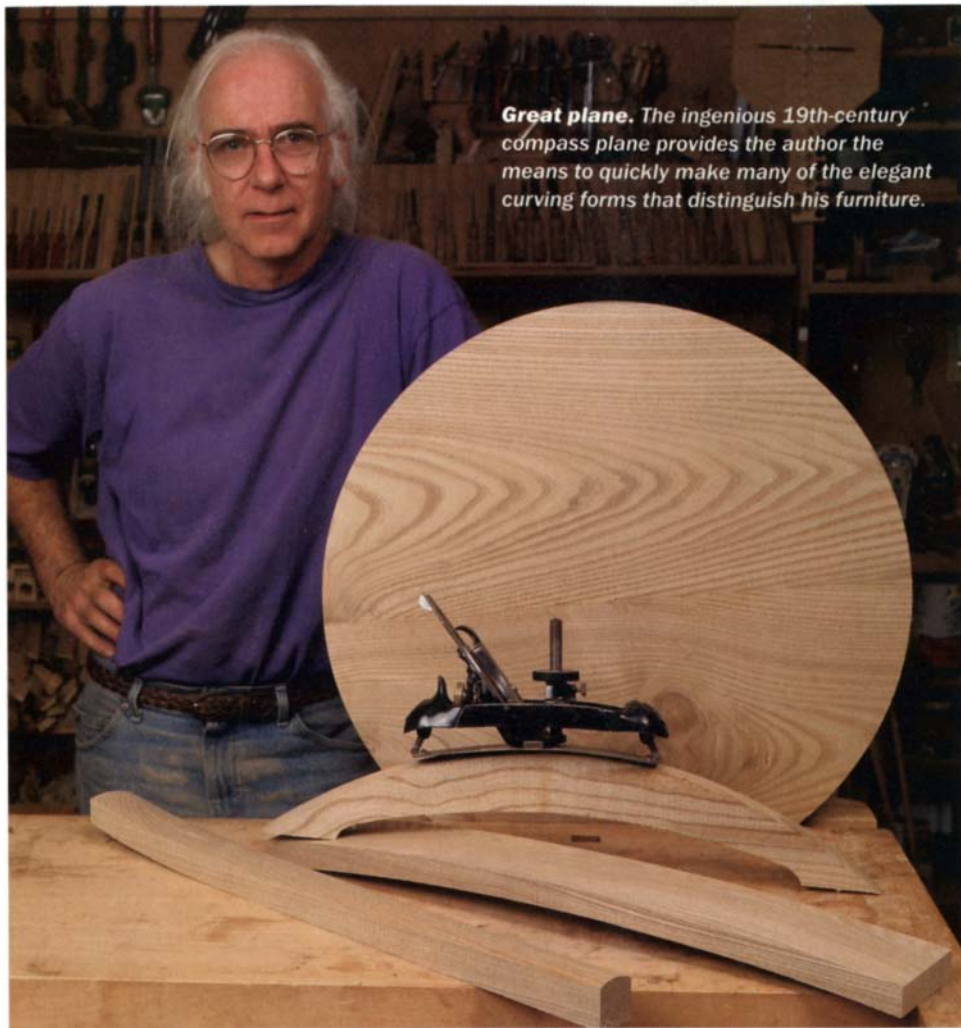
READER SERVICE NO. 211



# Master Class

## Great shapes—without a shaper

BY HANK GILPIN

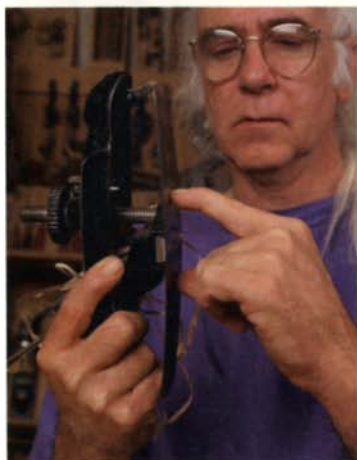


**Great plane.** The ingenious 19th-century compass plane provides the author the means to quickly make many of the elegant curving forms that distinguish his furniture.

As our sawdusty world races inexorably toward a future filled with computerized machines, let me reintroduce a rather interesting old hand tool—the compass plane. Designed more than a century ago and originally intended to replace the myriad planes required in the wheelwright's trade, the compass plane is not used much anymore. You can still find new ones in tool catalogs and old ones through tool dealers and flea markets, but my guess is that after they change hands they mostly sit on a shelf again. That's a pity, because using a compass plane is a wonderfully engaging experience, one that rewards a certain degree of skill with access to an astonishing array of beautiful curving forms.

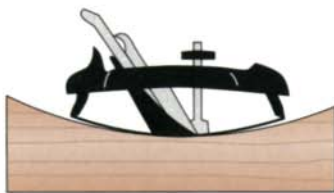
To me, the attraction of the compass plane is practical. It gives me the freedom to create shapes quickly that could be produced on a machine only with elaborate jiggling and setups. But it is also plain fun. I love whaling away on a curved piece of wood with the plane, watching the shavings curl off the tool and piling up like ribbon candy.

The shaping can be simple—like a concave drawer front—or quite complex—like a tapered,



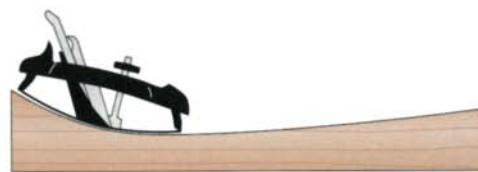
### SETTING THE SOLE

**It rides on this much.** More of a shaping tool than a finishing tool, the compass plane is like a spoke-shave—in use, the blade and only the center section of the sole contact the work.



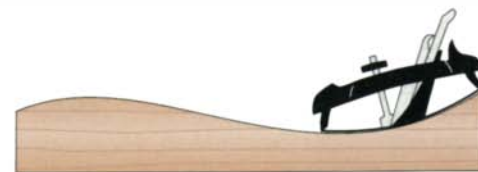
#### TRUE-RADIUS CURVE

Whether the curve is concave or convex, set the sole so that both ends are just off the surface.



#### CHANGING-RADIUS CURVE

Set the sole to the tightest point in the curve.



#### CABRIOLE CURVE

Set the sole to the tightest concave curve.

Pink Ivory  
Dagame  
Brazilian Rosewood  
Pear  
Plum  
Burls  
Snakewood  
Bubinga  
Koa  
Satinwood  
Cocobolo  
Padauk  
Rosewood  
Bloodwood  
Ziricote  
Purpleheart  
C. Ebony  
Pau Rosa  
Camphor  
"It's a matter of pride for both of us"

## Quality Exotic Wood

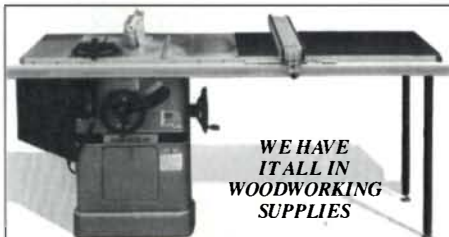
»TURNERS«  
Thick Planks for Bowls/Squares  
»CABINET MAKERS«  
Individually Selected Lumber  
for  
Furniture / Boxes / Inlays  
Over 70 Species

All Inquiries Welcome...Call or Write  
The Berea Hardwoods Co.  
125 Jacqueline Drive • Berea, Ohio 44017  
P 440-243-4452 F 440-234-7958

Pernambuco  
Mac. Ebony  
E.I. Rosewood  
Bocote  
Curly Maple  
Quilted Maple  
African Ebony  
Zebrano  
Lacewood  
Lignum Vitae  
Osage  
Tulipwood  
Blackwood  
Mahogany  
Jelutong  
Holly  
Wenge  
Goncalo Alves  
Many More...

"It's a matter of pride for both of us"

READER SERVICE NO. 188



WE HAVE  
IT ALL IN  
WOODWORKING  
SUPPLIES

### POWERMATIC™ III WOODWORKER'S DEPOT, INC.

3001 RAMADA WAY, GREEN BAY, WI 54304  
1-800-891-9003 FAX (920) 336-8683  
www.woodworkersdepot.com  
PROFESSIONAL QUALITY AT WAREHOUSE PRICES

READER SERVICE NO. 72

# CMT

MADE IN ITALY



## Profit on wheels!



Our molder  
will make  
your  
custom  
work...

### ...customarily profitable!

For over 40 years the USA made W&H Molder has been a wise investment for woodshop owners. Find out more about this quality machine!

TURN THIS...INTO THIS...



...INTO \$\$\$!



Williams & Hussey  
Machine Co., Inc.

PO Box 1149 • Wilton, NH 03086  
1-800-258-1380(USA)  
603-654-6828 fax: 603-654-5446  
Visit us on-line at: williamsnhussey.com



READER SERVICE NO. 74

## The Only Time Tested Proven Polyurethane

Longest Shelf Life & Working Time  
Waterproof • Shortest Cure Time • Solvent Free  
Bonds Wood, Stone, Metal, Ceramics, Plastics, & More

Now At Your Local Hardware/Home Center  
If not, tell the big ape who runs the place to get it for you.

A portion of every sale of Gorilla Glue has been and always will be donated to The Gorilla Foundation.

1-800-966-3458 24 Hour • 1-888-367-4583 Trade Direct  
The Gorilla Group • 122 Powers Ave., Santa Barbara CA 93103

ORIGINAL FORMULA • ENVIRONMENT FRIENDLY

READER SERVICE NO. 18

A perfect gloss...  
A perfect Oxford finish.

TARGET  
P.O. Box 1582  
Rutherford, NJ 07070  
800-752-9922 • 201-804-0993  
www.targetcoatings.com

READER SERVICE NO. 67

## FESTO TOOLTECHNIC

MADE IN GERMANY

FESTO RO-150 Rotex  
Random orbit and  
eccentric sanding,  
from rough to  
fine sanding  
to polishing  
all in one tool.

Call for Full Catalog 1-888-337-8600  
www.toolguide.net

Sophisticated Guide System  
Uniquely Quiet • Dust Extraction

TOOLGUIDE CORPORATION

SOLE DISTRIBUTOR FOR FESTO TOOLTECHNIC

READER SERVICE NO. 34



**A little more sole.** For cutting a true radius like this round tabletop, the compass plane is set very close to the radius of the circle and rides on more of the sole.



*Cut from flat grain toward end grain.*

**Crowning moment.** To achieve a crowned cross section on the top of the foot, the author starts by fairing the curve and then cuts a series of facets along it that he blends smoothly into an arc.



curving leg of changing oval section. I can work slowly with precision or attack with wild abandon. The pleasure of using this tool and the beauty of what it can produce is enough to make me sneak shapes that require it into nearly every piece I design.

The compass plane (also known as a circular plane) is essentially a bench plane with a veneer-thin flexible sole. A screw mechanism allows you to adjust the sole inward or outward to cut convex or concave shapes. The compass plane's blade is held in place with the same type of frog and cap iron assembly found on a bench plane, and blade adjustment and blade sharpening are also the same as with a bench plane. In use, however, the compass plane operates more like a spokeshave, with only its blade and a narrow band of the sole contacting the work. And like the spokeshave, the compass plane is more properly a shaping tool than a finishing tool. In certain woods and situations, you can get the compass plane to produce a fine finished surface, but its real strength lies in producing and fairing the curved shapes, not in finishing them.

Whatever I am making—chairs, tables, chests or just some free-form shape—I begin by laying out the curves. Then I cut quite carefully on the bandsaw, leaving the pencil line. Accurate bandsawing is critical. The compass plane does not do well trying to compensate for a poorly sawn line. It will tend to follow whatever wavers you make with the bandsaw. The better you bandsaw, the easier you'll find it to use the compass plane and to achieve the clean line you drew. Once I'm through with the bandsaw, however, I don't use the pencil line; I plane by eye, fairing and smoothing the curves by look and feel. Any joinery near or along the curved part is generally cut before the curves are bandsawn.

If I am cutting a true arc—a round tabletop, for instance—I set the sole of the plane a shade flatter than the curve I'm after and begin cutting. I'll shape a round top in quadrants, beginning on flat grain and planing downhill to end grain. When one section is done, I reclamp the piece and shape an adjacent quadrant. I generally start shaping a workpiece with a moderate cut and then pull

# No Splintering, No Tearout, Life-Long Performance.

Made & Serviced in AMERICA

## Now That's Precious Metal.

FREE SHIPPING  
1-800-733-7111  
through 4-30-99

A quarter of a million satisfied woodworkers agree: the Forrest Woodworker II blade is worth its weight in gold. Maybe more. And it doesn't take a jeweler to see why. It rips through thick hardwoods with no scratches or tearouts. Miters and cross-cuts with flawless precision. It makes short work of one-sided laminates and splintery oak plywoods . . . flawlessly. In short there are saw blades . . . and there are Forrest blades.



carbide, combined with the low breaking point of C-2 carbide, creates a tooth that's as permanently tough as it is sharp. Once that tooth is hand-brazed to the plate, the blade is hand-straightened to a perfect flatness—and an astonishing  $\pm .001$ " runout for peak performance.

Sawing is believing. Prove it to yourself—completely without risk! Call today—(800) 733-7111—for your chance to try a premium Woodworker II blade or any other Forrest blade in your own shop.

Here's why. The hardness of C-4

### FORREST WOODWORKER II: 6"-14" dia. avail.

All-purpose—tablesaws and portable circular saws. Special 10% Discount! Take 20% off second blade of your choice.

	Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	20% Off Second Blade
10" x 30 T (1/8" or 3/32" K)	<del>\$99</del>	\$89	\$79
10" x 40 T (1/8" or 3/32" K)	<del>\$119</del>	\$107	\$95
12" x 40 T	<del>\$129</del>	\$116	\$103
8" or 8 1/4" x 40 T	<del>\$99</del>	\$89	\$79
7 1/4" x 30 T	<del>\$69</del>	\$62	\$55



### BLADE STIFFENER

Make all your blades cut better and quieter with a blade stiffener!

• 4"...\$21 • 5"...\$24 • 6"...\$25

### FORREST DADO-KING: 6"-12"

Unmatched Precision on Every Dado Cut!

The Forrest Dado-King gives you flat-bottomed grooves and no splintering—even when crosscutting oak plys and melamine. This award-winning set comes with six 4-tooth chippers (including 3/32" chipper), two 24-tooth outside blades plus shims. Cuts 1/8" to 29/32" grooves.



	Sale Price	10% Off First Dado	15% Off Second Dado
6" set	<del>\$269</del>	\$242	\$229
8" set	<del>\$269</del>	\$260	\$245
10" set	<del>\$349</del>	\$314	\$297

### WOODWORKER I: 7 1/4"-14" dia. avail.

Designed for radial arm or tablesaws—fine crosscut.

	Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	20% Off Second Blade
8", 8 1/4", 7 1/4" x 60 Tooth	<del>\$109</del>	\$98	\$87
10" x 60 Tooth	<del>\$129</del>	\$116	\$103
12" x 60 Tooth	<del>\$139</del>	\$125	\$111

### DURALINE HI A/T: 7 1/4"-16" dia. avail.

Cuts melamine and plywoods perfectly. 220 mm & 300 mm available.

	Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	20% Off Second Blade
8", 7 1/4" & others available			
10" x 80 T (1/8" or 3/32" K)	<del>\$169</del>	\$143	\$127
12" x 80 T (1" hole, 1/8" K)	<del>\$181</del>	\$163	\$145

**FORREST**

FORREST MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.

457 River Road, Clifton, NJ 07014

Phone 800/733-7111 • In NJ, call 973/473-5236 • Fax 973/471-3333

2-4 Days Sharpening ON ALL MAKES OF CARBIDE BLADES

### CHOP MASTER BLADE: 6 1/2"-15" dia. avail.

Specially designed for sliding compound and miter saws.

	Sale Price	10% Off First Blade	20% Off Second Blade
8 1/4" x 60 T	<del>\$99</del>	\$89	\$79
8 1/2" x 60 T	<del>\$109</del>	\$98	\$87
10" x 80 T	<del>\$129</del>	\$116	\$103
12" x 80 T	<del>\$139</del>	\$125	\$111

### EXTRA BONUS! 9 AT \$5 EACH!

Buy a blade or dado and get \$45 worth of sharpening discount coupons from Forrest, good on any make blade or dado set you own.

For Info, Tech Help, or to Order, Call:

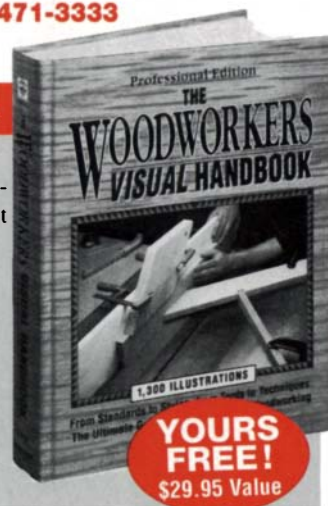
**1-800-733-7111**

973-473-5236 • Fax 973-471-3333

All Major Credit Cards Accepted  
FL, NJ, NY residents please add sales tax.

### EXCLUSIVE OFFER

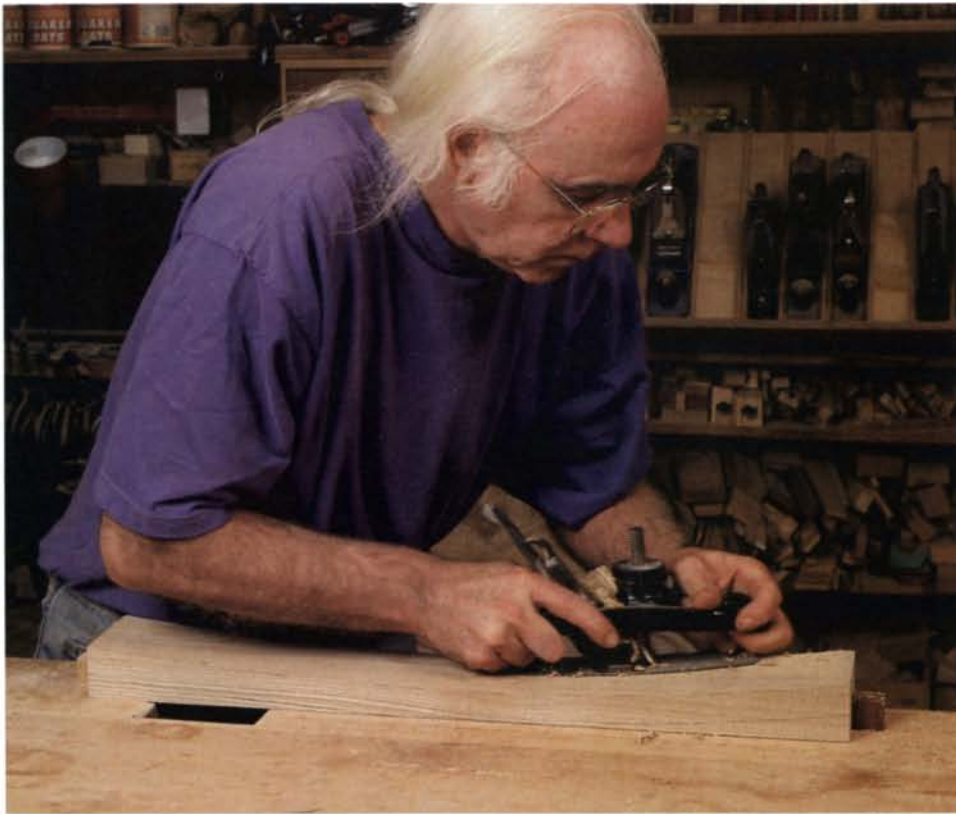
The ultimate step-by-step woodworking guide! This 438-page book retails for \$29.95 but is yours FREE with any saw blade or dado purchase from this ad. You must mention you saw this offer in *Fine Woodworking* magazine at time of purchase. Hurry! This special offer is limited while supplies last on orders placed by 4-30-99.



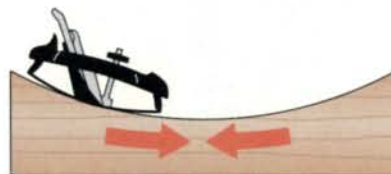
YOURS FREE!  
\$29.95 Value

### Unconditional Money-Back Guarantee

Use any of these blades for a month. If you are not completely satisfied, return the blade for a complete refund. No other blade company will make that kind of guarantee—because there's no other blade like a Forrest blade!



**Double-quick drawer front.** For the first fairing of the concave inside face of a drawer front, the author planes from one end to the other in spite of going uphill against the grain (above). Then he smooths out the surface with lighter cuts begun at either end and stopping in the middle (left).



Start final passes at the high points and end in the middle.



**He does it for fun.** Once you have the hang of it, the compass plane is a pure pleasure to use.

back to a fine cut with a lot of hard, downward pressure for the finish. I often leave the fine facets as the finished surface, but if necessary, I'll go back over the shape with scrapers or sandpaper to smooth it out.

Most of the forms or shapes I work, however, are not true arcs. Instead, the radius of the curve changes over the length of the piece. For such curves I obviously can't match the curve of the plane's sole to the curve of the piece. Instead, I set the sole to a radius that will permit it to negotiate any part of the curve. So, if I am planing a convex shape, I set the sole to a slightly flatter arc than the least curved section of the workpiece; for a concave shape, I set the sole to a slightly tighter arc than the most tightly curved section of the workpiece.

Even a workpiece with a reverse or cabriole curve, where one section curves inward and another outward, can often be shaped with the compass plane without changing the sole setting. I set it a bit tighter than the tightest concave curve on the piece and then cut the whole thing at that setting. It works surprisingly well that way, but the cabriole should be fairly gentle, and you should develop your skill on other shapes before trying this one.

Counterintuitively, a curved piece that is crowned in section (the shape of a hand-rail, for instance, or the foot shown on p. 116) is easier to make with a compass plane than a curved piece that is flat in section. That's because the crowned piece is made by cutting narrow facets and blending them into a crown. On the workpiece that is flat in section, you use the full width of the blade, which makes the cutting more difficult.

Although the compass plane works like a spokeshave, you have eminently more control. But it takes a bit of practice.

You must get into a rhythm with arms and body, so your hands feel the wood through the cutting of the plane. It is the balance you achieve with the plane that makes it cut cleanly—keeping the tool in a constant relationship to the wood even though the curve changes. You can gauge this balance by watching the shaving. An even, continuous curling is your goal.



# THE PERFECT EDGE.



**DW625**  
Heavy-Duty 3 HP  
VS Electronic Plunge Router

**DW610**  
Heavy-Duty 1-1/2 HP Router

**DW621**  
Heavy-Duty 2 HP  
Electronic Plunge Router

Exclusive, built-in dust-extraction column attaches to standard shop vacuum to remove 95% of dust

8' rubber cordset

100% ball-bearing construction

2 HP motor provides the power to make the most challenging cuts

Electronic, variable-speed motor runs at 8,000-24,000 rpm with constant speed under load to ensure a quality finish in all materials

Innovative, rubber-coated knobs have plunge-lock and on/off switch built in for maximum control

Rack-and-pinion, micro-fine depth adjuster provides fast and accurate depth settings

Spindle lock button allows one-wrench bit changes

1/4"-1/2" collet capacity for greater versatility

Converts from a fixed-base to a plunge router without extra parts or tools

Precision-machined, 3-position turret stop

The family of **DEWALT HEAVY-DUTY ROUTERS** is the industry standard. These routers provide the highest degrees of accuracy, durability and power you can buy, along with the most innovative features available. For example, the DW621 includes the industry's only built-in dust-collection system. It also can convert from a fixed-base to a plunge router without additional parts or tools. And, its 2-horsepower motor provides the power needed to cut a variety of materials. The DeWALT line also includes the DW625, which boasts 15 amps and a 3-horsepower motor. And our fixed-base router, the DW610, was a 1998 *Wood Magazine* Editors' Choice. So get the best of all worlds, and get a DeWALT heavy-duty router. Guaranteed Tough.™

For more information, call 1-800-4 DEWALT or visit our web site at [www.dewalt.com](http://www.dewalt.com).

READER SERVICE NO. 212





## Epilog

**High Performance Laser Cutting & Engraving Systems**

- Cut up to 1/2" thick hardwoods
- Mark any non-metallic material
- Engrave up to 1200 DPI
- Produce quick accurate inlays
- Prices starting at \$13,900
- See Epilog at IWF98 booth # 1W268

500 Corporate Circle Suite L  
Golden, Colorado 80401 U.S.A.  
1-888-4EPILOG Fax (303) 277-9669  
www.epiloglaser.com email: sales@epiloglaser.com

Visit us on the Web  
**Truwin**  
Louis Williams & Sons, Inc.

**YOUR #1 SOURCE FOR THE COMPLETE LINE OF MAKITA TOOLS, PARTS & ACCESSORIES**

Phone: 828-692-4226 Fax: 828-692-4344  
Toll free: 1-800-232-8216  
since 1928 701 7th Ave. East • Hendersonville, NC 28792

**THE ST. JAMES BAY TOOL CO.**

Norris Style Planes  
Finished or Castings  
Lutherie Planes  
45 & 55 Parts  
Squares & Bevels



122E Main St. Mesa Az 85201. (602)-835-1767  
800-574-2589

**OAKWOOD VENEER Co.**

- Specializing in exotic and burl wood veneer
- Flexible paper-backed wood veneer
- 75 species in stock • Sheet sizes up to 4' x 12'

**CALL FOR FREE SAMPLE!!**  
(800) 426-6018 • (248) 542-9979  
3642 W. 11 Mile, Berkley, MI 48072

**HARDWOOD ADVANTAGE PACKS!**

25ft 30-60" L. 4-10" W. \$25 to 13/16" clear 1 face  
Cherry \$87, RedOak or Maple \$84, Poplar \$63

**CALL 800-724-0132**

We pay most UPS shipping. Catalog \$1 (free with order)  
SHORT PACKS TOO - www.bristolvalley.com

BRISTOL VALLEY HARDWOODS  
4054 Rt 64 at Rt 20A Canandaigua NY 14424

**Domestic Figured Wood**


Finest Quality, all dimensions including Micro-cut to your specifications.

**(541) 327-1000**  
WEB PAGE ADDRESS  
http://www.nwtimber.com  
Satisfaction Guaranteed

Northwest Timber • Lewis Ind. Mfg.

**Finish Preserver**

When storing your fine finish, protect it from oxidation with **BLOXYGEN** and forget the skin, the clogs and the hassle. Sources & info available from IronWood Designs, P.O. Box 13838, San Luis Obispo, CA 93406. Phone or Fax (805) 542-9219. Visit us at <http://www.bloxygen.com>. See reviews in *Fine WoodWorking* #129, p. 96 and *Wood* #107, p. 78.



**THE Wart Hog CNC ROUTER**

So affordable. Should you wait to automate?  
Call (706) 375-2608  
Meet our clients at [www.glentekCNC.com](http://www.glentekCNC.com)  
Email: [info@glentekCNC.com](mailto:info@glentekCNC.com)

as low as **\$8,900.00**  
Manufactured by **glentek**

**Specializing in Bullet Resistant Composites**

**ArmorCore™**

**Features:**


- UL752 Compliant
- Levels I - IV
- Non-Ricocheting
- Non-Spalling
- Easy to Install
- N I J Compliant
- Lightweight
- Highest Quality
- Manufacture to Spec.

**Waco Composites, Inc.**  
481-A Texas Central Parkway • P.O. Box 21223 • Waco, Texas 76702-1223  
Phone (254) 776-8880 • Fax (254) 776-1424  
Member AIA, AGC, AIA, CSI • [www.armorcore.com](http://www.armorcore.com)

**WIDE SELECTION OF HARDWOODS**

Cherry, maple, curly, bird's-eye, walnut, oak, poplar. 3/4 to 12/4

**Turning Squares**  
**Quartersawn White Oak**  
**800-758-0950**  
P.O. Box 582, Buffalo, NY 14207  
<http://www.blueoxhardwoods.com>



**QUALITY ANTIQUE TOOLS**

THE CATALOGUE OF ANTIQUE TOOLS *Latest Edition!*

- More Than 3000 Tools PRICED AND AVAILABLE FOR SALE
- A Lasting Reference: 180 Pages of Photos & Commentary
- The First Choice for Woodworkers and Collectors
- All Items Photographed in Full Color & Carefully Described
- A Unique Publication: Nothing Else Even Comes Close!
- Still Only \$23.95 (Includes Shipping by 2-Day Priority Mail)

**BEST ANTIQUE TOOL WEB SITE: [www.mjdtools.com](http://www.mjdtools.com)**

- Photo Illustrated Lists Every Tuesday & Thursday at 1:00 p.m.
- Free Automated E-Mail Notice of New Lists by Request
- Visit Our Expanding Book Gallery on the Web

Free Catalog of Books About Tools & Traditional Crafts  
**MARTIN J. DONNELLY ANTIQUE TOOLS**  
P.O. Box 281 Bath, NY 14810 • (800) 869-0695 • VISA/MC

The **SAMPSON** Sawhorse

- No bolts, nuts, or poprivets
- No assembly required
- Heavy Duty
- Lightweight
- Foldable

Only **\$69.95/ set**  
price includes freight

CLARK'S MANUFACTURING, INC. **100% Satisfaction Guarantee**  
4230 Willow Oak Rd. • Mulberry, FL 33860 • (941) 425-5898 • Fax (941) 425-8391

**Hook & Loop Discs**

**Supergrit® Sandpaper**

4 1/2"	8 Hole	\$12.00/50
5"	5 or 8 Hole	\$12.50/50
6"	6 or 8 Hole	\$17.50/50

<b>BELTS - A.O. RESIN</b>	<b>SHEETS 9" x 11" A.O.</b>
1 x 42 \$ .75 ea	4 x 24 \$1.10
3 x 21 \$ .85	4 x 36 \$1.40
3 x 24 \$ .90	6 x 48 \$3.50
4 x 21 \$1.00	6 x 89 \$6.50

<b>ABRASIVE ROLLS "X" &amp; "J" CLOTH</b>	<b>FOAM SANDING PADS</b> \$15/24
3", 4", 4 1/2", 6" Wide	Grits 80, 120, 150, 180

**RED HILL CORP.** FREE CATALOG & Close-out sheets  
P.O. BOX 4234 [www.supergrit.com](http://www.supergrit.com)  
GETTYSBURG, PA 17325 **(800) 822-4003**

**PANEL SAWS AND PANEL ROUTERS**

- Quick change from cross-cut to rip
- Fully assembled and aligned
- Standard industrial-duty saw motor
- One-person operation
- Easy to use, quick setup

Building professional panel saws for over 35 years  
Safety Speed Cut Mfg. Co., Inc.,  
13480 Highway 85, Anoka, MN 55304  
1.800.599.1847 FAX 1.612.755.6080  
[www.panelsaw.com](http://www.panelsaw.com)



**LIBERON™ /star™ Supplies**  
for Finishing, Refinishing  
Touch-Up & Restoration

Carnauba & Beeswaxes  
BLACK BISON Cabinet Makers Wax  
Aniline Dyes, Stains, Lacquers  
Hide Glue, LIBERON™ Steel Wool  
HOT STUFF Instant Glues, Brushes  
**STAR** touch-up & repair supplies

P.O. Box 86, Mendocino, CA 95460  
ORDERS: 800-245-5611 • 707-937-0375 • [www.liberon.com](http://www.liberon.com)

**AQUA ♦ COTE** is the first water-based finish that sprays and polishes like a high grade lacquer!

- Available in Top Coats, Stains, Black & White, Toners, Glazes, Floor Finish.
- Can be brushed, wiped, sprayed or applied by automated machines.

**Atlantic Finishing Supply Co.**  
265 Center Grove Road, Randolph, NJ 07869  
ph 800-439-2172, 973-361-2172 fax 973-366-6274





**powered compass**  
Min. radius: 18" concave  
16" convex  
3" wide self indexing reversible carbide blades works as flat planer

chamfering planer \$299



**edge lipping planer** *Virtex*  
\$399 flush planning edge strips 2-1/4" wide, carbide blades for hardwood teflon non-scratch surface continuous adjustable cut depth 1/8" removal rate strong & sturdy 17 pounds, 1050 w 11,100 rpm

www.virutex.com\*800-868-9663\* FAX:212-989-1777

**TEAR-OUT FREE SYSTEM/SHELF PIN HOLES**  
in all materials - without multi-spindle equipment using your plunge router and the MEG boring guide.  
**STARTING AT \$98**  
32mm European System or Traditional 1" centers. See "Tool Forum" in *Fine Woodworking* #111, p.108.



phone/fax 609-587-7187  
9 John Lenhardt Road  
Hamilton Square, NJ 08690

**SELF-ADHESIVE 70% WOOL FELT**  
TAPES • STRIPS • TABS • DOTS

1-800-796-2333

APPROX. 1/16" & 1/8" THICK  
BROWN, GREEN, BLACK  
WHITE, AND SILVER GRAY

**UBAWN**  
PRODUCTS DIV.

9611 SOUTH COTTAGE GROVE AVE.  
CHICAGO, IL 60628  
773-735-2344 • FAX 773-735-2390



**FINE TOOL JOURNAL**

Quarterly magazine for the user & collector of hand tools. Articles on tool history, use, and preservation. Auction of hundreds of hard to find hand tools in every issue. Tool sales twice a year.

Subscription: \$27.00 one year or \$50.00 for 2 yrs, Canada, \$33.00 or \$62.00US Sample \$5.00

Fine Tool Journal  
Dept. FWW97  
27 Fickett Rd.,  
Pownal, ME 04069  
(800) 248-8114  
http://www.wowpages.com/ftj/ VISA/MC

A shop owner's reaction to seeing Adapa's back-saving Panel Handler being put through its paces... **AMAZING.**

**SHOPCARTS**

Call 1-888-255-2302  
to order or for a brochure of information

**World Timber Corp., Inc.**  
P.O. Box 219, Hubert, NC 28539  
e-mail: worldtimber@tcp1.com

**Foreign & Domestic  
WORLDWIDE  
HARDWOOD SPECIALISTS**

Warehouse  
578 Hubert Blvd. Phone: 910-326-6252  
Hubert, NC 28539 FAX: 910-326-6827

**FREE SHIPPING**

**EAGLE AMERICA**

As a special offer to the readers of *Fine Woodworking*, simply mention #FW699X\* and receive **FREE** shipping on your next order.

\*Offer Expires 6-99

**BUILT TOUGH USA**

"THE CATALOG FOR QUALITY MINDED WOODWORKERS"  
**1-800-872-2511**  
FREE catalogs upon request

**Sharpen Your Woodworking Skills**  
**The World's FASTEST Sharpener**  
It Professionally Sharpens Planes, Chisels, Awns... Anything!

Easy to use - convenient to store or carry  
Simple instructions included with this brand new product.

**SPEEDY SHARP™**  
Comes with a money back guarantee.  
\$9.95 Plus S&H \$3.50 To Order Call Toll Free:  
1-888-783-7785  
Or send money order to:  
**HANDY PRODUCTS**  
128 N. Main St. Box E • Thiensville, WI 53092



**Wood Carving Tools**  
Importers of Dastra Woodscrew Brand  
Professional Carving Tools from Germany  
available at  
**Frank Mittermeier, Inc.**  
call for your Free catalog  
1-800-360-3843  
fax 1-718-518-7233  
Website address www.FrankMittermeierInc.com

HSS BLADES FROM SHEFFIELD  
HANDLES BY AMERICAN CRAFTSMEN

**ROBERT LARSON**  
WOODTURNING TOOLS  
1-800-356-2195




**PENNSYLVANIA HARDWOODS\***  
WIDE & MATCHED LUMBER

- \* TIGER MAPLE - Widths to 18 in.+
- \* WALNUT - Eastern and Claro - Widths to 24 in.+
- \* CHERRY/FIGURED CHERRY - Widths to 22 in.+
- \* MAHOGANY - Furniture Grade Widths to 40 in.+

Large inventory 4/4 - 16/4+ • Plank Flooring  
P.O. Box 954, Wellsboro, PA 16901  
570-724-1895 FAX 570-724-1141

**HADDON LUMBERMAKER**



This low cost 4 lb. attachment turns any chain saw into a portable sawmill and accurate cutting tool. Lets you make good custom cut lumber from logs--RIGHT WHERE THE TREE FALLS! Pays for itself with the lumber from this first tree you cut. Out-performs other products many times its size and price! Call or write for a free brochure. To order call us with your credit card number or send \$69.95 + \$6.95 S&H to:  
**HADDON TOOL, INC., 1855 N POND LN, LAKE FOREST, IL 60045**  
1-888-705-1911 www.haddontools.com

**CUSTOM ROUTER BITS CUTTERS & KNIVES**  
2 Week or less delivery  
**RIDGE CARBIDE TOOL CO.**  
"Industry Leader in Custom Router Bits"

FAX us your custom drawings toll free at  
1-888-RCT-TOOL (728-8665) or  
Mail drawings or wood samples:

**RIDGE CARBIDE TOOL CO.**  
595 New York Ave., Dept. FW, Lyndhurst, NJ 07071  
Send \$3 for complete 100 page Stock Tool Catalog  
or see it at www.catalogcity.com  
**800-443-0992**

**DoveTail Template Master™**

**So Many Different Dovetails So little Money! New**



Router cut through, half blind, angled, variable spaced, box, and hinge joints for just \$39.95 (plus \$4 S&H).

Order yours today!  
**Stots Corporation • P.O. Box 257F**  
Harrods Creek, KY 40027  
Money back guarantee

**BANDROLLERS ARE A NEW ALL BALL BEARING GUIDE THAT EASILY REPLACES YOUR OLD METAL BLOCK GUIDES WITHOUT EXPENSIVE CONVERSION KITS.**



**\$58**

**14" BAND SAW OWNERS**

- USES MICRO PRECISION BALL BEARINGS
- IMPROVES BLADE LIFE & ACCURACY

WE CARRY OTHER BAND SAW ACCESSORIES AND LENOX PRO MASTER BAND SAW BLADES. CALL FOR CATALOG

**1-888-722-7078 ITURRA design**

**DOVETAILED DRAWERS**  
Reasonably priced method to distinguish your cabinets.

- Custom-sized width and depth
- 1/2" solid maple, assembled and sanded
- 2-coat catalyzed finish available
- Quick service, shipped UPS

**EAGLE WOODWORKING**  
1130 East Street, Tewksbury, MA 01876-1459  
FAX (978) 640-1501 (800) 628-4849

**AMERICA'S FINEST CLOCK KITS**

- Clock kits
- Hard to make parts
- Plans
- Movements, dials
- Hardware, glass
- Assembled clocks

**COLONIAL TIMES**

564 Weber St. N.  
Waterloo, ONT, Canada  
N2L-5C6  
(P) 519-884-2511 (F) 519-884-2512  
email: info@colonialtimes.com www.colonialtimes.com  
Send for your FREE 32 page catalog!

**OLD GROWTH**  
Quartersawn White & Red Oak  
Wide Quartersawn & Curly Sycamore  
Precision sawn figured lumber and bookmatched flitches

**TALARICO HARDWOODS**

610-775-0400  
RD#3, Box 3268  
Mohnton, PA 19540-9339  
VISA / MasterCard

**TRUE HAND-FORGED CHISELS, ADZES, SCORPS, SLICKS AND MORE...**  
"These chisels are a treat to look at, a pleasure to hold, but using them is the ultimate woodworking experience."  
Chris Becksvoort, Contributing Editor, *Fine Woodworking*

**BARR SPECIALTY TOOLS**  
For catalog phone 1-800-235-4452 fax 208-634-6337

**Free Hand Tool Catalog**

Affordable, Professional U.S. Made Edge Tools for the Wood Craftsman

Firmer Chisels  
Firmer Gouges  
Paring Chisels

Bent Parers  
Carving Tools  
Lathe Tools

**Diefenbacher Tools.**  
12332 Old Big Bend St. Louis, MO 63122

Toll Free 800-326-5316 Fax 314-966-4629

Interior/Exterior Builders - Household Hardware Handforged Cast Brass/Bronze Custom Creative Handforging Fireplace Tools/Accessories Repairs/Restoration/Reproduction VISA/ Furniture Hardware Recast Locks MC

FAX 828-665-8303 Catalogs \$5.00  
Kayne & Son Forged Hardware, Dept. FW  
100 Daniel Ridge Road, Candler, NC 28715, 828-667-8868



**A Source for Exotic Hardwoods, Featuring African Black Ebony**

930 Ashby Ave.  
Berkeley, CA 94710  
(510) 843-4390  
FAX 510-843-9378  
macbeath@worldnet.att.net

**MacBERTH HARDWOOD COMPANY**

**FREE booklet, Color Chart and Price list**  
Use **CORIAN®** for:  
Inlays, TOYS, PENS, boxes, cutting boards, lamps, jewelry, knife handles, carvings, window sills.

Art Specialties International, Inc.  
PO Box 215, Depew NY 14043  
1-800-724-4008



**D & D WOOD SUPPLY**  
P.O. Box 1471  
Cottonwood, CA 96022  
tel (530) 365-0478  
fax (530) 378-2392  
"free brochure"



**The Bartley Collection Ltd.**  
Fine Products for Fine Woodworkers  
Antique Reproduction Furniture Kits  
Chippendale, Queen Anne, Shaker & Mission Styles  
Try our famous Gel Stains & Gel Varnish  
Free Catalog (800) 787-2800



...introducing the **OSBORNE MITER GUIDE**  
Rock Solid!

A triangular configuration so stable it never needs adjusting. *It can't go out!!*

The most significant improvement in miter guide design in over 100 YEARS!

Dead Accurate! The steel guide bar actually expands to fit the slot perfectly!

SB-1 \$139.95  
EB-1 \$149.95  
EB-2 \$159.95

The Osborne Mfg. Company  
P O Box 97, Montoursville, PA. 17754  
717-368-1493 www.osbornemfg.com

- Turning Blanks • Burl Slabs • Pen Blanks •
- Figured Lumber • Thin Stock • Flooring •

\* Claro Walnut (burl & figured) \* Maple (burl & figured) \* Redwood (burl & curly) \* Yew Wood \* Myrtle (burl & figured) \* Quartersawn Sycamore \* English Walnut \* Cottonwood (burl & figured) \*

**Classic Cabinet Hardware**  
Quality, Value & Same Day Shipping  
Premier Source for Cabinet Makers & Restorers

76 Page Catalog \$4.00  
1-800-241-9741  
www.paxtonhardware.com

**PAXTON HARDWARE, LTD**  
PO Box 256, Dept FW11, Upper Falls, MD 21156

**Northern Hardwoods**  
A Mead Company

**Curly, BIRDSEYE, Flame**  
for the Craftsman and Woodworker

**Figured Woods**

From the Glacial Forests of Michigan's Upper Peninsula

P.O. Box 189 South Range Michigan 49963-0189  
Toll Free: (800) 285-TREE  
Phone: (906) 487-6400  
Fax: (906) 487-6415

VISA

http://www.northernhardwoods.com  
E-mail: sales@northernhardwoods.com

**THE TOOL CHEST** CRAFTSMAN LIBRARY CATALOG  
... for both the professional and amateur.

1000's OF BOOKS COVERING

- Woodworking - All Aspects • Home Remodeling & Maintenance
- Tools & Their Uses • Contracting • Projects For Home & Recreation


Please send \$2 for catalog, refundable with first order.  
THE TOOL CHEST • 45 Emerson Plaza East • Emerson, NJ 07630  
201-261-8665 1-800-617-TOOLS FAX: 201-261-3865  
FREE SHIPPING • ALL BOOK ORDERS OVER \$25.

**MORRIS CHAIR & FOOTSTOOL**

Introducing the finest plan on the market today! Pages of directions and 36 by 48 CAD generated plan. This comfortable chair has a 4 position back with wide bowed arms.  
Dim. - 34 inches wide by 40 inches high by 39 inches deep

**MORRIS CHAIR #182**

**AMERICAN FURNITURE DESIGN**  
P.O. BOX 100100 ESCONDIDO, CA 92030  
CHAIR PLAN \$19.95 +\$3.50 S&H  
CATALOG \$3.00  
760 743-6923



**WETZLER CLAMPS**  
THE PROFESSIONALS' CHOICE

MADE IN U.S.A.

P.O. BOX 175 PHOENIX: 800-451-1852  
MT. BETHEL, PA. 18343 FAX: 717-897-5891  
Visit our website: www.wetzler.com  
Email: wetzler@enter.net  
Free catalog available



**COMFORT WALL BEDS & CABINETS, INC.**  
 4625 N. MANHATTAN AVE., #E  
 TAMPA, FL 33614  
 (813) 872-7239 • FAX: (813) 877-8704  
**MANUFACTURER DIRECT**

**EASY Bed Mechanism Installation**

- Patented Mechanism Kit
- Fully Adjustable
- Complete Blueprints and
- Hardware Included
- Available in Twin, Full and Queen



Mod. 400  
With all Ensemble Parts

Please call or fax for additional information.



**certainlywood**

**FREE CATALOG**  
 Lowest Prices, Full Length  
 Large Selection  
 Exotic Hardwoods

(716) 655-0206  
 Fax: (716) 655-3446

13000 Rte. 78  
 East Aurora, NY 14052-9515

**America's Premier Source of  
 Hardwood Veneers  
 and Exotic Lumber**  
 www.certainlywood.com

*Our Wood Certainly Makes  
 A Difference*

**NORTHEND HARDWOODS**  
 Cabinet Hardwood Lumber and Plywood  
 Rough or Milled  
 Custom Millwork • Custom Doors  
 Flooring • Stair Parts  
**ALL MADE TO ORDER**  
 We Ship Any Amount - Anywhere  
 Lyndonville, Vermont  
**1-800-626-3275**

The **Inclinometer**  
 What's your angle?  
 The Inclinometer enables you to set it with  
 incredible precision. Snaps to your saw  
 blade or jointer fence with  
 powerful magnets. Includes  
 adjustable scales and  
 calibrating block. Right or left tilt.



For information call or write: Dept. FW  
**THE BEALL TOOL CO.**  
 541 Swans Road., N.E. • Newark, Ohio 43055  
 Toll Free 1-800-331-4718 • Fax: 1-740-345-5880  
 E-Mail Address: jrbeall@bealltool.com

*Semi-Annual Exotic*  
**HARDWOOD**  
**SAVE 25%-60%**  
**SALE!**  
**Mix or Match  
 for Your Best Price**

100 Board Feet  
 Your Best Buy!

Description	Save	20-	100-
PURPLE HEART	\$3.99	\$3.59	\$3.41
JATOPA (Brazilian Cherry)	\$3.99	\$3.59	\$3.41
AFRICAN PADUAK	\$6.74	\$6.07	\$5.76
MAHOGANY (8'-7" lengths)	\$3.99	\$3.59	\$3.41

**OVER 100 WOODS AVAILABLE**  
**800-423-2450**  
 www.woodworkerssource.com  
**YOUR SATISFACTION GUARANTEED!!**

**EXOTIC & DOMESTIC HARDWOODS**  
 LUMBER • PLYWOOD • VENEERS • TURNING BLOCKS • BURLS

**Wood-Ply Lumber Corp.**  
 100 Bennington Ave., Dept. FW  
 Freeport, NY 11520

We specialize in small to medium size orders!  
 Over 80 species of hardwood in stock.

**CALL FOR PRICE LIST:  
 800-354-9002  
 FAX 516-378-0345**

**An Education in Craftsmanship**

For careers in:

- CARPENTRY
- PRESERVATION CARPENTRY
- CABINET & FURNITURE MAKING
- PIANO TECHNOLOGY
- VIOLIN MAKING & RESTORATION

Financial aid for qualified students. Accredited member ACCSCT. Short workshops also offered.

**NORTH BENNET STREET SCHOOL**  
 39 North Bennet Street, Box A, Boston, MA 02113 (617) 227-0155

**The Woodworkers Dream**  
 Repair, Rebuild, Restore, Patch and Bond Wood.

**QUIKWOOD® Epoxy Stick**  
 888-4-fixwood • 888-434-9966 ext 2209  
 e-mail psi@polymerics.com • www.polymerics.com

**Free Brochure** *When Fillers or Glue Won't Do!*

**FREE SANDING BELTS**  
 BUY A DOZEN GET A DOZEN FREE

**FULL MONEY BACK GUARANTEE!! Call For Price Quotes • Orders • Free Catalog**

1x30 17.95/doz + 12 free	<b>FULL LINE OF 9x11 SHEETS</b>	All cloth belts
1x42 18.50/doz + 12 free	A/O or GARNET Cob. Paper	Aluminum Oxide
3x18 18.95/doz + 12 free	80-D \$25.00/c	Resin Bond w/direct
3x21 19.95/doz + 12 free	100-Cto 150-C 23.00/c	onal butt splice
3x24 21.95/doz + 12 free	180-Cto 220-C 21.00/c	ALSO AVAILABLE:
4x21 24.95/doz + 12 free	<b>Silicon Carbide Non-loading</b>	Stroke Sanding Belts;
4x24 25.95/doz + 12 free	80-8 30.50/c	Belt Cleaning Sticks;
4x36 35.95/doz + 12 free	100-8 to 150-8 26.50/c	Inflatable Drums and
6x-8 40.95/doz + 6 free	180-8 to 400-8 21.50/c	Sleeves; Cloth/Paper
6x89 66.95/doz + 6 free	S&C Wet/Dry and Cloth	Discs (PSA/Hook &
Grits available: 36X to 320X	Sheets - Call for Pricing	Loop) Drum Sanding

**INDUSTRIAL ABRASIVES CO.**  
 642 N. 8th St. Dept. FW  
 P.O. Box 14955  
 Reading, PA 19612


Please add \$5.00 S & H. PA Residents add 6% Sales Tax

• • • Money Orders • Checks  
**1-800-428-2222** Mon.-Fri. 9am-4:30pm EST  
 Fax: 1-610-378-4868 Anytime

**Quick-Fold™ Ingenuity!**

Woodworker's dream: lightweight sawhorse supports 1500 lbs. per pair, open & close 1 hand, tucks neatly away in just 2.5" width! The best sawhorse you'll ever use. UNCONDITIONAL 30-day money-back GUARANTEE. Pat Pending \$69.95 per pair + shipping, Check, Visa/MC. Call 802-674-2554.

**Quick-Fold™ Sawhorse Company**  
 28 River Street, PO Box 552 • Windsor, VT 05089 • Fax: 802-674-2571



**DESK TOP LEATHERS**



**ANDREW MUIRHEAD**  
 FINE SCOTTISH LEATHER

**WAREHOUSED & DISTRIBUTED BY  
 DCT HOLDINGS CORP.**  
 Call for free color card 1-800-469-2793

**Schreuder Isotol Varnish**  
 Discover the Dutch difference in varnish!

- Scratch-resistant
- Water-clear
- Matte, satin or gloss



Call 1-800-332-1556 for FREE catalog.  
 P.O. Box 419 Woodstock, VT 05091  
 http://www.fine-paints.com

**Good Hope Hardwoods, Inc.**  
 Fine Lumber - Personal Service

**Tiger Maple**  
 4/4 - 16/4 RWL & Matched Sets  
 Figured Cherry  
 Highly Figured Claro Walnut  
 Quarter Sawn White Oak  
 Plain Cherry and Walnut

**Plank Flooring**  
 (610) 274-8842  
 1627 New London Road  
 Landenberg, PA 19350

**BRING THE  
 OUTDOORS, INDOORS**



**MANUFACTURERS OF QUALITY  
 CABINET DOORS AND DRAWER FRONTS  
 SINCE 1980 • CUSTOMIZED TO FIT YOUR  
 CUSTOMER'S LIFESTYLE**  
 PHONE: 1-800-273-8600  
 FAX: 1-800-565-5019

**MASS BAY WOOD PRODUCTS, INC.**  
 145 Fisher Street P.O. Box 497 • Franklin, MA 02038

**WORKSHOP TOILET**  
**"SUN-MAR" - Composting Toilets**

- ODORLESS
- WATERLESS
- NO SEPTIC
- NO CHEMICALS

Recycle  
 Back To Nature!

**SUN-MAR CORP.**  
**1-800-461-2461**  
**FREE: 12 Page Color Catalog**  
 600 Main Street, Tonawanda, N.Y. 14150-0888 USA



**SAWMILL \$3795.**

**FREE INFORMATION**  
Norwood Sawmills  
90 Curtwright Dr., Unit 3  
Amherst, N. Y. 14221  
**1-800-661-7746**



**DOWELS - PLUGS - PEGS**

**MANUFACTURER DIRECT**  
Largest & finest selection Oak, Walnut, Hickory, Maple, Cherry, Mahogany, Teak, even Treated Dowels. Shaker pegs, spindles, plugs & toy parts. Quantity discounts • Longer lengths available

**MIDWEST DOWEL WORKS**  
4631 Hutchinson Road  
Cincinnati, Ohio 45248  
(513) 574-8488  
Catalog on requests



**BIRDSEYE MAPLE**

PRIME QUALITY BIRDSEYE MAPLE LUMBER & FLOORING  
THOUSANDS OF BOARD FEET • ALL THICKNESSES  
MANY UNUSUAL SPECIES IN STOCK

**RARE EARTH HARDWOODS** Tel: 800•968•0074  
Fax: 800•968•0094

**S. LaRose, Inc.**  
Worldwide Distributors to Horologists

World's largest supplier of clock parts and tools.  
Order your FREE catalog, #W2, today!  
P.O. Box 21208 • Greensboro, N.C. 27420

For assistance: Send E-mail to: SLAROSE@worldnet.att.net  
Phone (336) 621-1936

**The PECK TOOL Company** since 1929

Fine German & Japanese Hand Tools  
for the Discerning Woodworker



Please call for a FREE CATALOG!  
1.303.440.5480  
PO Box 4744 • Boulder, Colorado • 80306-4744

**Stain without Pain!** Indoor Pollution can be more severe than pollution outside your home. BioShield Finishes are there to lower interior and exterior air pollution. Designed to accommodate the requirements of the American builder, woodworker and furniture maker. Beyond all environmental aspects BioShield Finishes work great. They apply well, they look & smell good, and they last. Quality without compromise. For a FREE catalog on our Oilfinishes, Stains, Polishes Waxes, Citrus Thinners & Pigments please call or write:

**BioShield Finishing Catalog**  
1365 Rufina Circle Dept. 9802  
Santa Fe, NM 87505

**1-800-621-2591**  
E mail: Edesignco@aol.com

**WEST PENN HARDWOODS, INC.**

CHECK OUT OUR "BEST VALUE" ROUGH PACK  
100 BF, ROUGH, 3'-5" L, 3"-10" W, CLEAR 1-FACE,  
RED OAK \$200, CHERRY \$250, SOFT MAPLE \$170,  
WALNUT \$270, POPLAR \$135, ASH \$165  
NO MIN. ORDER • SMALLER PACKS AVAILABLE  
CALL FOR SHIPPING RATES  
FREE CATALOG 1-888-636-WOOD (9663)  
117 S. 4TH STREET, OLEAN, NY 14760

**"The Woodturners' Source"**

Call Toll Free for Catalog  
**1-800-683-8876**

**Packard WOODWORKS**

**Packard Woodworks**  
PO Box 718, Tryon, NC 28782  
Fax 704-859-5551 email: packardww@aol.com

**KREMER**  
HIDE GLUE PIGMENTS

Higher or equal strength than modern glues  
Reversible - great for antiques  
Easy to use and natural  
Premium Quality:  
240 - 250 Bloomgrams  
Product # 63010, 500 g bag \$ 7.50

**Kremer Pigments Inc.**  
228 Elizabeth Street  
New York NY 10012  
(212) 219 2394

**WOOD WORKING PLANS ON CD ROM**

Minimum of 4 projects on each CD Only \$19.95  
Provides permanent safe storage of plans (99) 683-1155 or write:  
Full color front, side, top, and cutting sheets Woodworking Plans  
Includes AVI movie clip of completed projects 4582 Rosewood Pl.  
Available for Windows PC Riverside, CA. 92506-1007  
www.woodworkingoncd.com

**FACTORY DIRECT**

**EXCALIBUR**  
A TOOL INC.

Industrial T-Slot Saw Fence 50" Rip  
Telescopic Blade Cover up to 80" Reach  
Companion Sliding Table 62" Cross Cut

**SAVE MORE!**

FOR COMPLETE INFORMATION  
**CALL**  
210 Eight Street N. Lewiston, NY 14092  
905-887-0863 www.excal-tools.com **1-800-387-9789**

**THE PRACTICAL LASER CUTTING AND ENGRAVING SYSTEMS...**

No other technology takes the work out of woodworking like a Universal Laser System.

- INTRICATE CUTTING
- DETAILED ENGRAVING
- PRODUCTIVITY
- REPEATABILITY
- LOW COST MACHINES FROM \$12,900

**UNIVERSAL LASER SYSTEMS INC.**  
16008 N. 81st St. Scottsdale, AZ 85260 Phone 800-859-7033  
or 602-483-1214 FAX 602-483-5620 www.ulsinc.com



**Kelly Tool Works Chariot Block Plane**

Plane features dovetail construction, rosewood inlaying and an adjustable mouth.

Price: \$115.00

Call or write for details regarding this and our other tools.  
P.O. Box 1813, Kernville, CA 93238 (760) 376-4804



**PLANE RECONDITIONING**

- Sole Honed Flat
- Frog Lapped In
- Bed Refinished
- Other Services

**EVANS PRECISION**  
2859 CENTRAL STREET  
EVANSTON, IL 60201  
847-864-6634 For Brochure of Services call or write



**WESTERN HARDWOODS**

**Highly Figured**  
**Turning Blanks, Burl, Lumber**

- Claro Walnut • Pacific Maple • CA Bay Laurel
- Redwood Burl • Black Acacia • Red Eucalyptus

Monthly Specials  
check us out Call For Our Free Brochure

**PETER LANG COMPANY**  
PH: (707) 579-1341 FAX: (707) 579-8777  
**1-800-616-BOWL (2695)**

**WEST SYSTEM**

BOATBUILDERS SWEAR BY IT, and so will you.

Strong, waterproof WEST SYSTEM® Brand epoxy is more than a 2-part adhesive. It's a complete system of resin, hardeners, fillers and additives from which you can easily create the perfect bonding, coating and sealing agents for your wood or composite project.

For a free copy of the 33-page WEST SYSTEM® Technical Manual & Product Guide, write:  
Gougeon Brothers, Inc.  
Dept. 44, P.O. Box 908  
Bay City, MI 48707  
517-684-7286

# CLASSIFIED

The Classified Text rate is \$6 per word, 15 word min., WEB Classifieds available ([www.taunton.com/fw](http://www.taunton.com/fw)) and must reflect print ads. Orders must be accompanied by payment, all are non-commissionable. Display Classified rates on request. The Wood & Tool Exchange and Situations Wanted are for private use by individuals only; the rate is \$10/line. min. 3 lines, maximum 6 lines, limit 2 insertions per year. Send to: *Fine Woodworking Advertising Dept.*, PO Box 5506, Newtown, CT 06470-5506. FAX 203-270-6751. Deadline for the March/April '99 issue is December 23, 1998. (800) 926-8776, ext. 562.

## Business Opportunities

**SEEKING PARTNER: WOODCRAFT** franchise. Minimum investment \$75-\$100,000. NYC, Long Island area. Contact Mr. Connolly: (718) 945-5302.

**BUSINESS FOR SALE:** Retiring Master Stair Builder. Exclusive clientele, will train. S.F. Bay Area. (510) 337-9545. (CA)

**EARN \$700 PER MONTH** building your woodworking projects. FREE information kit #A1. Guaranteed results. (508) 628-3025. (MA)

**SELL YOUR HAND-CRAFTED** goods on the internet! We provide catalog setup, order processing, and credit card authorization. Works with listing on [handcraftsnet.com](http://handcraftsnet.com), your own domain, or your existing web site. 888-480-1220 or [www.handcraftsnet.com](http://www.handcraftsnet.com).

**BROOKLYN WOODWORKERS CO-OP** seeks new members. Professionals sharing fully-equipped shop; private space. Greenpoint, Brooklyn, NY. Joe (718) 349-3610.

## Help Wanted

**EXPERIENCED CABINET MAKER** needed for Bronx New York, woodshop. Knowledge of all basic machinery and shaper required. Call David-Vincent Woodwork, (718) 885-9176, or fax resume to 718-885-0085. (NY)

**EXPERIENCED CRAFTSMAN** for custom cabinetry, antique restoration, and furniture made to order. Great potential. John C. Packard, 266 Sea Cliff Avenue, Sea Cliff, NY 11579. Fax: 516-671-4759.

**FINISHER/RESTORATIONIST** sought by high-end, custom cabinetry/millwork shop. Also specializing in antique restoration. Experienced and motivated. Artisan needed for long term position. Excellent salary and benefits. Fax resume to 973-366-9749 or email to [crewwood@planet.net](mailto:crewwood@planet.net)

**EXPERIENCED CRAFTSMAN** for high quality door, cabinet, moulding company near Telluride, CO. Fax resume to: (970) 327-4459 or call (970) 327-4429.

## Instruction

**APPRENTICESHIP 1 YEAR** hands-on fine furniture making, designing and marketing in rare solid woods. Tuition Jeffrey Greene. (215) 348-5232. (PA)

**The Fine & Creative Woodworking Program at ROCKINGHAM COMMUNITY COLLEGE** is an internationally recognized associate degree & certificate program. Instruction in hand-tools, furniture, construction, shop start-up, operation & much more. PO Box 38, Wentworth, NC 27375-0038 Phone: (336) 342-4261, ext. 178. <http://library.rcpl.org/college/woodwork/homepage.html> AAEEOC

**BLUE RIDGE MOUNTAINS, VA.** One year apprenticeship available to motivated individual. Saturated learning environment. Accommodations available, tuition. For more information call: Michael Maxwell, (540) 587-9543.

**NEW ENGLAND SCHOOL** of Architectural Woodworking. 37 week training program in architectural woodworking. Job assistance. (413) 527-6103. (MA) [www.nesaw.com](http://www.nesaw.com)

**APPRENTICESHIP: FURNITURE** Construction/Design, 1 yr. full-time, hands-on program. No tuition, no salary. Bauhaus Apprenticeship Institute, 339 Harrison St., Oak Park, IL 60304. (708) 383-5358.

**GUITAR CONSTRUCTION.** Summit Guitars, 6114 W. Island Hwy, Quailicum Beach, BC V9K 2E2. 888-901-9903 (PST)

Train in the art of **FINE FURNITURE MAKING**  
Develop the skills to produce residential furniture and commercial cabinetry through Algonquin College's two-year Furniture Technician program.  
For more information, contact:  
George Rothschild, Algonquin College  
1385 Woodroffe Ave. Room A158  
Ottawa, Ontario, CANADA K2G 1V8  
(613) 727-4723 ext. 7052

**MAKE A WINDSOR CHAIR**  
with Michael Dunbar  
Classes Year-round  
Internships Available  
44 Timber Swamp Road  
Hampton, NH 03842  
603-929-9801

**PETERS VALLEY CRAFT EDUCATION CENTER**  
(973) 948-5200 [www.pvcrafts.org](http://www.pvcrafts.org)  
Call for details or visit our website  
**Studio Furniture Symposium - March '99**  
**Workshops May - Sept.**

**AMERICAN SCHOOL OF LUTHERIE**  
Over 50 of the world's finest guitarmakers and repair-people teach at the American School of Lutherie. Intensive workshops, lecture-demonstrations, seminars, and "hands-on". Learn to build, improve skills, learn new ones. Held in the "wine country", in the charming town of Healdsburg, California. Call or write for brochure and schedule.  
**800-477-4437 (707-433-1823),**  
**E-mail: [ASL@mii.com](mailto:ASL@mii.com).**  
**PO Box 774, Healdsburg, CA 95448 USA.**  
Sponsored by Lutherie Mercantile International, Inc.

**FINE CABINETMAKING**  
Cabinetmaking degree program emphasizing versatile artistry in design and employing traditional techniques in construction of fine custom furniture.  
Individualized instruction focused on problem resolution and development of creativity. SACS accredited. Affordable tuition.  
Roderig Haines, Instructor (334) 745-6437  
Southern Union State CC 1701 Lafayette Pkwy Opelika, AL 36801  
Fax: (334) 742-9418

**APPRENTICE WITH MASTER CRAFT ARTIST**  
in-shop experience  
furniture design  
production and marketing  
**CALIFORNIA CONTEMPORARY CRAFT ASSOC.**  
Box 2060, Sausalito, CA 94966  
Phone/FAX (415) 458-3535

**Christopher Faulkner**  
Listed British Crafts Council  
Learn Fine Furniture Making  
Unique one to one courses at Ashridge Workshops. Beautiful part of SW England near coast and Elizabethan Market Town.  
Tel. U.K. 01803 862861 or 863736 eves.  
From the U.S. call: 011 441 803 862861

**THE SCHOOL OF CLASSICAL WOODCARVING**  
Learn or improve hand carving skills from British Master Carver, Ian Agrell.  
Training videos also available.  
319 Dolan Avenue  
Mill Valley, CA 94941  
[carving@slip.net](mailto:carving@slip.net) [www.agrellandthorpe.com](http://www.agrellandthorpe.com)  
Tel:(415)381-9474 Fax:(415)381-9475


**Hands-on Workshops**  
1- & 2-week Basic & Advanced Courses  
Twelve-week Intensive  
In beautiful Maine  
**CENTER FOR FURNITURE CRAFTSMANSHIP**  
25 Mill Street, Rockport, ME 04856  
207-594-5611 [www.woodschooll.com](http://www.woodschooll.com)  
Peter Korn, Director

**CONOVER WORKSHOPS**  
EDUCATING AMERICA'S WOODWORKERS  
18125 Madison Rd.-P.O. Box 679-Parkman, OH 44080  
[www.conoverworkshops.com](http://www.conoverworkshops.com)  
ph. 440-548-3481 fax 440-548-2721

**The Thomas Chippendale School of Furniture**  
Learn How To Design, Make And Restore Furniture  
A 30 week intensive course designed to give students the skills and knowledge to establish their own business or to secure positions in professional workshops or the arts and museums.  
From fine classic pieces to bespoke commissions, students gain hands-on experience in a stimulating workshop environment situated in the heart of the Scottish countryside, yet near the vibrant city of Edinburgh.  
For further information, contact the Principal, leaving your name, address & telephone number.  
**The Thomas Chippendale School of Furniture**  
Gifford, East Lothian EH41 4JA Scotland  
Tel: (44) (0) 1620 810680 Fax: (44) (0) 1620 810701

**Philip C. Lowe**  
Makers of Fine Furniture  
Full & Part Time Instruction.  
Learn the craft of building traditional furniture as featured in the *Fine Woodworking* video.  
*Measuring Furniture for Reproduction.*  
(978) 922-0615  
116 Water St. Beverly, MA 01915 [www.lshore.net/~furniture/](http://www.lshore.net/~furniture/)

**ONE YEAR PROGRAM FINE FURNITURE CONSTRUCTION**  
Located Within Working Shop. Complete Facilities. Maximum of 5 Students  
Professional Instruction  
**WM. B. SAYRE, INC.**  
413-527-0202  
One Cottage St., Easthampton, MA 01027

**Study Carving in Vermont**  
with Thomas Golding  
Week-long Intensives in New and Traditional Woodcarving. Year round.  
  
P.O. Box 302, Newfane, VT 05345  
Ph/fax (802) 365-7255 [www.sover.net/~carving](http://www.sover.net/~carving)

**University of Rio Grande**  
2 year Associate Degree in Fine Woodworking  
Emphasizing traditional techniques to build fine quality custom furniture.  
For more information call  
Lonnie Bird at 1-740-245-7311  
or toll-free in Ohio 1-800-282-7201  
Univ. of Rio Grande  
Rio Grande, Ohio 45674

**The Landing School**  
**LEARN WOODEN BOAT BUILDING & YACHT DESIGN**  
Two full-time residential programs that offer professional training in a creative but disciplined environment. V.A. approved. Accredited member, ACCST. Financial aid available.  
Visit our website:  
[www.by-the-sea.com/thelandingschool](http://www.by-the-sea.com/thelandingschool)  
email: [landingschool@eybertours.com](mailto:landingschool@eybertours.com)  
Phone (207) 985-7976 Fax (207) 985-7942  
**The Landing School of Boat Building & Design**  
Box 1490, Kennebunkport, ME 04046

# CLASSIFIED (continued)

## Accessories/Miscellaneous

**BRIAR PIPE-MAKING SUPPLIES.** Briarwood, tools, instruction book. Catalog—PIMO F.W., PO Box 2043, Manchester, VT 05255.

**GLASS SOURCE for WOODWORKERS.** Glass and mirror custom cut, beveled, edged, or grooved to your specification. Shipped direct from our shop to yours. Orders and inquiries. 1-800-588-7435. (IA)

**PROTECT YOUR BACK ISSUES.** Slipcases for your back issues. Bound in blue and embossed in gold each case holds at least 6 issues of *Fine Woodworking*. \$8.95 each (\$24.95 for 3, \$45.95 for 6). Add \$1.50 each for S/H. Outside the US, add \$3.50 each. (US funds only). PA residents add 7% sales tax. Please indicate if your order is for issues 1-116 or 117 and later. Send your order and payment direct, or call toll free 1-800-825-6690, credit card min. \$15. Jesse Jones Ind., Dept. 95 FWV, 499 E. Erie Ave., Philadelphia, PA 19134. No PO boxes please.

Quality German Workbenches  
Diefenbach Benches  
1-800-32Bench



www.workbenches.com

**CUSTOM BRANDING IRONS**  
ANY SIZE • 200 - 1500 WATTS  
LOGOS, SIGNATURES, ART, LETTERING  
DRILL PRESS OR HANDHELD  
FREE BROCHURE (800) 422-4509  
PH (707) 984-8203  
FAX (707) 984-8045  
P.O. BOX 787  
LAYTONVILLE, CA 95454



## Clocks Parts/Plans

**CLOCKMAKING SUPPLIES.** Complete source for discount clock movements, hands, dials, fit-up inserts, weather instruments and more. Free Clockmaker Component Catalog. 800-421-4445. (CA) www.clockparts.com

## Glues & Adhesives

**HIDE GLUE,** all grades including wood sizing and glass chipping. Bjorn Industries, Inc., 551 King Edward Rd., Charlotte, NC 28211. (704) 364-1186.

## Finishes

**SPRAY-ON-SUEDE.** Free brochure (sample enclosed). Donjer Products, Ilene Ct. Bldg. 8F, Belle Mead, NJ 08502. 800-336-6537.

## Publications

**AUSTRALIAN WOOD** review on the Internet. *Australian Wood Review*; some of the best woodworking the world. See us at www.woodreview.com.au

## Plans & Kits

**PLANS ON WEB AND CD.** Over 100 woodworking project plans on-line. Immediate download. Or create your own custom CD of plans. Furniture, Outdoor, Kids, Shop, Jigs http://www.PlansNOW.com

**FULL-SIZE PROFESSIONAL PLANS** catalog \$3. Over 200 professionally-designed plans for building fine furniture. Furniture Designs, Inc., CK-19, 1827 Elmdale Ave., Glenview, IL 60025. 1-847-657-7526.

**CARVING STAND!** A work table catering to your height. \$12.95, check or money order to: Owen Wells. PO Box 276304, Sacramento, CA 95827-6304.

## Hardware

**VIEW 1000's OF PRODUCTS ON-LINE.** Professional Hardware & Supply. For information: 1-800-248-1919. www.proflhdwr.com

## Musical Supplies

**PLANS KITS & SUPPLIES FOR** musical instruments; harps, dulcimers, psalteries, banjos and more. Musicmaker's Kits, Dept. FW, PO Box 2117, Stillwater, MN 55082. (612) 439-9120. www.musikit.com

**BUILD YOUR OWN** guitar, violin, or dulcimer! Free 108-page catalog featuring kits and all the tools, finishing supplies and instructions you need to build your next instrument. Stewart MacDonal's Guitar Shop Supply, Box 900F, Athens, OH 45701. 800-848-2273. www.stewmac.com

**LUTHIERS' SUPPLIES:** Imported tone-wood, tools, varnishes, books, plans, parts, accessories and strings. Assemble-yourself violin and guitar kits, white instruments, violins, violas, cellos, basses and cases. Call or write for your FREE catalog. International Violin Co., Ltd., 1421 Clarkview Rd., Ste. 118, Baltimore, MD 21209. (410) 832-2525, or 800-542-3538.

## Services

**JAPANESE HAND SAW SHARPENING** service. All types of saws, NEW handmade saws for sale. http://home.earthlink.net/~nokogiri (317) 255-1059. (IN)

## Software

**SOFTWARE FOR WOODWORKERS:** Free Trials: http://www.gwz3.com. Woodworkers Estimate Helper - \$39.95, Raised Panel Doors - \$24.95, Even Shelves - \$19.95. Three Program Trial CD \$10.00 Order Toll Free 1-(888)282-5887.

## Blades & Bits

**BAND SAW BLADES.** Swedish silicon steel: 3/8-in. through 1 1/4-in. Timber Wolf bands. FREE catalog. Suffolk Machine: 800-234-7297. (NY) timberwolf1.com

## Hand Tools

**VINTAGE PLANES & PARTS,** buying and selling. Pete Niederberger, Box 887, Larkspur, CA 94977. (415) 924-8403 evenings.

**ANTIQUÉ & USED TOOLS.** Hundreds of quality handtools. Many Stanley. On the Internet at www.olympus.net/bktools. VISA/MC. BOB KAUNE, Dept. FW199, 511 W. 11th, Port Angeles, WA 98362. (360) 452-2292. Mail order only.

**TASHIRO'S SHARP JAPANESE TOOLS** since 1888. Free ZETA™ saw system catalog. 2939 4th Avenue South, Seattle, WA 98134. (206) 621-0199. FAX (206) 621-0157. http://home.att.net/~vtashiro

**Branding Irons**  
Signatures, logos, names. Any size/design  
Optional drill press mount.  
LOWEST CUSTOM PRICES

**Tubular Plywood**  
from 1" - 4-1/2" dia. Many species, many uses

**BrandNew**  
1-800-964-8251 www.brandnew.net

## Power Tools

**FEIN 6-in. RANDOM ORBITAL** and Fein Triangle Sanders. Best prices—most knowledgeable. Call Hank 1-800-789-2323. Select Machinery, Inc. (NY).


**LAMELLO BISCUIT JOINERS** and Accessories/Parts/Repairs. Best prices—most knowledgeable. Call Hank 1-800-789-2323. Select Machinery, Inc. (NY).

## Machinery New/Used


**USED PORTABLE SAWMILLS!** Buy/Sell. Call Sawmill Exchange 800-459-2148, 205-661-9821. (AL) http://www.sawmillexchange.com

## Veneer

**ROSEBUD**  
Exotic Veneers  
Hardwoods  
1-888-595-1955



Veneer and Architectural Panel Sales  
208-788-1996  
Hailey, Idaho



## Wood

**STEEN HARDWOODS** located 1 mile off I-40, North Little Rock, AR. Large inventory of cherry, walnut and oak. Lumber, squares and mantle boards. Check our quality and low prices. (501) 753-4344.

**CURLY MAPLE, YEW, CYPRESS** (west coast.) Bowl blanks, turning squares, burls, Two barns full. Bow River Craft Woods. 11443 McSween, Cilliwack, BC Canada. (604) 795-3462, fax: 604-795-4058, e-mail: bowriver@cwk.imag.net

**CALIFORNIA'S FINEST QUALITY EXOTIC** figured burlwoods. 30,000 pieces redwood, maple, buckeye, manzanita, madrone, myrtlewood, walnut, other burls. Any size/use/guaranteed/direct. Established 27 years. VISA/MC. BURL TREE, Bruce Remington. 800-785-BURL.

**Mid-Maine Hardwoods**  
Birds-eye, Hard & Soft Maple  
We buy the logs, we saw the logs and we dry & finish the pieces to your specifications.  
P.O. Box 276, Lincoln, ME 04457  
Phone (207) 794-6277 Fax (207) 794-2446

**WIDE AND MATCHED LUMBER.** See our ad in this issue's Woodworker's Mart, page 121. Iron Lumber. (570) 724-1895. (PA)

**QUALITY OAKS, POPLAR,** cherry, walnut. Reasonably priced. Buy direct. Visa, Master Card. L. Forest Products. Toll free 1-877-484-4381. (OH)

**SAWMILL DIRECT Cocobolo SALE.** 12-in. long lumber @ \$10-bd/ft, 250-bd/ft FEQ RWL @ \$7.50-bd/ft. Ebony billets @ \$2/lb. Chac-te-koke shorts @ \$4.75-bd/ft. Quality at a fair price. SASE, Tropical Exotic Hardwoods, PO Box 1806, Carlsbad, CA 92018. Toll FREE orders only, 888-434-3031. Questions 760-434-3030. Mitch Talcove.

**HARDWOODS CUT TO ORDER.** 120 species in stock from 1/4-in. to 4-in., burls, wood ID kits. Veneers, woodworker's supplies. Colonial Hardwoods, Springfield, VA. (800) 466-5451.

**CHESTNUT LUMBER.** All thicknesses. Wormy or clear. 10 thousand feet available. Sassafras lumber. Antique oak, poplar, pine, salvaged from barns. (304) 497-2700. www.vintageglog.com

**GILMER WOOD CO.**  
Quality Domestic & Exotic Lumber

- Logs, blanks, squares
- Over 50 species in stock
- Thin woods, Assortments, Books
- Musical Instrument woods

Phone 503-274-1271  
2211 NW St. Helens Rd., Portland OR 97210  
Fax 503-274-9839 e-mail: gilmerwood@aol.com



**BAKER MILLING & HARDWOODS** Claro walnut and elm slabs up to 80-in. wide, up to 16 ft. long. Burls, highly figured lumber. SPECIAL: Persian walnut, 1100 bd/ft, KD. (408) 847-8433, Gilroy, CA.

**GREAT DOMESTIC/EXOTIC** selection featuring extinct chestnut, Everglades pine/cypress, bird's-eye/curly maple. HOMESTEAD HARDWOODS, Ohio: 330-889-3770, 1-800-241-3770. ALVA HARDWOODS, Florida: (941) 728-2484, 1-888-894-6229.

**BIRD'S-EYE AND CURLY MAPLE,** 4/4 to 12/4 lumber, flitches, turning squares and blocks. Black walnut, cherry and quartersawn and curly oak lumber. Dunlap Woodcrafts, Vienna, VA (703) 631-5147.

Select hardwoods  
Price quotes; monthly specials  
Providing woodworkers w/top quality hardwood for their prized creations.  
Gift Certificates available.  
www.yankeehardwood.com  
OR phone us at 800-646-6929  
Nationwide delivery. Mastercard/Visa



**FREE CATALOG OF HARDWOOD** lumber, plywood, veneers and woodworker's supplies. Stocking 60 species of KD domestic and exotic lumber. Delivery anywhere in USA. Call Appalachian Millwork & Lumber today. 800-849-9174.

**AT LAST! AFRICAN BLACKWOOD.** In the round, in the USA. Log sections 4-in. to 8-in. diameter. \$3.50 per pound. Michael Tisdale, 25000 SW 207 Ave., Homestead, FL 33031. (305) 248-0593.

# CLASSIFIED

**RARE BURLS. AFZELIA & AMBOYNA.** High figure snakewood, gabun and macassar ebonyes. Over 100 species in stock. FREE price brochure. Eisenbrand, Inc. (310) 542-3576. (CA)

**MAPLE AND REDWOOD BURL.** Highly figured, bird's-eye and lace. Specializing in box wood and carving materials. Any size or thickness. Quality. (503) 394-3077. (OR)

**FINEST QUALITY, WESTERN WALNUT** quilted & figured maple, micro-lumber and more. Northwest Timber. (541) 327-1000. (OR) [www.nwtimber.com](http://www.nwtimber.com)

**FIGURED CLARO WALNUT** slabs, planks, blocks 1 1/4-in.—6-in. thickness, suitable for small to very large projects. California Walnut Designs. (530) 268-0203. [www.woodnut.com](http://www.woodnut.com)

**"GOOD WOOD" PA HARDWOODS.** 15 native species, cut to order, 1/8-in. to 3-in. thick. FREE catalog. Croffwood Mills, RD 1 Box 14F, Driftwood, PA 15832. (814) 546-2532.

**DOMESTIC AND IMPORTED EXOTICS.** For musical instruments, pool cues, knife handles and custom furniture. Price list. Exotic Woods, 1-800-443-9264. [www.exoticwoods.com](http://www.exoticwoods.com) (NJ)

**QUALITY NORTHERN APPALACHIAN** hardwood. Custom milling. Free delivery. Bundled, surfaced. Satisfaction guarantee. Niagara Lumber, 800-274-0397. (NY)

**CHESTNUT LUMBER,** Wormy or clear, furniture grade. Antique woods and antique wide board flooring. Oak, pine, hemlock. T&G, custom millwork. CHESTNUT WOODWORKING (860) 672-4300, fax 860-672-2441. (CT)

**REDWOOD BURL, RARE EXOTIC** burlwood. Direct from logger. Table and clock slabs, turning blocks, box-wood! Burl Country: (707) 725-3982. (CA)

**LONGLEAF (HEART) PINE LUMBER.** Resawn from salvaged timbers. Lumber, flooring and stair-tread material. Lee Yelton: (706) 541-1039. (GA)

**BLUE OX HARDWOODS.** Appalachian lumber and rare stock. Wide mahogany, quartersawn oak, sycamore, wide walnut flitches. 1-800-758-0950. [www.blueoxhardwoods.com](http://www.blueoxhardwoods.com)

**ATTENTION VA/MD AREA WOODWORKERS.** K/D quartersawn sycamore, red & white oak. Cherry, walnut, elm, apple, and other domestic hardwoods. Herbine Hardwoods, Leesburg, VA. (703) 771-3067.

**EXOTIC HARDWOODS OF HAWAII**  
**KOA • MANGO • NORFOLK PINE**  
 Over 40 Unique Species Lumber • Turning Blocks  
**TOLL FREE 1-877-KOA-PLUS**  
  
**WINKLER**  
 WOOD PRODUCTS  
[www.interpac.net/~winkler](http://www.interpac.net/~winkler)  
 E-mail: [winkler@interpac.net](mailto:winkler@interpac.net)  
 PH 808-961-8411  
**261-A Kekuanaoa St. Hilo, Hawaii 96720**

**TECH-WOOD, INC.**  
**Domestic & Imported Hardwoods**  
**Holly, Persimmon, Apple, Koa**  
 + 50 other species, 4/4-16/4  
**Burls, Slabs, Thin Lumber**  
**717-933-8989**

**Oregon Black Walnut**  
 Wide lumber - 1/8 through 16/4 • High Quality  
 Figured • Large Selection  
 Web Site [www.dnc.net/users/nwbbm/gwp](http://www.dnc.net/users/nwbbm/gwp)  
  
**5016 Palestine Rd.**  
**Albany, OR 97321**  
 VIEWING BY APPOINTMENT ONLY  
**(541) 926-1079**

**WOOD & TOOL EXCHANGE**

Limited to use by individuals only.

**For Sale**

30-in. BAXTER WHITNEY surface planer. Old dinosaur that will work forever, Cast iron, 3PH, w/10 and 15HP motors. All electrical components. M. Vogler: (336) 768-1261 or e-mail [jmw@snc@juno.com](mailto:jmw@snc@juno.com)

*Fine Woodworking* back issues 1-132, mint condition. \$300. *Fine Homebuilding* 1-112. \$300. Plus shipping. (312) 977-0062. (IL)

**TEAK CHEAP!** Premium quality teak furniture parts and cutoffs. By the truck load. must be cut into smaller pieces. You pick up. Clay Kinglsey. (703) 978-7200. (VA)

INCA 510 Jointer Planer, 2 1/2 HP motor with stand. and extra knives. \$1350. (717) 379-3067. (PA)

*Fine Woodworking* 1975-'88; no. 1-72 (3 missing) also extras avail. make offer. (614) 486-5872. (OH)

RARE 100/bd. ft. Burmese teak slab. Cut in 1949, 4 ft. by 8 ft. by 12/4. \$2400. (941) 261-3351. Naples, FL.


*Fine Homebuilding*, issues 4-110. Willing to split. Call for information, Matt: (502) 633-2767. (KY)

*Fine Woodworking* 1-97 complete. In slipcases and in excellent condition. \$300. plus shipping. (814) 237-2747. (PA)

*Fine Woodworking* 1975-1998, nearly complete set. For more information call. (202) 363-0986. (DC)

*Fine WoodWorking*  
**CLASSIFIEDS**  
 CALL NOW FOR DETAILS  
 1-800-926-8776 x562  
 VISA, MC, AmEx accepted. Deadline for our March/April issue: Dec. 23.

**Protect Your Back Issues**



**SLIPCASES FOR YOUR BACK ISSUES.** Bound in blue and embossed in gold, each case holds at least 6 issues of *Fine Woodworking* (a year's worth), and costs \$8.95 (\$24.95 for 3, \$45.95 for 6). Add \$1.50 per case for postage and handling. Outside the U.S., add \$3.50 each (U.S. funds only). PA residents add 7% sales tax. Send your order and payment to the address below, or call toll free, 1-800-825-6690, and use your credit card (min. \$15). Let us know if your order is for issues 1-116 or 117 and later. Jesse Jones Ind., Dept. 95 FWW, 499 E. Erie Ave., Philadelphia, PA 19134 (No P.O. boxes, please).

**FINE WOODWORKING**  
**CUSTOMER SERVICE**  
**WE'RE HERE TO SERVE YOU!**

If you ever have a problem, question or complaint about your magazine subscription or a book or video purchase, please call us—toll free.

We will be happy to:

- Confirm Shipments
- Answer Your Questions
- Resolve Complaints
- Handle Refunds & Returns

**FOR CUSTOMER SERVICE**  
**CALL 1-800-477-8727**  
 (9AM—5PM EST, MON.—FRI.)  
**FAX: 203-426-7184**

**TO PLACE AN ORDER, CALL:**  
**1-800-888-8286**  
 (24 HOURS A DAY)

We accept MC, VISA, AMEX and Discover  
 (Please have your credit card handy when placing your order.)

**THE TAUNTON PRESS**  
 63 S. Main St., P.O. Box 5506,  
 Newtown, CT 06470-5506

**Great News!**

*Fine WoodWorking*  
 is now online.

Come visit our website and see our growing line of books and videos.

**[www.taunton.com](http://www.taunton.com)**

## INDEX TO ADVERTISERS

Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, page #	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, page #	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, page #	Reader Service No.	ADVERTISER, page #
50	A & I Supply, p. 15	181	Eagle America Corp., p. 121	43	Laguna Tools, p. 21	13	Safety Speed Cut, p. 120
47	Abbey Machinery & Supply, p. 38	95	Eagle Woodworking, p. 122	42	Laguna Tools, p. 29	194	Sand-Rite Mfg. Co., p. 36
149	Adams Wood Products, p. 9	142	Econ-Abrasives, p. 37		The Landing School, p. 125	91	Sandman Products, p. 112
148	Airware America, p. 110		Electrophysics, p. 97	20	Peter Lang Co., p. 124		Wm B. Sayre, Inc., p. 125
185	Airy Sales Corp., p. 105	99	Emperor Clock, p. 17	108	S. LaRose, Inc., p. 124		School Of Classical Carving, p. 125
	Algonquin College, p. 125		Engraving Arts, p. 126	84	Robert Larson, p. 121		Senco Products, Inc., p. 27
209	American Furniture Designs, p. 122	63	Epilog Corporation, p. 120	7	Launstein Hardwoods, p. 105	117	Senco Products, Inc., p. 27
	American School of Lutherie, p. 125	24	Evans Precision, p. 124	94	Lee Valley/Veritas, p. 22	116	Shaker Workshops, p. 37
97	Anderson Ranch Arts Ctr., p. 29	190	Excalibur Machine, p. 124		Leigh Industries, p. 37	125	Shopbot Tool, p. 110
115	Arrowmont School of Crafts, p. 7		Christopher Faulkner, p. 125		LeNeave Supply Company, p. 36		Shopcart, p. 121
130	Art Specialties Intl., p. 122	186	Felder Machinery, p. 39	109	Liberon/Star Supplies, p. 120	61	Smithy, p. 99
206	Ashman Technical Ltd., p. 99	34	Festo Tooltechnic., p. 115	204	Lie-Nielsen Toolworks, p. 17		Southern Union St. Comm. College, p. 125
64	Atlantic Finishing Supply Co., p. 120	139	Fine Paints of Europe, p. 123		Lobo Power Tools Inc., p. 105	16	St. James Bay Tool, p. 120
193	Auton Company, p. 99	51	Fine Tool Journal, p. 121	92	Luthiers Mercantile Intl., p. 9	179	Stots Corp., p. 121
			Taunton Press, p. 100			146	Sun-Mar Corporation, p. 123
			Ford Truck, p. 25	119	MBK Enterprises, p. 17	137	Sunhill Machinery, p. 27
			Forrest Manufacturing, p. 117	26	MEG Products, p. 121	164	Syracuse Industrial Sales, p. 97
		6	Franklin International, p. 21	177	MLCS Ltd., p. 9		
71	Ball & Ball Hardware, p. 110	82	Fuji Industrial Spray Equip., p. 97	112	MacBeath Hardwood Company, p. 122	126	TNT Virutex, p. 121
180	Barr Specialty Tools, p. 122	12	Furniture Designs, p. 30			36	Talarico Hardwoods, p. 122
90	The Bartley Collection, p. 122			165	Makita U.S.A., p. 131	67	Target Enterprises, p. 115
155	The Beall Tool Co., p. 123	173	G & W Tool Company, p. 99	29	Manny's Woodworker's Place, p. 38	2	Tech Mark Inc., p. 12
188	Berea Hardwoods, p. 115	135	Garrett Wade Company, p. 19	159	Mass Bay Wood Products, p. 123		Tech-Wood Inc., p. 126
21	Better Built Corp., p. 29	68	Gilliom Mfg. Inc., p. 9	100	Mats Equipment, p. 112	107	Tenryu America, Inc., p. 98
93	BioShield Finishing, p. 124		Gilmer Wood Company, p. 126		McFeely's Square Drive, p. 97	128	Timberking, p. 17
22	Bloxygen by Iron Wood Designs, p. 120		Goby's Wood Products, p. 127	65	Mercury Vacuum Presses, p. 95		The Tool Chest, p. 122
			Thomas Golding School, p. 125	45	MicroPlane, p. 14	207	Tool Crib of the North, p. 99
40	Blue Ox Hardwoods, p. 120	76	Good Hope Hardwoods, p. 123		Mid Maine Hardwoods, p. 126	202	Tools On Sale, p. 111
	BrandNew, p. 126	18	Gorilla Glue, p. 115	208	Midwest Dowel Works, p. 124	52	Tools Plus, p. 17
176	Bristol Valley Hardwoods, p. 120	37	Gougeon Brothers, p. 124	30	Misugi Designs, p. 105		
		118	Grizzly Industrial, Inc., p. 33		Frank Mittermeier, Inc., p. 121	23	Universal Laser Systems, p. 124
14	CabParts by BMI, p. 39	106	Groff & Groff Lumber, p. 110	75	W. Moore Profiles, p. 112		University of Rio Grande, p. 125
	California Contemporary Craft Guild, p. 125	166	Gross Stabil, p. 98	198	Mule Cabinetmaker Machine, p. 7		
132	Carter Products, p. 17					17	Vass, Incorporated, p. 7
	Center for Furn. Craftsmanship, p. 125	131	HTC Products, Inc., p. 21	58	NEMAH Products, p. 12	79	Veneer Systems, Inc., p. 7
160	Certainly Wood, p. 123	175	Haddon Tool Inc., p. 121	151	North Bennet Street School, p. 123	5	Viel Tools Inc., p. 97
	The Chippendale School, p. 125	96	Hampton House, p. 97				
158	Clark Manufacturing, p. 120		Handy Products, p. 121	77	Norhend Hardwoods, p. 123	121	WGB Glass, p. 12
129	Classic Designs by Burak, p. 39	15	Harper Hardware Co., p. 39	147	Northern Hardwoods, p. 122	152	Waco Composites, Inc., p. 120
138	Clayton Machine Corp., p. 9	200	Hearne Hardwoods, Inc. p. 97		Northwest Timber, p. 120	167	Wart Hog, p. 120
46	Collins Tools, p. 28	3	Hersaf/Safraneck, p. 95	25	Norwood Sawmills, p. 124	27	West Penn Hardwoods, p. 124
54	Colonial Times Clock Company, p. 122		Hida Tool & Hardware, p. 30			110	Wetzler Clamp Company, p. 122
199	Comfort Wall Beds & Cabinetry, p. 123	153	Highland Hardware, p. 112		Oakwood Veneer, p. 120	81	Whitechapel Ltd., p. 97
111	M.L. Condon Lumber, p. 17	163	Homeco Ace Home Center, p. 27	183	Oneida Air Systems, p. 95	122	Wilke Machinery Co., p. 10
86	Conover Lathes, p. 14		Horton Brass, p. 7	73	Osborne Manufacturing, p. 122	74	Williams & Hussey, p. 115
	Conover Workshops, p. 125	38	Hut Products For Wood, p. 37			120	Louis Williams & Sons, p. 120
105	Craft Supplies, p. 7			88	Packard WoodWorks, p. 124		Winkler Wood Products, p. 127
		187	Impressive Designs, p. 7		Paxton Hardware, p. 122	182	Wood Mark, p. 95
143	DCT Holdings Corp., p. 123	156	Incra Rules, p. 30	124	Peck Tool, p. 124		Wood River Veneer, p. 126
174	D&D Wood Supplies, p. 122		Industrial Abrasives Co., p. 123	150	Performax Products, p. 106		Wood-Mizer, p. 39
66	Dakota County Technical College, p. 97	154	International Tool Corp., p. 103		Peters Valley Crafts Center, p. 125	19	Wood-Ply Lumber Corp, p. 123
48	J.B. Dawn, p. 121	123	Irion Lumber Co., p. 121	162	Pootatuck Corporation, p. 97	213	Wood Werks Supply, p. 9
205	Delmhorst Instrument Co., p. 110	127	Iturra Design, p. 122	192	Porter-Cable, p. 13	87	Woodcraft Supply, p. 21
168	Delta International, p. 31			53	Powermatic, p. 108	1	Woodcraft Supply, p. 107
114	Denray Machine Shop, p. 7	197	James Machinery Co., Inc., p. 7			33	Woodcraft Supply, p. 110
210	DeWalt Power Tools, p. 109	196	James Machinery Co., Inc., p. 9		Quality VAKuum Products, p. 99	171	Woodmaster Power Tools, p. 29
211	DeWalt Power Tools, p. 113	178	Jamestown Distributors, p. 28	32	Quick Fold Saw Horse Company, p. 123	170	Woodmaster Power Tools, p. 95
212	DeWalt Power Tools, p. 119		Japan Woodworker, p. 112			44	Woodsmith Store, p. 29
	Diefenbach Benches, p. 126	157	Jesada Tools, p. 30			72	Woodworker's Depot, p. 115
161	Martin Donnelly Antique Tools, p. 120	35	Jet Equipment, p. 2,3	134	Rare Earth Hardwoods, p. 124	78	Woodworker's Dream, p. 123
		60	Jet Equipment, p. 101	145	Rechargeable Battery Recycling Corp., p. 11	57	Woodworker's Hardware, p. 14
83	Ron Diefenbacher, p. 122	184	Julius Blum Co., p. 106			80	Woodworker's Source, p. 123
	Michael Dunbar, p. 125			9	Red Hill Corporation, p. 120	101	Woodworking on CD, p. 124
189	Dunham Hardwoods, p. 112	102	Kay Industries, Inc., p. 99	39	Ridge Carbide Tool Co., p. 121	172	Woodworking Shows, p. 17
			Kayne & Son Hardware, p. 122		Rockingham Community College, p. 125	191	Worcester Center for Crafts, p. 28
		169	Keller & Company, p. 39	56	Rockler Woodworking, p. 105	133	World Timber Corp., p. 121
		70	Kelly Tool Works, p. 124		Rosebud Veneers, p. 126		
		69	Kreg Tool Company, p. 112				Yankee Hardwood Specialties, p. 127
		28	Kremer Pigments, p. 124				



## Shellac: a marvelously versatile finish



My fondest childhood memories are of the times I spent with my grandfather learning the tricks of the finishing trade. Gramp's favorite clear finish was shellac—by any standard, a marvelously versatile finish. It dries quickly, is easy to apply and repair, is compatible with other finishing materials, has good water resistance, and it's edible. Yes, edible. Shellac has been used as an FDA-approved coating on candy, fruit and pharmaceuticals for years. And because it is nontoxic, shellac is absolutely safe to use on children's furniture and toys.

### Bugs supply the raw material

Shellac holds the distinction of being the only common finish derived from animals—or more precisely—insects. Shellac resin is produced by a small, red sap-sucking insect (*Laccifer lacca*) indigenous to India and surrounding tropical areas. During a large part of its life cycle, the female of the species exudes a mixture of resin and wax, forming a shell-like casing around herself and her freshly laid eggs. This shell protects the maturing larvae from the elements. (It also kills the mother in the process.)

Once the young have matured and freed themselves from the crust, workers gather the crude lac from the trees, then refine it into what we know as shellac. Dry shellac flakes are available in several different grades, depending on the degree of refinement (see the photo below). Seed lac—the least refined—is a dark reddish brown, while dewaxed super blond—the most refined grade—is a light pale yellow. From darkest to lightest, the furniture-finishing grades of shellac are seed lac, button lac, garnet, orange and de-

waxed super blond. Dewaxed versions of garnet and orange are also available.

### Water resistance can be very good

Shellac has the reputation (only partly deserved) of being water sensitive. However, unadulterated shellac is totally water resistant. Think about it—this little bug lives in a climate of subtropical monsoons. If shellac were water sensitive, it would not make a very good shelter for the developing larvae.

So why is all shellac not water resistant? Shellac flakes must be dissolved in alcohol to be useful as a finish. Once dissolved, a process called *esterification* begins to chemically alter the shellac molecule. The longer the shellac resin remains in an alcohol solution, the more *shellac ester* is produced. Shellac ester is not only water sensitive, but it also prevents the resin from drying hard, acting as a substance that finish manufacturers call a *plasticizer*.

Therefore, a freshly prepared shellac solution (with a low ester content) will produce a hard, water-resistant finish on wood; but the finish film produced from old shellac (with a high ester content) will be soft and prone to water marks. That's why I always mix my own shellac solutions from dry flakes and use them or toss them within six months.

### As a sealer, watch the wax content

Because shellac is compatible with most other finishes, forms an almost impermeable film, adheres well to a wide variety of surfaces and simply looks great on the surface of wood, it has been a popular finish for the last 3,000 years.

Shellac's extraordinary barrier and adhesion properties make it an ideal sealer for use under other finishes. However, only the dewaxed variety should be used for sealing purposes. Normal shel-



**Different grades, different shades.** Treatments used to refine various grades of shellac affect the color of the end product. Also, the density of the dried shellac varies considerably. Shown here are the amounts needed to mix a 2-lb. cut of each grade of shellac.

lac contains from 3% to 5% natural wax, which will cause adhesion problems if the wax-laced shellac is used as a sealer. If your shellac solution looks cloudy in the jar, or if two layers have formed after the solution is left undisturbed for a couple of days, the shellac contains wax (see the photo below). The cloudy stuff is the wax.

I have found that dewaxed shellac works exceptionally well as a sealer, even—contrary to common opinion—under polyurethane varnish. Also, I routinely use dewaxed shellac as a sealer for oily woods such as cocobolo, teak and rosewood. The shellac traps the natural oils in the wood, preventing any drying and delamination problems with the finish coat. And I can topcoat with any film finish I choose: lacquer, varnish or water-based varieties.

A thin coat of shellac over a water-based dye stain prevents the stain from bleeding into the topcoat. Similarly, a small amount of shellac added to an alcohol-based dye stain locks the stain into the wood, preventing any subsequent bleeding. And a washcoat of thin shellac applied prior to staining seals the wood pores to give controlled penetration to the stain. This step will minimize blotching with woods such as cherry and pine and prevent highly porous woods such as willow or butternut from absorbing too much stain.

## As a topcoat, shellac looks as good as it feels

Used as a topcoat, shellac imparts a silky, smooth feel and an aged glow to wood that is impossible to achieve with any other finish. My favorite finish for walnut is a coat of linseed oil followed by two or three coats of garnet shellac. Once the finish is rubbed out and waxed, it will pass for one looking a hundred years old. Button lac has the same aging effect on cherry.

A great “no-finish” finish for Craftsman- or Shaker-style furniture is to apply one or two thin coats of shellac to the raw wood, followed by a few coats of dark furniture wax. The piece will have a warm, aged look without showing any detectable surface film.

Shellac is also an ideal coating for the insides of drawers or cabinets. It provides good protection from daily abuse and won't leave that lingering varnish (or lacquer) smell in the cabinet. Incidentally, a coat of shellac on the inside of a musty smelling cabinet will trap the offending odors inside the wood, eliminating a problem common in antiques.

## Mix your own for better quality

Mixing a batch of shellac is simple to do. I like my shellac solutions on the thin side, so I weigh enough flakes and denatured alcohol to make a 20% to 25% solids shellac solution (I'm a chemist, remember). The rest of the world, however, talks about shellac solutions in terms of “pound cut”—an old finisher's term that refers to the number of pounds of shellac flakes dissolved in 1 gal. of denatured alcohol. A 20% solution—100 grams of flakes dissolved into 400 grams of alcohol—is about the same as a 2-lb. cut.

To make a smaller amount by eye, mix a batch as follows: Fill a

quart jar half full with dry shellac flakes. Add denatured alcohol until the flakes are just covered with liquid. Soak the mixture and shake it occasionally until all of the flakes are dissolved—overnight is usually sufficient. If the solution is too thick, add alcohol; if it's too thin, add flakes. The precise cut is not important, anyway. Experience will soon teach you the right ratio.

## Apply by brush, rag or spray gun

Shellac can be applied by any method you prefer. I brush small projects, spray large ones and use a rag for my sealer coats. Sounds easy, and it is, but shellac has some peculiarities that set it apart from other finishes.

Because shellac dries rapidly, it tends to blush when applied on warm, humid days, when moisture in the air gets trapped within the finish. Usually this whitish, cottonlike blush will disappear as the film dries. But if it doesn't, a thin coat of alcohol applied to the dry surface will correct the problem. During the summer, I apply my shellac finishes during the cool early morning hours, and I rarely have blushing problems. You should always work with a full brush and flow the shellac onto the wood rather than brushing it back and forth as you do with paint.

If you discover a missed spot, wait for the coat to dry thoroughly before attempting a touch-up. Brushing after the shellac has set but before it is dry will certainly wrinkle the finish film. Although shellac will dry to the touch in 10 to 15 minutes, resist the temptation to apply another coat too quickly. The terrific barrier properties that make shellac a great sealer also trap a small amount of the alcohol solvent in the drying finish film. If sufficient drying time is not allowed between coats, the trapped alcohol will cause the whole finish to remain soft for weeks. I've learned the hard way to adhere to a strict drying schedule. I apply no more than three thin coats per day, scuff-sanding lightly between coats. The first coat dries for two hours, the second for four hours and the third overnight.

Cleanup is a snap. A half cup of sudsy household ammonia in 1 qt. of water makes a good cleaning solution for brushes and spray equipment. Be sure to rinse your spray gun with plenty of water after the ammonia wash, to keep the ammonia from pitting the surface of aluminum parts.

## Preserve shellac finishes with a little wax

Shellac finishes are easy to maintain. A good paste wax will minimize surface dings and provide some added water resistance. Occasional rewaxing restores that protection. The original shellac finish should dry at least 48 hours before you wax it for the first time. Should the surface become damaged with water spots (unlikely if fresh shellac was used), the offending white ring will usually disappear when swiped with an alcohol-damp rag. For more severe damage, lightly sand the damaged area, then recoat the entire piece with fresh shellac. New shellac will bond to old shellac without witness lines or adhesion problems.



**Wax can cause problems.** As a sealer under other topcoats, such as oil-based varnish or polyurethane, use only dewaxed shellac. Unsure whether your shellac contains wax? Leave it undisturbed for a day or two. The cloudy wax will settle to the bottom.



## IF WALLS COULD SPEAK



What if a wall could speak, but instead of having an ear for gossip, it had an eye for things beautifully made? So instead of revealing indiscretions, it celebrated creativity. It might speak of millwork and filigree, carving and architecture, painting and sculpture and carpentry. And if it said all this in a mysterious tongue that sounded like the language of woodworking, it might look like this entryway designed and built for the Ontario Crafts Council by Gord Peteran, a sculptor, painter and furniture maker in Toronto.

